

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

OU_214167

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

214167

DAMAGE BOOK

SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

DONE INTO ENGLISH BY

ARTHUR GEORGE WARNER, M.A

AND

EDMOND WARNER, B.A.

*"The homes that are the dwellings of to-day
Will sink 'neath shower and sunshine to decay,
But storm and ram shall never mar what I
Have built—the palace of my poetry "*

FIRDAUSI

VOL. VI

LONDON

KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRUBNER & CO. L^{TD}

BROADWAY HOUSE, CARTER LANE, E.C.

1912

THE
SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

DONE INTO ENGLISH BY

ARTHUR GEORGE WARNER, M.A

AND

EDMOND WARNER, B.A.

*" The homes that are the dwellings of to-day
Will sink 'neath shower and sunshine to decay,
But storm and ram shall never mar what I
Have built—the palace of my poetry "*

FIRDAUSI

VOL VI

LONDON
KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRUBNER & CO. LTD
BROADWAY HOUSE, CARTER LANK, E.C.
1912

The rights of translation and of reproduction are reserved

Printed by BALLANTYNE, HANSON & Co
At the Ballantyne Press, Edinburgh

CONTENTS

	PAGE
GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE SASANIANS	3
ABBREVIATIONS	5
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION	8

THE K A I N I A N D Y N A S T Y (concluded)

DARAB—

SECT

1 How Darab built the City of Darabgird	20
2 How Darab defeated the Host of Shu'ib	21
3 How Darab fought with Failakus and took to Wife his Daughter	22
4 How Darab sent back the Daughter of Failakus to Rum, and how Sikandar was born	25

DARA, SON OF DARAB—

1 How Dara harangued the Chiefs and took Order for the Realm	34
2. The Death of Failakus and Sikandar's Accession to the Throne	35
3 How Sikandar went as his own Ambassador to Dara	38
4 How Dara fought with Sikandar and was worsted	42
5. How Dara fought with Sikandar the second Time	43
6 How Sikandar fought with Dara the third Time, and how Dara fled to Ku man	46
7. How Dard wrote to Sikandar to propose Peace	49
8 How Dara was slam by his Ministers	50
9 How Dara told his last Wishes to Sikandar and died	52
10. How Sikandar wrote to the Nobles of Iran	57

SIKANDAR—

1. How Sikandar sat upon the Throne of Iran	85
2. How Sikandar wrote to Dilarai and Rushanak, the Wife and Daughter of Dara, touching the Nuptials of Rushanak	85
3 How Dilarai answered the Letter of Sikandar	87

SIKANDAR (continued)—

	PAGE
4 How Sikandar sent his Mother, Nahid, to fetch Rushanak, and how he Married her	89
5 How Kaid of Hind had a Dream, and how Mihran interpreted it	91
6 How Sikandar marched against Kaid of Hind and wrote a Letter to him	98
7 How Kaid of Hind answered Sikandar's Letter and announced the Sending of the Four Wonders .	99
8 How Sikandar sent back the Messenger to receive the Four Wonders	100
9 How Sikandar sent Ten Sages with a Letter to inspect the Four Wonders of Kaid of Hind	101
10. How the Ten Sages brought the Daughter, the Cup, the Leech, and the Sage, from Kaid of Hind to Sikandar	103
11 How Sikandar tested the Sage, the Leech, and the Cup sent by Kaid of Hind	104
12 How Sikandar led a Host against Fur of Hind and wrote a Letter to him	110
13 How Fur answered the Letter of Sikandar	111
14 How Sikandar arrayed his Host to fight with Fur of Hind and made iron Steeds and Riders filled with Naphtha	112
15. How the Host of Sikandar fought with the Host of Fur, how Fur was slain by Sikandar, and how Sikandar seated Sawurg upon the Throne of Fur	116
16. How Sikandar went on a Pilgrimage to the House of the Kaaba	119
17. How Sikandar led his troops from Judda toward Misr	121
18. Sikandar's Letter to Kaidafa, Queen of Andalus, and her Answer	123
19. How Sikandar led his Troops to Andalus and took the Hold of King Faryan	124
20. How Sikandar went as an Ambassador to Kaidafa and was recognised by her	127
21 How Kaidafa counselled Sikandar	132
22 How Tamush, the Son of Kaidafa, was wroth with Sikandar, and how Sikandar took Precaution against him	134

SIKANDAR (*continued*)—

SECT	PAGE
23. How Sikandar made a Compact with Kardafa and returned to his Troops	138
24. How Sikandar went to the Country of the Brahmans, inquired into then Mysteries, and received an Answer	143
25 How Sikandar came to the Western Sea and saw Wonders	147
26 How Sikandar reached the Land of Habash, fought, and was victorious	149
27 How Sikandar reached the Land of the Narmpar, how he fought and was victorious, how he slew a Dragon, ascended a Mountain, and was forewarned of his own Death	150
28 How Sikandar reached the City of Women, named Harurn, and saw Wonders there	153
29 How Sikandar went into the Gloom to seek the Water of Life and spake with Birds and Israfil	159
30 How Sikandar went to the East, saw Wonders, and built a Barrier against Yajuj and Majuj	163
31 How Sikandar saw a Corpse in a Palace of Jewels on the Top of a Mountain, and the Speaking Tree, and how he was warned of his Death	166
32 How Sikandar marched his Army to Chin, carried his own Letter to Faghfur, and returned to his Army with the Answer	169
33 How Sikandar returned from Chin, made war against the Sindians, and went to Yaman	174
34 How Sikandar marched toward Babil and found the Treasure of Kai Khusrau in a City .	176
35. How Sikandar went to the City of Babil, wrote a Letter to Arastahs, and received his Answer	178
36 Sikandar's Letter to his Mother	181
37. How Sikandar's Life ended and how they carried his Coffin to Iskandariya .	183
38. How the Sages and other Folk lamented Sikandar	185
39. How the Mother and Wife of Sikandar lamented him	187
40. Firdausi's Complaint of the Sky and Appeal to God	189

THE ASHKANIAN DYNASTY	
SECT	PAGE
1 The Praise of Mahmud	207
2 The Tubal Kings	210
3 How Papak saw Sasan in a Dream and gave him a Daughter in Marriage	211
4 How Aidshii Papakan was born, and of his Case with Ardawan	213
5 How Ardawan's Slave-girl fell in Love with Ardshir and how he fled with her to Pars	217
6 How Ardawan heard of the Flight of Ardshir with the Damsel and pursued them	220
7 How Ardawan wrote to Bahman, his Son, to take Ardshir	223
8 How Tabak helped Ardshii, fought with Bahman, and conquered him	225
9. How Ardawan led forth his Host for Battle with Ardshir and was slam	227
10 How Ardshir fought with the Kurds and was defeated	230
11 How Ardshir attacked the Kuids by Night and overthrew them	232
12 The Story of Haftwad and the Case of the Worm	232
13 How Ardshir fought with Haftwad and was worsted	236
14 How Mihrak of Jahram sacked the Palace of Ardshir	237
15. How Ardshir heard about the Worm and made Shift to slay it	239
16 How Aidshir slew Haftwad	244

THE SASANIAN DYNASTY

ARDSHIR PAPAN—

1. How Ardshir Papakan sat upon the Throne in Baghdad .	258
2. The Case of Ardshir and the Daughter of Ardawan	259
3 How Shapur was born to Ardshir by the Daughter of Ardawan, and how after seven Years Ardshir heard of his Son and acknowledged him	261
4 How Ardshir, to find out the Future of his Reign, sent to Kaid of Hind, and Kard's Reply .	266
5. The Adventure of Shapur with the Daughter of Mihrak, and his taking her to Wife .	268

ARDSHIR PAPAKAN (*continued*)—

SECT	PAGE
6 How Urmuzd was born to Shapur by the Daughter of Mihrak	271
7 Of the Wisdom of Ardashir and his Method of administering the Realm	273
8 How Kharrad praised Ardashir	284
9 On the Faithlessness of Fortune	285
10 How Ardashir charged Shapur and died	286
11 Thanksgiving to the Maker and Praise of Mahmud, the great King	291

SHAPUR, SON OF ARDSHIR—

1 How Shapur sat upon the Throne and delivered a Charge to the Chieftains	295
2 How Shapui fought with the Rumans, how Bazanush, then General, was taken Prisoner, and how Caesai made Peace with Shapur	296
3 How Shapur seated Urmuzd upon the Throne and died	299

URMUZD, SON OF SHAPUR—

1 How Urmuzd addressed the Assembly	302
2 How Urmuzd gave up the Throne to Bahram, charged him, and died	303

BAHRAM, SON OF URMUZD—

1 How Bahram succeeded to the Throne, charged the Nobles, and died	307

BAHRAM, SON OF BAHRAM—

1 How Bahram, Son of Bahram, ascended the Throne, charged the Nobles, and died	311

BAHRAM BAHRAMIYAN—

1, How Bahram Bahramiyan succeeded to the Throne and died four Months after	313

NARSI, SON OF BAHRAM—

1 How Narsi succeeded to the Throne, counselled his Son, and died	315

URMUZD, SON OF NARSI—

1. How Urmuzd, Son of Narsi, ascended the Throne, and how his Life ended	318

SHAPUR, SON OF URMUZD, SURNAMED ZU'L AKTAF—

SECT	PAGE
1. How Shapur, Son of Urmuzd, was born forty Days after his Father's Death, and how he was crowned	328
2 How Tair, the Arab, carried off the Daughter of Narsi and married her, how Shapur went to Yaman to fight him, and how his Daughter fell in Love with Shapur .	330
3 How Tair was bemused by his Daughter and how she came to Shapur, who took the Hold and slew Tail	333
4 How Shapur went disguised as a Merchant to Rum, how he was taken by Caesar, and how Cesar ravaged the Land of Iran	335
5. How the Damsel took Measures to free Shapur, and how he fled with her from Rum	339
6 How the High Priest and the Captain of the Host, hearing of Shapur's Arrival, went to him with the Troops	345
7 How Shapur made a Night-attack, and how Caesar was taken	346
8. How Shapur went to Rum and fought with Yanus, Csesar's Brother	351
9. How the Rumans placed Bazanush upon the Throne of Csesar, his Letter to Shapur and the Answer	353
10. How Bazanush went to Shapur and made a Treaty of Peace	355
11. How Mani, the Painter, came to Shapur with Pretence of being a Prophet, and was slain	358
12 How Shapur made his Brother Ardshir Regent till his own Son should grow up, and how his Days ended	360

AHDSHIR, BROTHER OF SHAPUR—

1 How Ardshir sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers	363

SHAPUR, SON OF SHAPUR—

1 How Shapur, Son of Shapur, sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers	365

BAHRAM, SON OF SHAPUR—

SECT	PAGE
I. How Bahram sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers	368

YAZDAGIRD, SON OF SHAPUR—

1. How Yazdagird sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers	374
2. How Bahram Gur, Son of Yazdagird, was born and sent to be brought up by Munzir, the Arab	375
3. How Bahram went to the Chase with a Damsel and how he displayed his Accomplishment	382
4. How Bahram showed his Accomplishment in the Chase before Munzir	384
5. How Bahram came with Nu'man to Yazdagird	386
6. How Yazdagird put Bahram in Bonds, how he escaped by the good Offices of Tamush, and how he returned to Munzir	389
7. How Yazdagird, by the Advice of an Archmage, went to the Spring of Sav and was killed by a Water-horse	391
8. How the Iranians took Counsel and placed Khusrau upon the Throne	394
9. How Bahram Gur heard of the Death of his Father and invaded Iran	395
10. How the Iranians heard of Bahram's Pillaging and wrote to Munzir, and how he replied	397
11. How Bahram Gur arrived at Jahram with the Host of Munzir, and how the Iranians went out to him	400
12. How Bahram Gur harangued the Iranians as to his Fitness to rule, how they rejected him but promised him the Kingship if he would take the Crown from between the Lions	402
13. How Bahram and Khusrau went to the Waste, and how Bahram slew the Lions and took his Seat upon the Throne	409

INDEX	413

THE SHAHNAMA

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE SASANIANS

(ACCORDING to the *Shahnama*¹)

Sasan = d of Papak

Ardshir Papakan (22) = d of Ardawim

Shapur (23)=d of Mihrak

Urmuzd (24)

Bahrain (25)

Bahrain (2b)

Bahiam (27)

|

Narsi (28)

Nusba=Taii

Urmuzd (29)

Malika=Shipur (30) = Dilafruz-i-Farrukhpai Aidshir (31)

|

Shapur (32)

Bahram (33)

Yazdagird (34)

|

a daughter

Sapinfid d of Shangul = Bahram Gur (35)
and many other
wives

Narsi

|

|

Yazdagud (36)

Piruz (38)

Hurmuz (37)

|

I

Persian lady = Kubad (40)

I

Balash (39)

I

Jamasp

d of the Khan = Nushirwan (41) = a Christian lady

I

I

I

Hurmuzd (42) five
other
sons

Rustam

Maryam =
d of
Caesar

Khusrau (43) =
Parwiz

Shirin and Gurdaya s of Bahram
Chubina

Kubad (44)
(Shirwi)

I

Nastur

I

Shahryar

I

Farud

I

Mardanshah

Ardshir (45)

Yazdagird (50)

Guraz(46) Farrukhzad (49) many Purandukht (47) Azarmdukht (48)
(usurper) other sons

¹ From Khusrau Parwiz onward some of the relationships, left vague in the poem, are given from other sources.

ABBREVIATIONS

C —Macan's edition of the Shahnama.

L —Lumsden's do

P.—Mohl's do

T —Tihran do.

V — Vullers' do,

AM. The Vorage and Travayle of Sir John Maundeville,
Knight Edited . by John Ashton.

AS. The Shah Nameh of . Firdausi Translated and
abridged . By James Atkinson, Esq

BAG A History of Ancient Geography. By E H, Bunbury,
F R G S.

BAN. A Plain and Literal Translation of the Arabian Nights'
Entertainments By Richard F Burton

BBR Buddhist Records of the Western World Translated from
the Chinese of Hiuen Tsiang (A D 629). By Samuel
Beal

BHA. The History of Alexander the Great, being the Syriac
Version of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes Edited . . with
an English Translation and Notes, by Ernest A Wallis
Budge, M A.

BLEA The Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great, being a
Series of Translations of the Ethropic Histories of
Alexandei By E A Walks Budge, Litt.D., F S A.

DAA. Arnani Anabasis . F Dubner.

DAI Arnani Indica. . F Dubner.

DEI. J. Darmaateter, Etudes Iranrennes.

DHA The History of Antiquity. From the German of Professor
Max Duncker By the late Evelyn Abbott, M A

- EHl The History of India as told by its own Historians. By Sir H. M. Elliot, K.C.B.
- GDF. The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire By Edward Gibbon, Esq. With Notes by Dean Milman and M Guizot. Edited, with additional Notes, by William Smith, LL D
- GH. The Land of the Hittites . By John Garstang, D.Sc,
- GKS. Kleme Schriften von Alfred von Gutschmid.
- HB. The Country of Balochistan . By A W. Hughes, F R.G.S.
- HQC. Q. Curtius Rufus. . . ed Edmundus Hedicke.
- JRGS. The Journal of the Royal Geographical Society.
- LAN. The Arabian Nights' Entertainments A New Translation from the Arabic . . By Edward William Lane
- MA. Alexandre le Grand Par Paul Meyer
- MCAI. Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian. . . By J. W M'Crindle, M.A
- MCI. The Invasion of India by Alexander the Great. . . By J. W M'Crindle, M A New Edition
- MF. Rehqua Armani et Scriptorum de rebus Alexandri M. Fragmenta collegit. Carolus Muller
- MM. Mac,oudi Left Prairies d'Or Texte et Traduction, par C Barbier de Meynard et Pavet de Courteille
- MPC. Pseudo-Calhsthenes, primum edidit Carolus Mullerus.
- NAR Bertrage zur Geschichte des Alexanderromans, von Prof. Dr. Th. Noldeke in Denkschriften der . . Akademie der Wissenschaften. Wien, 1890
- NIN. Das Iramsche Nationalepos von Theodor Noldeke
- NK Geschichte des Artachsir 1 Papakan aus dem Pehlewi übersetzt . . von Th. Noldeke
- NT. Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden von Th. Noldeke
- RK. The Koran Translated . . by the Rev. J. M. Rodwell, M.A.

- RM. The Rauzat-us-safa, or, Garden of Purity. . . By .
 Mirkhond. . . , Translated . . . by E. Rehatsek
- RSM. The Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy. By George
 Rawhnsen, M.A.
- SK. The Koran. . . . Translated . . . by George Sale, Gent,
- SM. History of the Early Kings of Persia. . . Translated
 from the original . . Persian of Mirkhond . . . by
 David Shea.
- SP. The Periplus of the Erythraean Sea. . . . Translated
 from the Greek and annotated by Wilfred H. Schoff,
 A M
- WPT. Dr. E. W. West's Translation of the Pahlavi Texts in the
 Sacred Books of the East Reference to Parts and
 pages.
- YMP. The Book of Ser Marco Polo . . . newly translated. .
 By Colonel Henry Yule, C.B.
- ZT. Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mo'hammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-
 Yezid Taban, traduite.... Par M. Hermann Zotenburg,

NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION

a as in " water "

i as in " pique "

u as in " rude "

a as in " servant "

i as in " sin "

u as in " foot. "

ai as in " time. "

au as *ou* in " cloud "

g is always hard as in " give "

kh as *ch* in the German " buch "

zh as *z* in " azure "

II

THE KAIANIAN DYNASTY

(Concluded)

XVIII

DARAB

HE REIGNED TWELVE YEARS

ARGUMENT

Darab establishes himself upon the throne, defeats the Arabs and the Rumans, and marries the daughter of Failakus, the Caesar. Conceiving, however, a dislike for his spouse, he sends her back to her father, at whose court her child is born, named Sikandar, for the reason given in the story, and brought up by Failakus as his own son and heir. Darab meanwhile marries again, has another son—Dara—falls into ill-health, appoints Dura his successor, and dies.

NOTE

At this point in the *Shahnama*, in as much as this and the two following reigns deal almost entirely with the subject of Alexander the Great, who is known to Orientals under the name of Iskandar or Sikandar, there is an important change in the provenance and character of the subject-matter. We have had an instance already in which it seemed probable that recourse was being had indirectly to Greek writers,¹ but in the present case the debt to them is indisputable. The basis of the whole account is Greek, and so in a great measure is the superstructure, but the latter to some extent has been pulled down and rebuilt, modified in detail, and added to, by Egyptian, Arabic, and Persian hands. As a general introduction to the three following reigns, therefore, it will be well to set before the reader in outline such facts as are necessary for the proper understanding of the accounts given in the reigns in question.

Alexander the Great, in his expedition to the East, was accompanied by a literary and scientific staff, in order that the results

¹ See Vol. v. p. 281.

achieved might be handed down to posterity in a way worthy of so great an occasion. Thus Eumenes kept the royal diary,¹ Bseton and Drognetus recorded the distances traversed,² Aristobulus was interested in matters geographical, ethnological, and botanical,² while Calhsthenes and others drew up general histories. Some of Alexander's commanders too, such as Ptolemy, son of Lagus, who became King of Egypt, Nearchus, the admiral, and Onesicritus, the pilot, of Alexander's fleet, also left accounts, as did others who were contemporaries but took no part in the expedition. The result was a large assortment of kindred works, not one of which is extant in its original form, though later writers have preserved a good deal of the substance, and in some cases fragments, of the originals. Thus Arrian, our best authority on the whole subject, based his *Anabam* on Ptolemy and Aristobulus,⁴ and in his *Indica* made much use of Nearchus.⁵ Arrian, however, tells us that even Ptolemy and Aristobulus were not always in agreement,⁶ and further, that though Alexander's expedition served to explode many fables, it at the same time led to the fabrication of fresh ones.⁷ Onesicritus, for instance, who, though only the pilot, claimed in his account to have been the admiral,⁸ of Alexander's fleet, heard tell of two dragons, or serpents, measuring 80 and 140 cubits in length respectively,² and speaks of whales off the coast of Baluchistan as being half a stade, i. e. over 100 yards, long, and broad in proportion.¹⁰ Breton relieved the prosaic details of mensuration with the account of a sylvan folk—natives of Mount Iniaus—who had backward-pointing feet.¹¹ Again, the question as to whether or no the Amazons visited Alexander split the early authorities into two separate camps.¹² We may conclude, therefore, that the seeds of the Romance that grew up in later times round the personality of Alexander the Great were sown in his lifetime. The growth thus started not merely increased in bulk by a natural process of evolution in succeeding centuries, but also absorbed materials that originally had no connexion at all with him and his undertakings. Thus, for example, when the historic facts of his career had grown somewhat dim in the popular mind, the expedition in B. C. 332 of his uncle Alexander I of Epirus to

¹ MF, p. 121.

² Id. 134.

³ Id. 94.

⁴ DAA, Pref., Bk. v. c. 7.

⁵ DAI, c. 18 seq.

⁸ DAA, 111. 4; iv. 14.

⁷ Id. v. 4.

⁸ Id. vi. 2.

⁹ MF, p. 50, fr. 7.

¹⁰ Id. p. 57, fr. 30. This, however, was quite a moderate estimate. Pliny, in his *Nat. Hist.*, lib. IX, sect. 2, ed. Ludovicus Janus, speaks of "Bakense quaternum iugerum."

¹¹ Id. 135, fr. 3.

¹² Plutarch, *Life of Alexander*, c. 46.

Italy became part of his legend,¹ and he was credited later on with having visited Candace, the Ethiopian queen, at Meroe. We may assume, too, that the experiences of the rank and file of his time-expired veterans, military and naval, lost nothing in the telling. Speaking generally too, the travellers' tales, often based on misunderstood metaphor or misinterpreted natural phenomena—tales such as in after-times were told by the friar Odorico and Sir John Maun deville—would add their quota to the romance of the subject. The reader will find examples of such fables in the reign of Sikandar. Long before his time, however, they had made their way from India to Greece. Homer knew something of them, so did Herodotus, so did Hecateus probably, and so beyond doubt did Ctesias. Moreover, no form was too monstrous or abnormal for the Indian imagination to conceive with respect to god or demon or beings, like the Rakshasas, who were a blend of demon and of man. The companions of Alexander merely heard over again what earlier adventurers had heard, but their association with Alexander brought about a special association of such tales with him.

It should be noted further that the Greeks, like ourselves, had two Indies—an Eastern and a Western—and consequently the fables derived from and respecting the Indians or, as they were called, Ethiopians, were held to apply to the West as well as to the East²

It was in Egypt—the land which he had delivered from the hated Persians and where Ptolemy and his successors had maintained the Alexandrian tradition and had ruled with so much glory—and it was at Alexandria, which the great conqueror had founded and where he was buried, that the Greek Romance of Alexander, so far as we are aware, first received literary form and expression. The author is unknown, but appears to have written about the third century of the Christian era. The authorship is attributed in one of the extant MSS. of the work to the historian Callisthenes, the relative of Aristotle through whose influence it came about that he accompanied Alexander to the East. His rough comments, however, on Alexander's adoption of Persian customs were not well received by the conqueror, he was imprisoned and died in captivity. The title of "The Pseudo-Calisthenes," by which the Romance now is known, is said to have been bestowed upon it in the first instance by Isaac Casaubon.³

The work no longer is extant in what we may call its primitive form, but this, branching in three directions, gave use to a numerous progeny of MSS, of which some twenty still survive

¹ NAR, p. 4; MPC, Bk. 1. c. 29, - See p 68. ³ MA, 11 4

Three of them, known as A, B, and C respectively, are preserved in the National Library in Paris, and to one or other of these three the rest of the MSS. are said to conform in character.¹ The MS. known as A, a very early Latin version of the Romance supposed to have been made by one Julius Valerius early in the fifth century A.D., and an Armenian version of about the same date,² are looked upon as representing collectively the nearest approximation that we possess to the original work. The MS. known as B is the only one of the three that attributes the authorship to Callisthenes.³

During the seventh century A.D. some Greek text of the Romance, conforming generally to the A type, was translated into middle Persian, or Pahlavi, as it is called, and this Pahlavi version was retranslated shortly afterwards into Syriac. No trace of the Pahlavi version remains, and there is no scrap of historical evidence to indicate that such a work ever existed, but the Syriac version is still extant, and has been edited with an English translation by Budge. We call it BHA, and shall have occasion frequently to refer to it in the ensuing pages.

It was the publication of this Syriac version that led Professor Noldeke to infer, and satisfactorily to prove, that a Pahlavi version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes once must have existed. Such proofs naturally are very technical, but one example may be given by way of illustration. It concerns the transliteration of proper names unknown to the Syriac translator. Noldeke found that in the Syriac version the letter *I* was substituted for the letter *r* in such words as Osiris, Abdera, Kraterus, Parmenion, and others, while, on the other hand, *i* was substituted for *I* in Plataea, Eumelus, Candaules, &c. Now, there is nothing in the form of these two letters, as they are written in Greek, Arabic, or in Syriac itself to account for such substitutions and interchanges, but it so happens that in Pahlavi the same sign stands for both *I* and *r*, and the conclusion follows that the Syriac version was made not from the Greek or Arabic, but from the Pahlavi.⁴

Appended to all the MSS. of the Syriac version, distinct from it, but, like it, based upon the Pseudo-Callisthenes, there is

¹ *Id*² MPC, p. xxvi.³ *Id* viii and i.

⁴ The proofs referred to above will be found set out at large in NAR, p. 11 *acq*. The present writer desires to take this opportunity to acknowledge generally and once for all his indebtedness not only to this work, but also to Professor Noldeke's edition of the *Karnamak-i-Ardshir-i-Papakdn* (NK) and of *Tabarf's History of the Sasanians* (NT). The first two concern the present volume of this translation only, but the last will be in constant requisition till the end. All three, and to them we must add the *Iranian National Epos* (NIN), are invaluable.

extant a Syriac Christian Legend of Alexander which claims to be taken from the manuscripts in the house of the archives of the kings of Alexandria¹ This Legend was composed about the years A.D. 514 or 515, and seems to have been suggested by an incursion of the Huns through the Caucasus, which took place at that time. The author writes as one horror-stricken at the uncouth aspect and savagery of the invaders, and at the rum caused by them. Shortly after its composition, it was turned into verse, with some additions by the Synac poet, Jacob of Sarug, who died in A.D. 521. The legend, and the additions thus made to it, derive respectively from branches B and C of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, and their subject-matter became known to Muhammad, who made use of it in the Kuran, where Alexander is referred to under the title of "Zii-'l-karnain," or "The Two-horned," that name having been suggested by the Legend, where we read "The Lord said to him (Alexander), 'Behold I have magnified thee above all kingdoms, and I have made horns of iron to grow on thy head, that thou mayest thrust down the kingdoms of the earth with them.'² Naturally, Zu-'l-karnain became an interesting personality to the followers of Muhammad. The passage in the Kunin referring to him was much commented on, and the Syriac accounts of him were translated into Arabic. Now it was to the interest of learned Persians, living under Arab rule in the centuries succeeding the Muhammadan conquest of Iran, to impress their masters with the sense of the past greatness of the empire that they had subdued, and for this purpose the legends of the vanquished race were translated into Arabic. It obviously was desirable that so great a hero as Alexander, and one so interesting to the followers of the Prophet, should be utilised, and in order to effect this the whole Persian traditional view of Alexander was altered. As we have seen already,³ he was held in hate and horror in Sasanian times as the arch-persecutor and would-be exterminator of Zoroastrianism, he was one of a trinity of ill, of which the other two were Zahhak and Afrasiyab. Persians, however, that had been converted to, or had been brought up in, the Muhammadan Faith soon came to regard Alexander from another standpoint. To them he was no longer an evil being who had striven to uproot the true religion, but the hero commissioned by God to overthrow a false one, in fact another Asfandiyar with other and better aims, for had not his credentials been countersigned by the

¹ BHA, p. 144

² *Id.*, 156. There is a similar passage, p. 146. For the Syriac Legend generally see NAR, 27 *seq.* For the passage in the Kuran see pp. 77-78

³ See Vol. 1. pp. 59, 61, 63, and *of.* pp. 224, 240.

Prophet himself? This change of view robbed such memories as still survived of Alexander's triumph over Darius Codomanus of much of their bitterness, and it only remained to abate it altogether by legitimating the conqueror's position. This was easily managed, for the author of the Pseudo-Callisthenes had suggested a way. Concerned for the honour of his country by birth or adoption, he had made Alexander out to be the son of the last native king of Egypt—Nectanebus II—who had succeeded, it was said, in passing himself off to Olympias, the wife of Philip II of Macedon, during the latter's absence at the wars, as no less a person than Amen-Ra, the two-horned god of Egypt. The Egyptians were old hands at this sort of falsification. Herodotus tells us¹ that Cambyses, after his conquest of Egypt, was made out by the Egyptians to be the son of Nitetis, a daughter of Apries. What Egyptians had done the Persians could do, the necessary story was substituted for that of Nectanebus, as we shall read in this reign, Sikandar became the eldest son of Shah Darab, and the oppressor of Iran one of its national heroes.

At what precise period Alexander assumed his station in the long line of the Shahs is not known, and probably never will be. In the Pahlavi version, made, it would seem, by some one who was neither an orthodox Zoroastrian nor an orthodox Muhammadan, he was still, as we see from its Syriac representative, the son of Nectanebus, in Firdausi he is the son of Darab. Between the two accounts there is a space of some three centuries or more. We may reduce the interval somewhat by assuming, as we may, that the metamorphosis had been completed in the days when Firdausi was growing up, and a new edition of the *Bastan-nama* in modern Persian was being compiled in the middle of the tenth century by order of Abu Mansur.² This, we may assume, contained a version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes as it existed after centuries of adaptation by Persian and Arabic hands. The ascription of a Persian paternity to Alexander can be traced further back. It was known to Tabari who died in A D 922, and to Dinawari who died in A D 896.³ Neither of them endorses the story, but merely gives it a place among the other accounts that, in accord to the method of Arabic historians, they give of the same event. As these accounts consist of the statements of older authorities, we may consider that the story was current early in the ninth century A D. Most unfortunately the work that, more than all others, would have thrown light upon that and many another point, and taken us back to the middle of the eighth century, is no longer extant. This was the Arabic translation of the

¹ Bk in c. 2. ² See Vol I p 67 seq ³ See NAR, pp. 35, 44

Bastan-nama made by Ibn Mukaffa. He was a Zoroastrian who became a Muhammadan late in life, thereby, as was said of him, merely exchanging one corner of hell for another, as his orthodoxy was more than suspect. He was learned both in the Pahlavi and in the Arabic, and was put to death about A D. 760. It is not unlikely that he was responsible for the inclusion of Alexander among the legitimate Shahs. By all accounts he was just the right man in the right place for such an undertaking.

It is hoped that the above sketch may be sufficient to indicate the provenance of the Romance of Alexander the Great and how it came about that it was incorporated into Iranian national legend. It will be seen that it reached Firdausi in a mingled stream. The basis is Greek, and the Pseudo-Calhsthenes itself is based on history. The broad facts are there. It tells us that Alexander was a Grecian king, that he conquered Egypt, invaded and subdued Iran, penetrated into India, defeated Porus, returned, died at Babylon, and was buried at Alexandria. Its author introduced Egyptian elements and additions, and it underwent further adaptations at Persian and Arab hands. These will be noted and dealt with as they occur in this and the two following reigns. The vogue of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, however, is not to be circumscribed within such limits as these. For many centuries it superseded the more historic accounts of Alexander that still are extant, and versions, in addition to those already mentioned, have appeared in Latin, Hebrew, Turkish, Ethiopic,¹ Coptic, English, French, German, Italian, Spanish, Norwegian, Swedish, Dutch, Slavonic, Malay, and Siamese.²

Darab, the last of the mythical Shahs, does not appear in the Zandavasta, with which at this point we part company. In order to connect him with the Karaman dynasty he was made the hero of a foundling legend, as we saw in the previous volume.³ His name was suggested by that of his successor Dara—the historical Darius Codomanus—who was remembered in connexion with the invasion of Persia by Alexander the Great, and his inclusion among the Shahs was due to the necessity of providing his successor with a father. Later on he was called upon again to act in that capacity to his successor's conqueror.

§ 1 Darabgird, now Darab, is 111 Pars, some fifty miles south of the salt lake Niris, which also is referred to.

§ 2 Bolder wais between the Iramans and the northern Arabs were of frequent occurrence.* For Shu'rb of. NT, p. 57, note.

¹ Also edited and translated by Budge, and referred to in this work as BLEA.

² See BHA, p. lxxviii seq.

³ Vol. v p. 294 seq.

⁴ Cf pp. 322, 330, Vol. 1. p. 11, 11. p. 81.,

VOL. VI.

§§ 3-4 The account here given of the incidents that led up to the birth of Sikandar is a Persian substitution for the Egyptian story told in the Pseudo-Calhsthenes,¹ and in the Syriac version.² The oft-told tale is briefly as follows. Nectanebus³ was king of Egypt and a great magician. By his magic arts he had triumphed on all occasions over his enemies. At length the time came when he perceived that his spells no longer would avail to protect his country from invaders, so, disguising himself, he fled to Macedonia, where he set up as a soothsayer. His fame soon reached the ears of Olympias, the wife of Philip of Macedon, who then was absent on a campaign. She had heard a rumour that he intended to divorce her and take another spouse. Accordingly she made up her mind to consult Nectanebus, and summoned him. He came, and at once was smitten with her beauty. She sought his advice on the matter of the divorce, and he told her that the rumour was not false, but that he could help her. He then went on to inform her that she would have a son by the two-homed god of Egypt—Amen. With the aid of dreams sent by his magic arts he reconciled first her and then Philip to the situation, peisonated the god himself, and thus became the father of Alexander the Great, taking good care that the birth of the child should occur at the most auspicious astrological moment.

The foal, stated in the text to have been born at the same time as Alexander, is of course the famous steed Bucephalus, which accompanied him in his campaigns as far as the river Hydaspes, the modern Jhilm, and either was killed by the son of Porus when Alexander was forcing the passage of that river or died shortly afterwards of toil and decrepitude at the age of thirty years. Alexander founded two cities by the river in memory of his charger and of his victory over Porus, and named them respectively Bucephala (JaLilpur?) and Nicsea (Mong?)⁴ It is only in the Persian and Ethiopic versions of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes that the births of Alexander and Bucephalus are made to synchronise, which shows that both accounts come from an Arabic source, for as the Syriac version represents a no longer extant Pahlavi version, so the Ethiopic derives from a lost Arabic one. In the Ethiopic version Bucephalus is a mare.⁵

¹ MPC, Bk. 1 c 1-12

² BHA, Bk. 1. c. 1-12

³ Historically, Nectanebus II, or more properly Nekht-neb-f, of the thirtieth dynasty, was the last native king to rule in Egypt. The Persian Shall, Artaxerxes Ochus, after having been repulsed by him in several campaigns, succeeded in conquering the country in B.c. 343. Nectanebus escaped to Ethiopia.

⁴ DAA, Bk. v, c. 14, 19, MCI, p. 110, *note*.

⁵ BLEA, pp. 19, 37

§ 3. We have here a reference to Russia if the reading is correct. P reads "Sus" The word "Rus" (Byzantine Ῥῶς) dates from the ninth century A D, when Northmen (Scandinavians) founded the Russian Empire It may be a corruption of *rothsmen*, "rowers"¹ The Russians were in evidence in Firdausi's days²

§ 4 In the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, Bk 1 c 13, and in the Syriac version *loc. cit.*, Philip is said to have chosen the name Alexander in memory of a dead son, so called, whom he had had by a former wife According to one of the accounts in Tabari, the mother of Alexander was the daughter of the king of the Rumans and named Halai (Olympias³) The Shah, her husband, finding that she was troubled by an unpleasant odour, gave orders that means should be found to remedy this The doctors agreed to exhibit the wood of a tree called in Persian *sandar* They boiled it and washed her with the extract This, to a great extent, did away with the smell, but not entirely, and, as the cure was not complete, the Shih sent her back to her father She was already with child, however, and when her son was born she composed his name by putting her own and that of the tree together, and called him Halai-Sandarus, that is the primitive form of Al Iskandarus³ Sandar appears to be a shortened form of *sandarus*, the Arar tree, *Callitrus quadrivalus*, a native of north-west Africa, which produces the resin known as "gum jumper" or "sandarach," the latter a word often used in the Shcihndma⁴ Firdausi takes a different view of the meaning of Iskandar He makes that word equivalent to Iskandarus, but he attributes to it apparently its proper meaning It is derived either from the Greek *σκόροδον*, garlic, or the Latin *ascalomum*, shallot. In any case the treatment that the lady underwent appears to have been more or less homoeopathic in character

¹ See GDF, vn 80, and *note Encyclopædia Britannica*, 11th ed., s v Russia

² Cf Vol IV p 316

³ NAK, p 44

⁴ Cf. Vol I p. 74.

§1

How Darab built the City of Darabgird

V. 1775 Now from the Maker on earth's king call we
 A benediction down. That Shah sun-faced,
 Who, O Abu'l Kasim the world hath graced
 With lovingkindness and with equity,
 Doth make of right and justice all his quest,
 And in his justice suffereth naught amiss
 Oh be the world bright with that crown of his—
 Mahmiid's—and may his whole career be blest.
 May he be young till youth itself be o'er,
 And live till life itself shall be no more '

What said the ancient, rustic bard who told
 About Gushtasp, renowned Bahman,¹ and chiefs
 Whose counsels prospered, told about Darab,
 And of the rede and usance of Humai ?

Now when Darab² sat on the Karan throne
 He girded up his loins, oped wide his hand,
 And thus harangued the archmages and the chiefs,
 The magnates and the prudent-hearted sages •—
 " I did not woo the world by toil and justice,
 God set the crown upon my head, and none

V 1776 Will see a case in public or in private
 More wonderful than mine , while as for me
 I can but make return by doing right
 That men may bless me after I am gone
 None must be irked by travail for my sake
 In this my season for amassing treasure.
 May this age prosper under my just rule,
 And may my subjects' hearts be jubilant."

¹ Ardshir III the original, but cf Vol v. p 282.

² Dara in the original, but of id p 297 and note.

Then out of Hindustan and out of Rum,
 From every wealthy march and peopled land,
 Ambassadors with gifts and offerings
 Came to secure the favour of the Shah.

It happened that one day he went to view
 The herds of horses that were running wild,
 And, coming from the lowlands to the mountains,
 Observed a deep and boundless lake. He gave
 Commandment that from Hind and from the Rumans
 Experienced master-workmen should be brought
 To open out a channel from the lake,
 And send a river into all the land.
 When these skilled men had set the water free
 He bade them to erect a splendid city,
 And, when the wall around it was complete,
 They gave thereto the name of Darabgird
 He lit the Fire upon the mountain-top,
 Whereto the worshippers of Fire resorted,
 And then artificers of every craft
 Were summoned, and the city was adorned.

The Shah sent countless hosts to every quarter,
 Safeguarded all the world from enemies,
 Released it from the fear of any foe,
 And rent in twam their hearts that wished him woe.

§ 2

How Darab defeated the Hod of Shu'ib

It came to pass that five score thousand Arabs,
 Brave, spear-armed cavaliers, marched forth, Shu'ib—
 A chief sprung from Katib—commanded them.
 The monarch of Iran led forth a host,
 'Tis said, beyond compute. The armies met,
 The world was all in dudgeon at the troops;

V 1777

The earth could not support them; none had room
 To stir within that land. The rain of arrows,
 And double-headed javelins, made the soil
 A cistern seem of blood. On every side
 The war-cry rose, and corpses showed in piles.
 Thus for three days and nights the battle waged,
 The age was straitened to the combatants
 The Arabs on the fourth day turned away,
 And in the night fled from the scene of strife,
 Shu'ib himself was slain upon the field
 Of battle, and the Arabs' day was done
 A host of Arab steeds with poplar saddles,
 A mass of helmets, spears, and coats of mail—
 The havings of the fugitives—remained
 With that world's lord, the offspring of Humai,
 Who gave the whole thereof—the steeds and spears,
 The helms and swords—in largess to the troops.
 He chose a marchlord, one among the host,
 Who understood the language of the folk,
 And sent him to demand the tribute due
 From those waste parts, that year's and last year's
 too.

§ 3

*How Darab fought with Failahus and took to Wife his
 Daughter*

Darab marched from the desert of the spearmen
 Rum-ward to war against that prosperous land
 Now Failakus was monarch of the realm,
 He and the king of Rus were close allies.
 They wrote to say "The offspring of Humai
 Hath led forth countless troops."

On hearing this

The prince of Rum bethought him of old feuds,

DARAB

And levied soldiers in 'Ammuriya,¹
All men renowned upon the day of battle.
The chiefs of Rum, what time Darab drew nigh,
Abandoned all the coast and borderland,
While from 'Ammunya marched Failakus,
He and his captains, warriors, and troops.
They fought two mighty battles in three days,
And on the fourth day when the sun arose
Both Failakus and all his army fled;
Not one retained his helm or Ruman casque.
The Iranians took the wives and children captive,
And slaughtered many with their showers of arrows
When fleeing from Darab the Rumans reached
The city but two thirds of them arrived,
The other had been slain erewhile or wounded,
The spear had been insistent at their backs
They sheltered there within that stronghold Many
Sought peace. An envoy came from Failakus,
Wise, shrewd, a bearer both of weal and woe,
With purses, slaves, and, as an offering,
Two caskets filled with royal jewelry
This was the message " Of the only God
I ask for guidance that we may conclude
This fight in feast Ne'er may we strive again,
But all be honesty and uprightness
Dark ways and crooked only end in loss
If to 'Ammunya, which is my seat,
Thou comest and art fain to capture it,
My heart will throb for honour and for fame,
And I will leave the feasting for the fighting
Act in the manner that becometh kings ,
Thy father was, and now his son is, Shah.'¹
Darab, on hearing this, convoked his lords,²

¹ Ancyra probably, the modern Angora, an important place on route from Byzantium to Armenia and Syria. There was also ancient Amorium in Phrygia, not far from the borders of Galatia.

² Reading with P

And told before them every circumstance.

"What say ye," said he, "touching this appeal,
Since Failakus is fain to save his face?"

The chiefs all called down blessings on the Shah,
And said "O Shah, shrewd-hearted, pure of Faith
The king of kings is greatest of the great,
Let him determine what is best to do
That famous monarch hath an only daughter
Of cypress-height and spring-like cheek. In Chin

V 179 One will not look upon so fair an Idol,
She shmeth mid the others like a signet.
The king of kings on seeing will approve her,
And that tall Cypress come within his Garden "

The Shah called in the ambassador from Rum,
Told him the counsel of those loyal lieges,
And said: "Go say to Caesar • 'If thou art
So fain to save thine honour thou possessest
Within thy bower a daughter, one who is
The crown upon the head of womanhood,
A perfect picture whom thou call'st Nahid,¹
And settest on a golden throne. Send her,
Together with the tribute due from Rum,
If thou wouldst dwell untroubled in that land."

The envoy heard and, coming like the wind,
Reported this to Caesar. Failakus,
And all the army, were rejoiced thereat,
Because the Shah would be his son-in-law.
The question of the tribute was discussed,
As to how much the king of Rum could pay,
And they agreed that in the month of Mihr
In every year the Shah should take from Caesar
A hundred thousand eggs of solid gold,
And with each egg a royal gem, each egg
To be two score miskals² in weight, each gem

¹ The planet Venus.

² A miskril=a dram and three sevenths.

DARAB

Of highest excellence. First, Failakus
Rewarded all his frontier-chiefs that dwelt
Within the peopled parts of Rum, and then
Commanded the philosophers, and all
That had an interest in those parts, to give
Their whole attention to prepare a road.
The nobles that escorted the princess
Brought every one his present. They made ready
A golden litter, slaves, and crown of gold,
Ten camels laden with brocade of Rum
With jewelled patterns on a golden ground,
Three hundred camel-loads of carpetings,
With other presents for the Shah. Within
The litter sat the entrancing Ruman maid
With prelate and with priest conducting her.
Nahi'd had sixty damsels in her tram,
Each with a golden goblet in her hand.
Within the goblet there were royal gems,
And every Idol wore her crown and earrings.
The bishop gave the fair one to Darab,
And paid the jewels to his treasurer
The Shah remained no longer on the field,
But marched back to Iran. He came to Pars,
Rejoicing, with his charming spouse, and set
Upon her head the royal coronet.

§4

*How Darab sent lack the Daughter of Failakus to Rum,
how Sihandar was born*

One night that Moon was sleeping with the Shah,
All gems and colour, scent and loveliness,
But verily her breathing was not sweet,
And grew disgustful to the king of kings,

Who shrank and turned his head away from her
 Upon the couch because her breath was foul.
 The monarch of Iran was grieved thereat,
 His mind was troubled and his soul all care.
 They summoned skilful leeches to Nahid,
 And one of them, a shrewd and prudent man,
 Examined till he found a remedy—
 A herb whereby the gullet is inflamed,
 Called in the Human tongue "Iskandar." This
 He rubbed upon the palate of the queen,
 And caused her eyes¹ to water lustily.
 The fetor fled away, her palate burned,
 Her face shone like brocade, but though the Fair
 Was sweet as musk Darab had ceased to love her,
 The monarch's heart turned coldly from his bride,
 And so he sent her back to Failakus.
 She was with child but told not any one

V. 1781 Nine months passed and from that fair dame was born
 A babe like radiant Sol She used to call him
 Sikandar² since he was so tall, well favoured,
 And sweet of breath, for she esteemed the name
 Of what had sweetened her own palate lucky,
 While Caesar told each chief: "There hath appeared
 A Caesar of my seed "

None named Darab,
 Sikandar was the son and Caesar sire,
 For Caesar shamed to say to any one —
 "Darab hath put away my child."

What time
 Sikandar's holy mother brought him forth,
 And one went to his grandsire with the tidings,
 There was within the stable a brown mare,
 In body lusty, swift and tall, and she
 That very night produced a foal all white,
 Short-shanked, and breasted like a lion. Caesar

¹ Literally eyelashes.

² Sikandar= Iskandar.

DARAB

Exulted o'er that mare because he deemed
That birth would prove a lucky sign for him.
He used at dawn to have the infant fetched,
Would have the trappings put upon the mare,
And then caress the foal on eyes and mane
Because it was coeval with Sikandar.

The sky revolved awhile with matters thus,
And years of varied fortune passed away,
Sikandar came to have a monarch's heart,
The utterance of heroes Caesar held him
More dearly than a son and used to place
The due adornments on his martial breast.
He gained in wisdom, aptitude good sense,
Weight, and intelligence. He was acknowledged
Successor on the throne to Failakus,
Who held him in regard in weal and woe.
He learned from tutors kings' accomplishments,
And thou hadst said that he was made to judge,
To found an empire, and to fill the throne.

Now when Nahid had gone back to her sire
Darab took unto him another wife,
And had by her a son of Grace divine
And puissance, and younger than Nahid's,
Named the same day Dara in hope that he
Might be yet more successful than his sire

Thereafter, when twelve years had passed away,
The Shah failed both in fortune and in limb,
Humai's illustrious offspring 'gan to fade,
And he was summoned to the other world
He called to him the magnates and the sages,
Conversed at large about the throne of power,
And said to them. " Dara, son of Darab,
Now will become your leader in all good.
Give ear to him, perform what he commandeth
And be his will the music of your souls,
Because this throne of kingship lasteth not,

And when joy cometh it is soon recalled.
Be instant ye, let love unite with justice,
And think on me too gladly."

This he said,

And heaved a sigh. The colour of his cheek
Turned from pomegranate-bloom to fenugreek.

XIX

DARA, SON OF DARAB

HE REIGNED FOURTEEN YEARS

ARGUMENT

After the death of Darab, his son Dara ascends the throne and administers the realm. Meanwhile Failakus dies, and Sikandar succeeds him in Rum. Dara sends to demand tribute of Rum, and Sikandar replies by invading Iran. He visits the camp of Dara as his own ambassador, and is recognised, but escapes. Three great battles are fought, in which Dara is defeated, and subsequently murdered by his own ministers. Sikandar finds Dara mortally wounded, promises to carry out his last wishes, executes his murderers, and universally is recognised as Shah.

NOTE

With Dara we enter upon the historic period of the *Shahnama*.¹ In the last reign he was represented as being the younger son of Darab, with Sikandar for his elder brother. Historically, Dara's prospect of ever becoming Shah had been remote in the extreme. Artaxerxes Ochus, who had put Nectanebus to flight and conquered Egypt, was murdered in B.C. 338, with all his sons, by the eunuch Bagoas, with the exception of the youngest, Arses, whom Bagoas made Shah. Two years later Bagoas murdered him also, and all his family, and raised a distant collateral of the loyal house to the throne, who is the Dara of the *Shahnama* and the Darius Codomanus of Greek writers. Him too in his turn Bagoas tried to do away with, but was put to death himself instead. Historically, Dara reigned six years, not fourteen.

§ 2. When Alexander was fourteen years old, his father Philip sent for Aristotle to become his son's tutor.

¹ See Vol. 1. p. 49

For the tribute due from Rum see p. 24. In the Pseudo-Calhsthenes and the Syriac and Ethiopic versions the ambassadors come in Philip's lifetime and are interviewed by Alexander.¹ The golden eggs are mentioned in the Syriac, which, with the Greek, also says that the ambassadors employed a painter to take Alexander's portrait, which they presented to Darius. The Syriac makes the further addition that Darius ordered the picture to be carried to his daughter Roxana, and their several heights to be compared, after which he flung it away in scorn, but Roxana secured it, honoured it greatly, and from that time fell in love with the original.²

Sikandar in the text is represented as beginning his expedition to the East by the invasion of Misr (Egypt), but a good deal happened first both in history and romance. Historically, he spent the first eighteen months of his reign in Greece, and crossed into Asia Minor in the spring of B.C. 334, where, having won the battle of the Granicus, he established his power sufficiently to allow him to advance through the passes into Syria. Having encountered and defeated Darius at Issus in the autumn of B.C. 333, he proceeded to make himself master of the coasts of Syria and Palestine, the sieges of Tyre and Gaza together taking about nine months, after which he invaded Egypt. Romantically, after the Granicus and Asia Minor, Alexander sails to Sicily and Italy, where he is well received by the Romans, who present him with a jewelled crown, thence voyages to Africa, where he interviews the Carthaginians, and proceeds by way of the oasis of Ammon to Egypt.³

§ 3 This corresponds with the Greek Pseudo-Calhsthenes⁴ and with the Syriac version⁶ in general, but these texts add the picturesque incidents that, after Alexander's flight from the feast, the effigy of King Xerxes, which Darius loved, fell from the wall or ceiling of the banquet-hall, and that Alexander in his flight had to cross a frozen river, on which the ice gave way as he reached the other side, his horse being carried off by the current and drowned, while the pursuing Persians were unable to follow him across.

§§ 4-6 The Syriac version only mentions one battle between Alexander and Darius, at which both were present.⁶ In the Shahname there are three, of which the first corresponds with the one in the Syriac. According to Tabari, who quotes Hisham bin Muhammad, the two kings fought for a year in Mesopotamia.⁷

¹ MPC, Bk. 1.0.23, BHA, Bk. 1.c.23, BLEA, p. 34.

² BHA, *id.* and 1.36, *cf.* note on § 8.

⁴ MPC, 11.14, 15.

⁶ *Id.* 11.9.

³ MPC, 1.28-31.

⁶ BHA, 11.6, 7.

NAR, p. 42

Firdausi places the scene of at least two of the battles of which he speaks to the west of the Euphrates. He was drawing probably from Arabic sources of information. The three battles cannot be regarded as in any way intended for those of the Granicus, of Issus, and of Gaugamela. The number is perhaps a tribute to the importance of the occasion.¹

In the *Shahnama* Dara, after his final defeat, goes to Kirman. According to the Pseudo-Calhsthenes² and the Syriac version,³ he withdrew to his palace, and next is heard of locally in connexion with Ekbatana and the Caspian Gates⁴. This is more accurate historically. Arnan says that Darius, after his defeat at Gaugamela (October 1st, B c 331), fled towards Media, rightly supposing that Alexander would march upon Susa and Babylon⁵.

§ 7 In the Pseudo-Calhsthenes Darius, in his letter, asks for the return of his wife and family, offering land and treasures in exchange,⁶ in the Syriac version he is ready to surrender everything if he may have mercy shown to him.⁷ Alexander's reply is softened in the Persian. In the Greek and Syriac he takes the view that he is only recovering his own, Darius having been the aggressor, and in the latter makes no reply to him. Alexander's honourable treatment of Darius' family, whom he had taken at Issus, is a matter of history,⁸ and the same sentiment toward them is preserved in the Pseudo-Calhsthenes.

§§ 8-9 In the Greek and Syriac versions the letter to Porus is given at somewhat greater length. Darius invites Porus to meet him with an army at the Caspian Gates, and promises him half the spoil and Alexander's horse Bucephalus⁹. Porus, of which the Arabic form Fur is used in the *Shahnama*, is a dynastic or family name, and represents the Pauravas who are mentioned in the *Mahabharata* as reigning in the neighbourhood of Kashmir¹⁰. The Porus of Alexander's time ruled between the Hydaspes (Jhilam) and the Akesines (Chmab), and was allied to the king of Kashmir.

With regard to the death of Darius at the hands of two of his satraps,¹¹ the historical account is that, after Gaugamela, he went, accompanied by remnants of his broken army, to Ekbatana (Hamadan), where he endeavoured to raise fresh forces. Alexander, in the meantime, had made himself master of Babylon and Persepolis, and, hearing of Darius' doings, advanced northward.

¹ Cf Vol 1 p 349 *teq.*

² MPC, 11. 16

³ BHA, Bk. 11 c 9.

⁴ MPC, 11 19, BHA, 11 11

⁵ DAA, 111. 16

• MPC, 11 17

⁷ BHA, 11 9

⁸ DAA, 11 12

⁹ MPC, 11 19, BHA, 11 11

¹⁰ DHA, IV 399

¹¹ MPC, 11. 20, BHA, 11. 12

against him in the spring of BC. 330 Darius did not wait for Alexander's arrival, but left Ekbatana, intending to take refuge with his cousin Bessus, the satrap of Bactria Darius went, of course, by the well-known route that connects western with eastern Iran¹ He had considerable forces with him, but his counsels were distracted, and his troops gradually deserted him. Alexander leached Rai by forced marches from Ekbatana, but, hearing that Danus was far ahead, abandoned the pursuit, and rested for five days He then resumed his march, and halted in the neighbourhood of Girduni Sirdarra, which appears to be the Caspian Gates of Arrian, passed through them the second day and heard, when encamped beyond them, that Darius was a prisoner in the hands of Bessus, the satrap of Bactria, of Barsaentes, the satrap of Arachosia and Diangiana (Sistan), and of Nabaizanes, the commander of Darius' cavalry On this Alexander resumed the pursuit, and, four or five days later, came up with the fugitives, whereupon Nabaizanes and Barsaentes mortally wounded Darius and abandoned him He was dead before Alexander reached him² This was in July BC 330 Nabarzanes soon after surrendered to Alexander, and was pardoned³ Bessus and Barsaentes escaped to their own satrapies, where the former assumed royal state and the name of Artaxerxes Ultimately both were captured and executed⁴ Their resistance to Alexander seems to have been a more serious crime than their removal of his chief opponent An Arabic account⁵ affirms that the death of Darius was brought about with the connivance of Alexander, and although Firdausi's version naturally omits this feature, it in other respects follows the Arabic very closely with regard to the scene between the two kings The names of the two assassins are in the Pseudo-Calhsthenes Bessus and Anobaizanes,⁶ in the Syriac version Bagiz and Anabdeh, and in the Ethiopic Hashish and Aisalas The names in Firdausi seem to be of his own invention. The arrangement made between the two kings that Alexander should marry Roxana or Rushanak appears in all the versions, and is not historical She was not the daughter of Darius, but of Oxyartes, a Bactrian chief, whose stronghold Alexander escalated He fell in love with her at sight, and married her,⁷ BC 328 Subsequently, on his return from his

¹ See Vol 11 p 28

² DA, 111 19-21

³ HQC, vi. 5

⁴ BAA, 111 25, 30

⁵ NAR, pp 44, 50.

⁸ Historically, there was a worthier bolder of that name who, after Gaugamela, held the entrance to Pars against Alexander, and died, fighting to the last, outside Persepolis HQC, v. 4.

⁷ DA, lv. 19, cf. note on § 2

Indian expedition, he did marry a daughter of Darius—Barsme or Stateira—at Susa in BC 324 Rushanak, the Persian form of Roxana, is a diminutive from the adjective "rushan," bright.

For the feast of Sada see Vol. 1 p 123 Nauruz, New Year's Day, was also the name of a feast then held. *Of id.* 74 For Mihi see *id.* 175 and *note*.

The corpse of Darius was sent to Pars ¹ In the Romance the punishment of his assassins follows quickly In the Greek, Synac, and Ethiopic versions of it, Alexander announces his intention of "exalting" the doers of the deed, and so induces the culprits to declare themselves, who thereupon are "exalted" on the gibbet, set up over the grave of Darius² Firdausi's version relieves Sikandar from all imputation of sharp practice In the Arabic account mentioned above, Alexander gives the murderers all that they bargained for, but they had forgotten to include their lives in the compact, and are put to death

§ 10 Sikandar's proclamation to the Persians and his correspondence with the women-folk of Dara appear in the other versions,³ but the correspondence is reserved for the next reign Here we have a message only The passage about the hand-maids 111 Firdausi's version of the proclamation runs in the Synac "And we command that damsels shall enter into the temple of the god whom my mother Olympias worships, for the space of one year for the service of the gods, and when they have arrived at the age for marriage, they shall go forth from the ministry, and shall receive a dowry of five thousand dinars from the treasury of the god, and shall marry " Expressions 111 Firdausi's version show that it came to him, in part at least through the Arabic

¹ DAA, 111 22 For the accounts given in the Greek, Synac, and Ethiopic versions, see MFC, 11 21, BHA, 11. 13, BLEA, p. 95

² *Id*

³

Id and seq

§ I

*How Dara harangued the Chiefs and took Order
for the Realm¹*

V. 1783 Dara, when he had ceased to mourn Darab,
Exalted to the sun the Karan crown.
He was a man of action, young, and lusty
A sword was blunt contrasted with his tongue.
He took his seat upon the throne and said —
" Ye princes, noble chiefs, and warriors 1
I want not any that hath fallen low,
Nor will I summon such to crown and state,
And if one disobeyeth my commands
Let not his body count its head its own,
While if he hath disloyalty at heart,
That will I frustrate with the scimitar.
If others too have wealth 'tis not for me
To vex their happy hearts on that account,
And shall I wish for any as a guide,
Who am myself the guide and gladdener?
Sun, fortune, and the right to fealty
Are mine, mine greatness, kingship, and command "

He summoned unto him a ready writer,
And held talk with him of affairs at large
That worthy wrote a letter from Dara,
Son of Darab, son of Bahman² Wherever
Reigned independent kings the Shah commanded
To send a letter trenchant as a sword —

V. 1784 " Whoever turneth him from my behest,
And rede, shall mark how I will scatter heads.
Give all obedience whether I command
To take another's life or yield your own."

He opened up his father's treasure-board,

¹ This heading is not in the original

² Dara and Ardshir III the original See Vol \ pp 282, 297 note

DARA

Called out the troops, and gave allowances.
The stipend varied from four drachms to eight;
This had a cupful, that a basonful
He gave moreover drachms, dinars, and bards,
As well as breastplates, swords, and massive maces,
Appointing veteran chiefs to provinces,
To one among the notables the marches,
And largessmg the troops with things of price.
Ambassadors arrived from every quarter,
From every man of name and potentate,
From Hind, from the Faghfur, the Khan of Chin,
From Rum and likewise from the provinces.
Each of them carried tribute, dues, and gifts,
For none could stand or strive against Dara
He built a city which he named Zarnush—
A cause of much rejoicing in Ahwaz
He gave to every mendicant his due,
And freely unto those that came to sue.

§ 2

The Death of Failakus and Sikandar's Accession to the Throne

In those days was the death of Failakus—
A cause of trouble for a while in Rum,
Then sat Sikandar on his grandsire's throne,
Sought virtue, and restrained the hands of evil,
For in those days there lived one known to fame
In Rum, a joy to all that land and hight
The erudite Arastalis¹—a man
Of wisdom, vigilance, and influence
That sage adviser came before Sikandar,
And, as he took his place, held forth, and said.—

¹ Arastatalis in the original Firdausi uses both forms, and there are others

" O ruler happy in thy full desire
 By acting as thou dost thou wilt abate
 Thy fame because the royal throne hath looked
 On many such as thee but will not rest

- v. 1785 With any, When thou say est ' I have gained
 Mine end and need not any to direct me,'
 Know that there is no greater fool than thou,
 If thou wilt hearken not the rede of sages
 We are from dust, are destined from our birth
 To go back thither, and must needs submit,
 But thou wilt live in fame if thou art good,
 And be successful on the throne of kings,
 While from ill-doing thou wilt reap but ill,
 And never pass a night of peaceful sleep.
 Well-doing is a monarch's adjutant,
 And none hath won good days by doing wrong."

Whenas Sikandar heard he was well pleased,
 And used to court the speaker's company,
 Did every act according as he bade
 In fight and festival, in war and strife,
 Bestowed new favours on him every day,
 And, when he came, would seat him on the throne

It chanced one day that an ambassador,
 A Persian shrewd of heart and eloquent,
 Came from Dara to Rum to ask for tribute
 Due from that prosperous land He came and spake
 About it to Sikandar who was irked
 By reason of that tribute and old tax,
 And said to him " Go say before Dara —
 ' Our tribute now hath lost its hue and scent,
 For since the bird that laid the golden eggs
 Is dead the tribute is no more in force.'"

The ambassador, on hearing such an answer,
 Was frightened and was seen no more in Rum.
 Sikandar summoned all his troops and told
 Of what had passed. He said " The well-disposed

'Scape not the revolutions of the sky.
I have to tread the world's face and account
Much weal and woe, so now ye must make ready,
And banish home and country from your hearts."

He oped his grandsire's hoards and bade his troops v. 1786
Prepare. At dawn the war-cry rose from Rum
Both from the city and the young king's court
The standard that was carried after him
Was red inscribed upon a turquoise ground.
He started on his march by way of Misr,
With troops and trumpets, drums and warriors.
The king of Misr with hostile troops forthwith
Went to encounter him The armies met
And fought for seven days, but on the eighth
Misr was o'erthrown, Sikandar cut them off,
And at a blow enough were taken captive
To paralyse the taker's hands Of maces,
Steeds and horse-armour, jupons, Indian daggers,
Of golden girdles, silvern harness, swords
Of Misr with golden scabbards, of brocade
And of dinais, he compassed such a store
That e'en the beasts of burden could not bear it,
While multitudes of noble warriors,
Of chiefs and cavaliers, came in for quarter.
Sikandar thence made ready to invade
Iran, took lions' hearts and warriors' hands.
Now when Dara had heard "A host hath marched
From Rum and reached our borders and conhnnes,"
So great an army issued from Istakhr,
That e'en the wind was hampered by the spears.
He purposed to advance on Rum from Pars,
And fire the peopled parts When he had led
His troops more many than the blades of grass v 1787
To the Farat he drew up on the shore,
And none could see the stream for armature.

§ 3

How Sikandar sent as his own Ambassador to Dara

Now when Sikandar heard. " The host hath come,"
 He marched to meet it, and when two leagues' space
 Was left between he called to him the magnates,
 Who spake with him at large about Dara
 Until, outworn by his advisers' words,
 He said " There is one way and only one—
 That I should go as an ambassador
 To him and weigh his state."

He bade to fetch
 A girdle decked with jewels fit for kings,
 And royal robe embroidered. They brought forth
 A led horse all betrapped with gold. A sword
 Hung from its saddle in a golden scabbard
 Sikandar chose ten Ruman cavaliers,
 Men good at parleying, and left the host
 At dawn with those ten famed interpreters
 As soon as he approached the exalted Shah
 He lighted from his steed and did obeisance.
 Dara, the world-lord, called him, greeted him,
 And seated him below the throne. The courtiers,
 Amazed, invoked the Maker of the world,
 Such were Sikandar's aspect, Grace, and prudence,
 His stature, limbs, and dignity He took
 His seat but rose forthwith, delivered well
 Sikandar's message, blessing first the king,
 And said: " For ever may the crowned head live
 Thus said Sikandar ' O illustrious,
 Whose will prevaieth everywhere on earth '
 I have no wish to fight against the Shah,
 Or sojourn in Iran. Mine aim is this—
 V. 1788 To roam about the earth a little space,
 And see the world for once. My whole intent

DARA

Is good and honest, and especially
Since thou art now the ruler of Iran.
It thou forbiddest me to use the ground
I cannot travel in the air like clouds,
But thou, unwitting of my purposes,
Hast met me in this fashion with a host
If thou wilt fight then I will fight with thee,
And not depart without a stricken field
Choose for thyself the season for the fray,
And hold thereto let not thy purpose change,
Because I shrink not from a war with chiefs,
However great their host."

Now when Dani
Observed his counsel, courage, eloquence,
His Grace and bearing, so that thou hadst said —
"It is Dara¹ upon the ivory throne
With armlets, torque, with Grace and crown,"
asked —

"What is thy name and stock because thy Grace
And limbs denote a king? Thou art no subject
Methinketh that thou art thyself Sikandar
Thee with thy Grace and stature, speech and face,
Heaven peradventure nurtured for a throne"

Sikandar answered "None hath acted thus
In peace or war, and men of eloquence—
The crown of all the sages of the world—
Are not so lacking at Sikandar's portal
That he should take a message from himself,²
And he so great a king, the people's head?
Sikandar's wit is not of such a sort
That he should pass from his forefathers' ways
This was the message that my master gave me,
And I have told the Shah his words."

They lodged h

¹ Dara = Danib here perhaps

² Or, with stop at "portal," "How should he," &c.

In fitting state. The monarch of Iran,
As soon as they had spread the board, commanded
The chamberlain: " Invite the ambassador "

Forthwith they summoned him and gave to him
The envoys' seat. They eat and then prepared
To revel, calling out for wine and harp
V 1789 And minstrelsy, but as Sikandar drained
The pleasant wine he lightly laid each goblet
Within his lap till as the cups and wine
Passed round and round their sum passed reckoning.
The server came before Dara and said —
"The guest to-day hath cottoned to the cups"
The Shah bade "Ask him 'Why dost thou thus
tender
The wine-cups?"

Said the server " Kingly man t
Why keep these golden cups upon thy lap ?"

Sikandar made him this reply: " These cups,
Are, my good sir, the envoy's perquisite.
If such be not the usage m Iran
Restore them to the royal treasury "

The monarch smiled to hear of such a custom,
And bade to set within the envoy's hand
A goblet filled with jewels fit for kings,
And lay a ruby on the top thereof.
Just at that moment those that went to make
Demand for tribute from the land of Rum
Came from outside within the banquet-hall,
Advancing toward the Shah with measured tread.
He that was envoy recognised Sikandar,
Went to the Shah, and did obeisance, saying —

¹ This is Sikandar—Cesar's self—who hath
The throne, the mace, and diadem' What time
The Shah commanded us to go and ask
For tribute he was wroth, entreated us
With scorn, and spake of war with thee, while we

Had to escape by night and urge our steeds.
 We saw not any like to him in Hum
 Now boldly hath he come within thy borders
 To weigh thy host, thy treasure, throne, and crown."

The Shah, on hearing what his envoy said,
 Gazed at Sikandar yet more earnestly,
 Who apprehended what it was they spake
 In secret to the monarch of the world,
 But waited till the day was growing darker, V. 1790
 And sunlight was declining in the west,
 Then gained the entrance of the Shah's pavilion,
 And mounted boldly, saying to his horsemen,
 His fortunate and noble followers —
 " Our lives are now dependent on our steeds,
 And if they fail us we shall grasp the wind."

Then he and all his meiny plied the spur,
 And fled forth from the monarch of the world,
 Who missed Sikandar's head and coronet,
 Then lost amid night's gloom, and sent his guards
 At once to seek his foeman in his tent.
 They went to find that wary one departed,
 So sleepy was the fortune of the Shah 1
 Dara dispatched a thousand cavaliers,
 Bold fighters, in pursuit as swift as wind,
 But in the dark they lost their way, beheld
 The outposts of the foe, and turned unguerdoned
 Save with the travail of their longsome journey.

Now when Sikandar reached his own encampment
 The warriors of Bum approached and found
 Their king well pleased that night. "There is," they
 cried,

" A cup of gems before him"

Said Sikandar —

" Hail and exult in this our glorious omen,
 For this cup is the triumph of my life,
 The stars themselves are subject to me now.

I have obtained the number of the foe,
Their horsemen are much fewer than we heard.
Draw, all of you, your falchions for the fray,
Advance and quit the desert and the plain.
If in this fight ye give yourselves to toil,
The toil shall both enrich you and content you.
The Maker of the world is mine ally,
And fortune's head is lying on my breast "

The mighty men called blessings down on him,
And said " May all the earth rejoice in Gesar,
And may our souls and bodies be thy ransom,
To that we pledge ourselves for evermore,

V 1791 For who among the kings can vie with thee
In stature, goodliness, and bravery ?"

§ 4

How Dara fought with Sikandar and was worsted

Now when the sun rose o'er the Raven's back,
And earth grew as it were a lamp aflame,
Dara, the world-lord, led his army forth,
The world drew o'er its head a veil of pitch
He marched his army on from the Farat,
And men were more than grass-blades on the plain.
Whenas Sikandar heard " A host hath come,"
He beat the kettledrums and inarched to fight.
What with the jupons and the Indian swords,
The steeds and armour both for man and horse,
The baggage and the warriors on both sides,
Earth seemed a sea, and dust rose mountain-high.
Both hosts drew up for battle, and the falchions
Flashed in the sun They led the elephants
Before the army, and the world became
As 'twere the river Nile. The cavaliers
Were in the rear, the elephants in front,

DARA

And all men ceased to set their hearts on life
Thou wouldst have said " Air is blood-clamouring,
And earth is rocking underneath the cry"
So loudly sounded horn and Indian bell
That all men's hearts were moved and therewithal,
What with the neighing of the steeds, the shouts
Of captains, and crash of massive maces,
Thou wouldst have said " Earth is a mount of war
And heaven with flying dust an Ethiop's face "'

For one whole week those valiant warriors
Confronted. On the eighth day rose a murk
Of dust such that the sun turned azure-dim,
And veiled the Iranians' eyes, who saw but dust
Upon the battlefield. Dara, the world-lord,
Turned with his noble host of warriors
The army reached the banks of the Farat,
Retreating in confusion from the field.
Sikandar's troops pursued them of those hosts
One was o'erwhelmed with soirow, one o'enjoyed
Sikandar pressed on to the river-bank,
They slew Iranians mnumerable,
But turned back at the river, he forbade
To cross and occupied victoriously
The battlefield with his picked soldiery

§5

How Dara fought with Sikandar the second Time

Whenas Dara had fled before Sikandar
He sent off cavaliers on every side
In haste and called the chieftains of Iran
And of Turan. He gave out pay, he summoned
The commissaries and, by next new moon,
Reorganised the troops and filled with bluster
The chieftains' heads. Again he crossed the river

And ranged his army on the spacious plain.
 Sikandar, hearing this, marched forth, he went
 To meet Dara and left behind his baggage.
 When those two hosts encountered, earth and time
 Contended too. They battled for three days
 Till all the field was straitened by the slam.
 Vast numbers of the Iranians perished there,
 The day was lost to the aspiring Shah,
 Who turned in anguish from the battlefield
 When sun and moon alike refused him aid.
 Sikandar followed swift as flying dust,
 Invoking much the Maker of the world
 A proclamation went forth to the troops —
 " Ye subjects who are wandering astray '
 There is no fear that I shall injure you,
 And ye are no concernment to my troops

V. 1793 Abide in safety in your own abodes,
 And trust your persons and your lives to God
 Ye have escaped the Kiimans safe and sound,
 Although ye have imbrued your hands in blood."

The soldiers, quarter being granted, turned
 Their faces toward the Rumans, while Sikandar
 Went on the battlefield, collected all
 The spoil, and gave it to his troops. His army
 Was all equipped anew They stayed awhile
 Upon the field till king and hosts were rested.

Dara the world-lord, reached Chahram where lay
 His treasures' key. The chiefs all came to him,
 Fulfilled with sorrow, misery, and anguish
 There sire lamented, seeing not his son,
 And son in like wise, seeing not his sire,
 The country of Iran was full of wailing,
 And tears like hailstones were in every eye.
 Then from Chahram he journeyed to Istakhr—
 The Persians⁵ glory. Envoys went on all sides
 To all the chieftains and the paladins.

The soldiers mustered at the royal palace,
 They set a golden throne for Shah Dara,
 And when he sat upon that seat of gold
 The nobles, faithful still to him, drew nigh,
 And he harangued the Iranians " O ye chiefs,
 Ye men of wisdom, Lions, warriors'
 Consider now our course "

He spake in anguish,

And wept awhile, then added " Better die
 To-day with fame than live while Rumans triumph
 Of old our ancestors and Shahs took tribute
 Each year from them , Rum was submiss in all
 To us, but now the Persians⁵ fortune loureth,
 Sikandar hath possessed him of all kingship,
 Become world-lord, hath compassed throne and crown,
 And will not pause, but presently be here, v 1794
 All Pars will be as 'twere a sea of blood,
 Men, women, children will be taken captive,
 And neither young nor old left in the land.
 If ye will give me aid I will avert
 This anguish, travail, and calamity
 The Rumans used to be our nobles' quarry,
 They used to be in terror of Iran,
 But we are now the quarry, they the leopards,
 And in each battle we forsake the field
 Yet still if ye will struggle back to back
 Ye shall renew your clutch upon their land,
 But if one showeth slackness in the fight,
 And striveth not to hazard his own life,
 Abandon hope of this world in that Rum
 Is the Zahhak and we are the Jamshid "¹

He spake in tears with anguish in his heart,
 His lips were livid and his cheeks were wan.
 The prudent nobles rose to make reply,
 A mournful wail ascended from the court :—

¹ See Vol 1. p. 139

" We would not have the world without the Shah.
 We all will face the conflict, make the world
 Strait to our foes, and bind our skirts together¹
 For conquest or the grave."

Of all that coast
 He paid and armed the leaders and the host.

§6

*How Sikandar fought with Dara the third Time, and how
 Dara fled to Kuman*

Sikandar, ware of what Dara was doing,
 And how he had become upon the throne
 The moon's own diadem, led from Irak
 His powers while all invoked on him God's blessing.
 His army had no middle and no end,
 Dara's good fortune was not young withal,
 But still the Shah prepared to meet his foe,
 And led so vast an army from Istakhr
 v 1795 That thou hadst said " The earth can not sustain them,
 And heaven itself will have not room to turn¹"
 Both kings arrayed the forces of both realms,
 They all had spear and mace and sword in hand,
 And such a shout ascended from both hosts
 As split the ears of heaven The earth became
 A sea of warriors' blood, and all the field
 Of battle was o'erstrewn with headleus trunks,
 Paternal love itself grew pitiless,
 And heaven revolved indifferent to all.
 Night came, Dara was worsted, while Sikandar
 Was girding up his loins for fresh assaults
 The Shah fell back upon Kirman and thus
 Escaped alive the clutches of his foe,
 Meanwhile Sikandar reached Istakhr of Pars—

¹ Cf Vol iv p 85 and note

DARA

The crown of Shahs, the glory of that land.
A proclamation went up at the courtgate:—
" Ye noble men and showers of the way!
Whoe'er desireth quarter for his life,
And is a penitent before his God,
Shall be 'neath my protection, one and all,
And know it if they are but true to me
All that are wounded will we recompense,
And likewise cease to shed our foemen's blood.
We will forbear the goods of private folk,
And make our wisdom manifest. Since God,
The Conqueror, hath given us Grace divine,
With greatness and the imperial diadem,
A man had better trample on the neck
Of dragons than transgress our ordinance "

Whatever spoil was taken on the field
Sikandar shared in full among his troops

When from Iran Dara had reached Kirman
He missed the more part of the Iranian chiefs
A wail rose from amid the troops They saw
Not any one with helmet on his head
Dara assembled all the great and wise,
All those who had been with him in the fight.
They came together grievously lamenting,
And burning at the evil of their lot.
Thus spake Dara " We verily have brought
Heaven's wrath upon ourselves None in the world
E'er hath experienced such discomfiture,
Or heard of such from statists of old time
The wives and children of Iran are captives,
Our souls are hurt by fate, our flesh by arrows.
What are your views and what device have ye
To make our enemy repent hereof?
We have no realm, no city, throne or crown,
No kingship, children, treasury or host,
And we are ruined if God pity not i"

The chiefs that still survived wept bitterly
 Before Dara, and cried • " We all, O king !
 Are stricken by the evil of the time.
 The matter is beyond the host's endeavours,
 The waves have risen higher than our heads
 The sire is sonless and the son is sireless,
 For so revolving heaven hath decreed.
 Our mothers and our sisters and our daughters
 Are all within the clutches of Sikandar,
 While all the ladies of thy family,
 Who trembled for thy safety, all the wealth
 Transmitted by thy noble ancestors,
 Whereto thou wast the undisputed heir,
 The royal offspring and the Karans' treasure,
 Are in possession of thine enemies
 No longer can we stand against our foe
 To battle with him in the way of fight.
 Complete submission is our one resource,
 For none can keep the crown of majesty,
 And this same turning sky is passing too
 O'er him as every man of wisdom knoweth.
 Present thyself in person as his liege,
 And make thy court with many flatteries.
 Then shall we see how matters will result,
 For heaven's process is beyond our ken
 So write a letter unto him and fill
 His gloomy soul with thought because the man
 v 1797 Whose tongue is bright with knowledge will make shift
 To pluck up evil from its base "

Dara,

On hearing this, announced his own intent—
 One in accord to royal precedent.

§7

How Bard urate to Sikandar to propose Peace

The Shah then called a veteran scribe who brought
 His paper and musk-scented ink The Shah,
 In pam and grief, with livid cheeks and eyes
 Fulfilled with tears of blood, wrote from Dara,
 Son of Darab, son of Bahman, a letter
 To lion-capturing Sikandar Caesar.
 He first gave praises to the Omnipotent,
 The Author of his good and evil fortune,
 Then said " Assuredly the sage himself
 Will not escape the process of the sky
 Whereby we are made joyful and appalled,
 At whiles exalted and at whiles abased.
 The battles of our hosts turned not on valour,
 But on the processes of sun and moon
 What was to be hath been Our heart is sore
 What hath yon azure vault in store for us?
 If, heart-repentant now for having sought
 The fray, thou wilt consent to terms, the treasures
 Both of Gushtasp and of Asfandiyar,
 The earrings and the armlets and the torques,
 With all that we ourselves have gained, will I
 Dispatch now from our treasury to thine.
 Moreover I will aid thee in thy wars,
 And when thou shalt be instant will not lag.
 As for my wives and children, now thy captives,
 I should not deem their restoration strange.
 They who would rule the world must not be vengeful
 And from revenge on women mighty kings V 1798
 Get nothing but reproach. The lord of wisdom,
 Who hearkeneth to knowledge, having read
 What I have written will improve thereon."

A cameleer departed from Kirman
 In all haste to Sikandar, the arch foe,
 Who, when he had perused the letter, said —
 " May wisdom be the consort of his soul
 Whoever injureth his family,
 His ladies or the children of his house,
 Shall see no throne except a coffin-board,
 Or dangle from the branches of a tree
 I will not trouble any in Iran,
 And God forbid that we should take their treasures.
 If thou returnest to Iran 'tis well,
 The sovereignty is altogether thine.
 What thou commandest ne'er will I transgress,
 And draw no breath unless advised by thee."
 The camel voyaged homeward vessel-wise,
 Dara was filled with anguish, heart and eyes.

§8

How Dara was slam by his Ministers

- V 1799 Dara, when he had read that answer, mused
 In wonder at the process of the world
 At last he said " 'Tis worse than to be slam
 For me to gird myself before the Ruman.
 A grave is better for me than disgrace,
 For, as a wise man said in this regard •—
 When any river riseth in its pride
 A drop of lam is viewless in the tide '
 I used to succour every one in war,
 But, since disaster hath befallen me,
 I see not any helper in the world,
 And I have none to cry to, saving God."
 As there was no one far or near to help
 He wrote to Fur a humble, flattering letter

In deep distress and, having first of all
 Praised God, said: " Ruler of the men of Hind,
 Thou man of wisdom, rede, and ardent soul'
 Thou surely must have heard of my misfortune
 Sikandar hath led forth a host from Rum,
 No crops or settlements or km or children,
 Or crown or throne or royal diadem,
 Or treasury or host are left to us.
 Now if thou wilt help me to keep away
 Destruction from myself I will dispatch
 So many gems to thee out of my treasures
 That never shalt thou need to toil for more.
 Moreover thou shalt be renowned on earth,
 And held in honour by the great."

He sent

Like wind a cameleer who came to Fur,
 The scion of the race of Furs

Sikandar,

On hearing what Dara, son of Darab,
 Had done, bade blow the trumpet. There arose
 The dm of kettledrum and Indian bell
 Sikandar from Istakhr led forth such powers
 That Sol was lost in heaven. Dara too marched
 For his part, and his Grace renewed the world
 The war-cry rose from both sides and the troops
 Had little lest Sikandar ranged his host,
 The air grew dark, earth viewless When Dara
 Led forth his troops—no army bent on strife,
 But broken-hearted and grown sick of war—
 The fortune of the Iranians drooped its head.
 They closed not with the Rumans hand to hand,
 They were the fox, the Rumans were the lion,
 And all the chiefs asked quarter, having come
 Down from their pride to deep humility
 Dara saw, turned away, and fled lamenting.
 With him there went three hundred cavaliers—

V. 1800

The noblest of Iran He had withal
 Two ministers of high degree, who used
 To comrade him in fight. The name of one—
 An archimage—was Mahiyar, the other
 Was called Janusiyar These twain, on seeing
 Their efforts fruitless and the star erewhile
 So lofty, and the glory, of Dara
 Thus set, held talk and said " This luckless man
 Henceforth will see not crown and throne again,
 We needs must poniard him upon the breast,
 Or smite his head with Indian sword. Sikandar
 Will give to us a province. We shall be
 A crown upon the kingdom."

Both of them,

One minister, the other treasurer,
 Went with the Shah, Janusiyar, the chief,
 Upon the left hand, Mahiyar to right.
 Night gloomed, a storm arose, Janusiyar
 Laid hand upon a dagger, stabbed the king
 Upon the breast, that famed head reached its fall,
 And then the troops deserted, one and all

§ 9

How Dara told his last Wishes to Sikandar and died

The ministers came to Sikandar, saying —
 " O Shah victorious and endowed with knowledge¹

V. 1801 We have surprised and slain thine enemy,
 The crown and throne of chiefs are his no more."

Sikandar, having heard Janusiyar,
 Said thus to Mahiyar " Where is the foe
 Whom thou hast overthrown ? Show me the way."

The two led on. The Ruman's heart and soul
Were filled with rage and grief. On drawing nigh

DARA

He gazed upon Dara and saw his breast
All blood, his countenance like fenugreek,
Gave orders to alight and set a guard
O'er those two ministers, and then, dismounting
As swift as wind himself, took on his lap
The wounded monarch's head and, tarrying
Until the stricken should begin to speak,
Chafed with his hands the visage of Dara,
Removing from the head the royal crown,
Unclasping from the breast the warrior's mail,
While showering tears on him because no leech
Was then at hand to tend upon the wounded,
And saying " All yet shall be well with thee
It is thy foemen's hearts that shall be wrung.
Arise and seat thee on this golden litter,
Or, if thou hast the strength, mount on thy steed.
I will have leeches brought to thee from Hind
And Rum, and mourn thy pam with tears of blood.
I will resign to thee the realm and throne.
When thou art better we will pack and go,
But these that thus have wronged thee will I hang
Head-downward from two gibbets presently
When yesterday these two old men informed me
My heart flowed over, and I cried aloud,
Because we twain are of one root and piece
Why for ambition should we wreck our race ?"

Dara, on hearing this, began to speak,
And said " May wisdom alway be thy mate.
Sure am I that thou wilt be recompensed
By God, the all-holy Judge, for these thy words,
But as for what thou said'st ' Iran is thine,
Thine are the crown and throne's seat of the brave,'
Death is much nearer to me than the throne,
'Tis quit of ruined men High heaven so willeth,
Whose joy is travail and whose profit loss.
Beware of saying: ' I by mine own might

Prevailed o'er this famed people' Know that good
 And ill are both of God, and while thou livest
 Give Him the praise. I illustrate my words,
 And am a sign to all What majesty,
 Kingship, and wealth were mine! I injured none
 What arms, what troops withal, what noble steeds,
 What thrones and crowns, what children, what allies!
 Allies ! My brand was burnt upon their hearts !
 Then earth and time were bondslaves in my presence,
 And thus it was while fortune proved my friend.
 Then by this token I grew quit of good,
 And captive in the hands of murderers,
 I had no hope in children or in kin,
 The world was darkened and mine eyes were glazed
 Of all my kindred there is none to help me,
 My sole hope is in Him who giveth all.
 Thus stricken am I lying in the dust
 The world hath got me in the net of rum.
 Such is the custom of this turning sky
 Alike with monarch and with paladin •
 All kingship too departeth in the end,
 It is the quarry and the hunter death."

Sikandar wept blood-drops upon the Shah,
 Thus stricken in the dust, who at the sight
 Of all that heart-felt grief and tears o'erflowing
 His pallid cheeks, said " Weep not, tears are vain,
 The smother is my portion of the fire
 He that bestowed so much on me, and fortune
 That so illumed me, have apportioned this.
 Now give thine ear to this my last request,
 Receive and keep it wisely in thy heart "

Sikandar said to him "'Tis thine to bid
 Say what thou wilt, I pledge to thee my word."

v 1803

Dara spake quickly and recounted all
 His last requests, beginning thus " O chief !
 Fear thou the almighty Ruler of the world,

For He created the heaven, the earth, and time,
 The mighty and the weak. Protect my children,
 My kindred, and the consorts that I love,
 Ask me for my chaste daughter as thy wife,
 And let her share thy throne in happiness.
 Her mother used to call her Rushanak,
 And made the world both glad and fair to her.
 Thou wilt have no reproaches from my child,
 Nor any jibings from the ill-disposed,
 For kings have nurtured her, and she is fit
 In rede to be the crown upon the noble
 Thou mayst see born to her a youthful prince
 Who will revive the name Asfandiyar,
 Relume the altar of Zarduhsht, take up
 The Zandavasta, heed the presages,
 The feast of Sada and the Fanes of Fire,
 With glorious Nauriiz, Urmuzd, and Mihr,
 And lave his soul and face in wisdom's stream,
 Restore the customs of Luhrasp and follow
 The doctrine of Gushtasp, maintain both high
 And low in their degree, illumine the Faith,
 And see good days."

Sikandar made reply —

" O monarch of kind heart and honest speech'
 I do accept thy rede and last requests,
 And I will tarry in thy borders only
 To compass these good matters, and herein
 Take wisdom for my guide "

The world-lord grasped

Sikandar's hand, began to wail, then pressed
 The palm upon his mouth, and said. " Be God
 Thy refuge. I resign my place to thee,
 Depart to dust, and give my soul to Him "

He spake, his soul passed, and folk wept him sorely, v. 1804
 Sikandar rent his garments and strewed dust
 Upon the Kaian throne Then for Dara,

According to the custom of his race,
And honouring his Glory and his Faith,
Sikandar built a charnel-house. They washed
The monarch's blood away with clear rose-water,
Now that the time of endless sleep was come,
And draped him in brocade of Rum, the pattern
Was all in jewelry, the ground was gold
The corpse was hid by camphor, none beheld
Dara's face more. They set within the charnel
A golden throne, o'erhead a crown of musk,
And laid him out upon a golden bier,
While every eye rained blood, then lifting it
They passed it on from hand to hand. Sikandar
Preceded it afoot, went too the nobles,
Their eyes all charged with blood, and thus he fared
Until the rites were o'er, and thou hadst said —
" His very skin hath burst!"

When he had placed
The Shah's bier on the throne, had gone the way
Of royal precedent, left that grand charnel,
And made the lofty portals fast without,
He set a gibbet for Janusiyar,
With one for Mahiyar of equal size,
And hung those miscreants alive thereon—
Those regicides—head downward From the host
Came warriors with stone in hand and slew them
Upon the gibbet all despiteously
So perish every slayer of a king'

Now when the Iranians saw how much Sikandar
Was troubled for the Shah—that noble man—
They all of them began to laud his worth,
And hailed him as the ruler of the earth.

DARA

§ 10

How Sikandar wrote to the Nobles of Iran

One left Kirman to go to Ispahan,
Wherein the Iranian chieftains were assembled.
One too—a man of high authority—
Approached the women-folk of Shah Dara,
Gave greetings on Sikandar's part, recounted
All that had happened to Dara, and then
Spake thus " The hearts of foe and friend alike
Rejoice not at the death of lawful Shahs.
Know ye to-day then that I am Dara.
If he is hidden I am manifest,
And greater favours are m store for you
There is no cause to lend your hearts with grief,
We all are born to death, both Shah and host,
It is the sole way though thou tarry long
Convey your havings to Istakhr and gain
New glory by affinity to us.
Iran is now as ever it hath been,
May health of body and glad hearts be yours."

They wrote to every province, prince, and peer
As from Sikandar, son of Failakus,
The great, the lord of earth and dread of foes,
A letter to the kinglike potentates,
Brave cavaliers and ready for the fray.
He sent withal a letter to the archmages,
All brilliancy, excuse, and compliment.
This was the heading " From the king of Kaians
To all the administrators of Iran,"
And, when the pen of Chin had dipped in ink
Gris-ambered, first there came the praise of God,
" The righteous Judge, the Maker of the world,
And things invisible and visible.

Both worlds were made by His creative word :
Thou canst not call in question His decree.
The sky, which thou beholdest thus revolving,
Will, while it lasteth, never scape His ken.
Whate'er He willeth is at His command,
We all are slaves and He is sovereign.
From Him be greetings to the men of name
Above their own deserts Remember naught
Of all that passeth in this world of ours
Save honest fame, accomplishment, and justice.
Amid my conquests grief hath come to me,
And mourning at a feast I swear by Him,
V. 1806 The Lord of sun on high, that ne'er I purposed
Harm to Dara's life They that wished him ill
Were of his household, and the act was not
A stranger's but a servant's who hath felt
God's chastisement and suffered for his crimes.
Now seek ye justice, do as I command,
And stake your lives upon your fealty
As ye would have success from heaven, would have
At my hands purses, captives, thrones, and crowns
Mine ardent heart is woeful for Dara,
And I shall strive to do his last behests
Whoe'er he be that cometh to my court
Shall have drachms, honours, thrones, and diadems
But, if he will abide at his own house,
Let him not swerve from his fidelity
Send ye my treasury its dues, and then
No one shall suffer either pain or travail
Coin money with Sikandar's superscription,
Be diligent, and break not faith with him,
Maintain henceforth your kings' seat as of old,
Let not your marches be without a guard,
And in this matter let each show his worth,
Take care that there shall be in each bazar
A watch to call our name continually

DARA

That thieves may do no harm and ye abide
In all success and joy. Send to our bower,
To those devoted to us, from each city
A goodly handmaiden, a slave of sense
And modesty, fit for our golden chambers,
One knowing all the doctrines of our Faith,
And having no reluctance to be sent,
For wrong must not be done to any captive.
Those strangers who pass through our provinces
Afoot, in abstinence, heart-free from vice,
Content to live the life of mendicants,
And called Sufis,¹ distinguish from mere beggars,
And let them stand the foremost on the roll.
If any of you are unfortunates,
Afflicted by an officer of mine,
Break ye the unjust doer's heart and back,
And rase him utterly, both root and branch
I will suspend alive that miscreant,
Who hath led fair beginnings all astray.
Enrich your hearts by alms and equity,
And make nobility your diadem,
Because your lives will pass and time account
Our every step. Whoever doth trangress
Our will shall suffer for it in the end "

The letter having been dispatched, he went
And took serene possession of the world.
He left Kirman and coming to Istakhr
Encrowned him with the Kaians' glorious crown.

Seek not the secrets of the world to pry
It turneth from the seeker's scrutiny,
Make knowledge in this life thy chief pursuit,
For in the next thou wilt enjoy the fruit

¹ A sect of mystics

XX

SIKANDAR

HE REIGNED FOURTEEN YEARS

ARGUMENT

Sikandar, on ascending the throne, harangues the nobles and marries Rushanak, the daughter of Dara. The poet then tells of Sikandar's dealing with Kaid and Fui (Poms) of Hind, his visit to the Kaaba, to Queen Kardata (Candace), to the Brahmans, to the Western Sea, to the land of Habash and of the Naimpai, to the City of Women, to the Darkness in search of the Water of Life, and to the Angel Israfil. Sikandar then again turns eastward, and erects a barrier against Yajuj and Majuj (Gog and Magog), reaches the End of the World, and is warned of his own death by the Speaking Tree. The poet then tells of Sikandar's relations with Faghfui of Chin, of his visit to Babil, of his correspondence with Anstah's (Aristotle), and of the circumstances attending his death and burial.

NOTE

The Vullers-Landauer text, from which we have translated thus far, does not extend beyond the reign of Dara, and from this point to the end we have made our version from the text of Macau Mohl's edition of the text—the alternative—is, apart from other reasons for our choice, too ponderous for practical purposes, the volume of it containing the reign of Sikandar, for instance, measures 18 x 13 x 24 inches and weighs 17 lbs 2 ozs. The principles of our translation remain the same as laid down in the Introduction,¹ but it is necessary to add that in Macan's edition there are many misprints not included in the Errata at the end of his volumes. These misprints we have corrected in our translation, but have not thought it necessary to call attention to them

¹ Vol 1 p 77,

in footnotes. The corrections for the most part are quite obvious, and sufficiently indicated in our version to any one acquainted with the original

§§ 2-4 These correspond generally with the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, Book II chap 22, and with the Syriac version, Book II chap 14. F01 Roxana, see p 32

§§ 5-11 Alexander on his arrival in India naturally came into contact with the Fakirs—the mendicant and ascetic orders which are such a feature of that country His pilot, Onesicntus, has left an account of an embassy on which he was sent to them He describes how he found fifteen men standing, sitting, or lying in various attitudes naked in the sun, and conversed with two of them, Calanus and Mandanes, of whom the latter was the older, the wiser, and the more generally amenable¹ The former, however, accompanied Alexander back to Persia, where, having fallen into bad health, he was burnt to death by his own request² Calanus is mentioned also by Alexander's admiral, Nearchus,³ and by Chares of Mytilene⁴ According to Plutarch his real name was Sphines, and Calanus was a name given him by the Greeks because 111 salutations he used the word *kale*, "hail"⁵ The accounts in the original authorities of Calanus and Mandanes, or Dandamis—a name by which also he is known—were freely used by later writers⁶ Palladius, who was bishop of Helenopolis at the beginning of the fifth century A D, wrote a treatise on the peoples of India and the Brahmans in which he gives an account of Calanus and Dandamis, drawn from the older authorities This work was interpolated into Codex A of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, where it forms chaps 7-16 of Book III, thus bringing Calanus into the Romance Dandamis had appeared already in chap 6 The passage from Palladius is given 111 the early Latin version of the Romance by Julius Valerrus, but not in the Syriac translation from the Pahlavi The first oriental mention of the Indian sages seems to be in the little Pahlavi treatise known as the *Karnamak-i-Ardshir-i-Papakan*, which will engage our attention later on 111 the present volume " In that treatise, which dates back probably to the seventh century A D, the founder of the Sasaman dynasty consults the wise Indian, Kait It is true that Ardshi Papakan lived five centuries after Sikandar, but in the *Shahnama* this would be no bar to the reappearance of the sage Ya'kubi, the Arabic historian, writing towards the end of the ninth century

¹ MF, p 50. ² DAA, vii. ³ MF, 60, 71. ⁴ *Id* 118

⁵ Life of Alexander, chap 65 There is a Sanskrit word *kalyana* which means " lucky " See MCI, p 380

⁸ *Id.* 392

⁷ See pp 19s, 256

A D , has an account of Sikandar's meeting with a wise Indian king named Karhan. In Pahlavi the letter *t* well might be taken for the letters *h* and *n*, and these with the short vowel *a* interposed would make Karhan.¹ The story of the Indian sage seems rapidly to have developed in oriental hands, as is evident from the account given by Mas'udi, who died in A D 956, of the dealings of Sikandar with the wise Indian king, Kand.² Mas'udi, indeed, professes to give an abridgment only, but his version, with one exception, agrees closely with that of Firdausi. The exception is the introductory matter contained in § 5, which appears to be the poet's own contribution to the story. Kaid's dreams are a veiled presentment of Firdausi's own discontent with the circumstances of his own time, and contain a fierce arraignment of Sultan Mahmud himself.³ Kait, Kaihan, Kand, and Kaid evidently represent the same personality, which is none other than that of the Mandanes or Dandamis of classic authors, while the sage whom he sends as one of his four gifts to Sikandar is the historical Calanus.⁴ Firdausi adopted the form Kaid for rhyming purposes. Kaid, we are told in § 6, dwelt at Milad. Historically this would be Taxila, a city situated between the Indus and the Hydaspes (Jhilam) and Attock and Rawalpindi. Omphis, the king of Taxila, who was at enmity with his neighbour King Porus, was on very friendly terms with Alexander. Both Calanus and Mandanes or Dandamis were resident at Taxila. In the Shahnama Sikandar's dealings with Kaid are placed correctly before the war with Fur. In the Pseudo-Callisthenes the interpolation from Palladius⁵ is inserted after the account of Alexander's interview with the naked Indian sages in Book III chaps. 5 and 6, a passage which is an integral part of the work and will be dealt with later on, for the interview is represented both in the Pseudo-Callisthenes and in the Shahnama as taking place after the war with Porus (Fur).⁶ In Mas'udi and Mirkhand the affair with Kaid also takes place after that war.⁷ Then account of Sikandar's passage of wits with the sage agrees closely with that of Firdausi. In § 11, save that when Sikandar returns the rusted mirror to the sage the latter makes a cup that will float of it, on which Sikandar sends it back filled with earth, and the sage returns it to him without alteration, earth being the last word in all matters. Such symbolism is common in the East, and the whole passage might be interpreted thus. The Shah begins by suggesting that the sage had better get into training if his wits are to be of any use to his new master. The sage

¹ NAR, 47² MM, 11 260³ Of Vol 1 p 33.⁴ NAR, 47⁵ See p 61⁶ See p. 67⁷ MM, 11 260, RM, Part I vol 11 p 253.

immediat are already as sharp as needles The Shah re-
ts that, though they may be sharp they are unpolished, and
tffle sage rejoins that on the contrary they are exceedingly bright.
The Shah then observes that he can soon take the shine out of
them, and the sage retorts that he knows a trick worth two of
that At this point the Shah, hoping to take the sage at a dis-
advantage, summons him and requests him to interpret what had
passed between them, thinking that he may not like to put his
symbolism into plain speech The sage, however, is equal to the
occasion, and on the spur of the moment gives an unexpected turn
to his interpretation, and one which meets with the Shah's
approval The true interpretation seems to be this The Shah by
sending a bowl full of ghee indicates that already he is so charged
with knowledge that he has no occasion for the sage's services
The sage, by inserting many needles into the ghee, suggests that
there is room for improvement. The Shah replies that his finer
faculties have become too blunted by the cares of his station
The sage rejoins that he can amend that The Shah retorts that
the improvement will not last, but this the sage denies Mas'udi
adds that ultimately Sikandar allowed the sage to return to his
own country¹

A similar story is told by Hiuen Tsiang of two great Buddhist
saints who lived about the first century B C One visited the
other to hold discussion with him The visitor was not admitted
at once The other sent a disciple to him with a begging bowl
full of water, symbolising the fulness, depth, and lucidity of the
wisdom of his master The visitor said nothing but dropped a
needle into the bowl The disciple returned and reported what
had happened to his master, who at once recognised the worth of
the visitor and gave orders that he should be admitted²

§§ 12-15 These correspond with Book III chap 1-4 of the
Pseudo-Calhsthenes and of the Syrrac version of it, and like them
are quite unhistorical, as will be seen from the following summary
of what really happened On quitting Taxila, Alexander marched
to the Hydaspes (Jhilam), on the opposite bank of which he found
Poms with his forces prepared to dispute the passage. He
deceived Porus so often by feints that after a time the latter
ceased to believe that Alexanders intention of crossing the river
was serious, and Alexander, in a night of storm and ram, suc-
ceeded in effecting the passage—one of his most brilliant feats of
arms. Immediately after the crossing he was attacked by the son
of Porus with a small force, which he defeated without much
difficulty, and the son of Porus was slain The general engage-

¹ MM, 11 276

² BBR, 11 210, 215 *note*

ment with Porus himself followed Alexander was and Porus, who had behaved throughout with great gallantry a was wounded, surrendered after Alexander had sent several messengers to beg him so to do Alexander treated Porus with every consideration, restored his kingdom to him, and enlarged it The battle with Porus was fought in the late spring or early summer of B. c. 326 Alexander then continued his advance into India, crossed the Akesines (Chinab) and the Hydraotes (Ravi), and reached the Hyphasis (Beas). At this point his army refused to proceed further, and he acceded to their wishes, though with the greatest reluctance In the Pseudo-Calhsthenes such historical features as survive are adapted so as to contribute to the glory of its hero Thus the protest of the army takes place before the battle with Porus and proves ineffective, because it was incumbent that Alexander should meet with no check The difficulty of transporting horses across a river on the further bank of which a strong force of elephants was drawn up to oppose them, and the known antipathy of horses to elephants, suggested the device of the iron steeds A tradition, resting on good authority, that Porus was very tall, "more than five cubits 111 height" according to Arnan,¹ suggested that Alexander should be made out to be very small The death of the son of Porus may have suggested, or been mistaken for, that of his father, which naturally is represented as having been caused by Alexander's own hand

The differences between the Pseudo-Calhsthenes and Firdausi are not important and chiefly 111 matters of detail In the former Porus begins the correspondence, he has wild beasts as well as elephants in his army In branches B and C Alexander, disguised as a sutler, visits the city of Porus and has an interview with him In the battle that ensues Bucephalus falls, in branch A by the hand of Porus The battle lasts for twenty days, and so forth In the latter the kingdom of Fur is situated beyond Kannuj—a city on the Ganges—and it is there that the correspondence with Fur takes place After the correspondence comes the protest of the army against proceeding further Sikandar appoints Sawurg king in Fur's stead

§ 16 This is derived, of course, not from the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, but from independent Arabic sources It appears in Dinawari, who died in A. D. 896² The insertion makes wild work of the geography, for it brings Sikandar back from Kannuj, according to Firdausi, to Mecca Later on, 'he has to go eastward again in order to interview the Brahmans

The neighbourhood of Mecca has been a sacred spot from time

¹ DAA, v 19

² NAR, 39

linmeint The city stands in a sacred territory known as "Haram," i.e. "prohibited," and contains the still more sacred Kaaba, into the wall of which, and perhaps most sacred of all, is built the meteorite known as the "Black Stone." The Kaaba itself, according to the Kuran, was built by Abraham and Ishmael.¹ The custody of the Haram—a position of great honour and profit—was in the hands now of one, now of another, of the Arab tribes. In Muhammad's time the Kurdish, whose ancestor was Nasr, son of Katib, were in charge. Previously it had been in that of the Khuza'. The fact that the change of guardianship is attributed to Sikandar is an eloquent testimony to his fame.² Kahtan, according to Arab tradition, was descended from Shem, and was one of the great progenitors of the race. He was identified with Joktan.³

§§ 17-23. We learn from Quintus Curtius that when Alexander was besieging Mazaga, a city situated probably on the Swat River, and the inhabitants despaired of the defence, then queen Cleophis, attended by many noble ladies, came out to him, was received graciously, and confirmed in her sovereignty. Some people, however, were ill-natured enough to say that her personal charms rather than Alexander's humanity brought about this result. At all events she is said to have had a son later on whom she named Alexander.⁴ Alexander's relations with Cleophis and his visit to the Oasis of Ammon may have suggested to the author of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes the episode which is the subject of the above sections. The story is, of course, unhistorical, but it is easy to see how it would suggest itself to an Egyptian, whether native or natuahsed. Both before and after the Christian era Candace seems to have been the dynastic name of the queens, whether sole regnant, consort, or dowager, of that part of Nubia which is bounded by the Nile, the Blue Nile, and the Atbara, and known as the Island or as Meroe, the latter being also the name of one of its two principal cities, the other being Napata. Excavations have brought to light remains of tombs and palace, and reliefs of various queens of a pronounced negroid type. Whether Alexander was introduced into some already existing story, told originally in another connexion, of one of the old queens of Meroe, or whether the whole thing is the invention of the Egyptian author of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, it is impossible to say. Firdausi's version of the story corresponds with the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, Bk III chaps 18-24, and with the Syriac version of it, Bk III chaps 8-14. The three are closely in accord in most points,

¹ RK, p 446.

³ Gen x 25, 1 Chron 1 19-20

VOL. VI.

² NAK, 39, and notes

⁴ HQC, Bk vii. c. 10

E

but there are differences in matters of detail and in the names of the characters in the story. The Kandake (Candace) of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes and of the Syriac version becomes Kaidafa in Firdausi, which shows that his account came to him through the Arabic, in which the name, in the absence of diacritical points, could be read either way. Similarly the Kandaules of the Greek, the Kandaros of the Syriac,¹ became Kaidrush, the story having passed from Greek into Pahlavi, from Pahlavi into Syriac, from Syriac into Arabic, and from Arabic into Persian again (modern instead of middle) before Firdausi dealt with it. In the Pseudo-Calhsthenes and the Syriac version Ptolemy takes Alexander's place when Kardrush is brought into court, and Alexander assumes the name of Antigonus. In Firdausi the latter becomes the name of Sikandar's chief minister (Naitkun), and the two exchange then respective positions. In the Greek and the Syriac the wife of Kandaules is taken prisoner by a hostile king, while Kandaules himself escapes to the camp of Alexander, who regains his wife for him. In Firdausi the pair are taken prisoners by Sikandar while celebrating their wedding-feast in the city of king Faryan, the father of the bride. This version is more considerate of the lady, who does not get off so easily in the Greek and Syriac. In the Greek too the scene of the action is laid in the kingdom of Semiramis, whose descendant² Kardafa is stated to be. In the Syriac the name Semiramis is corrupted into that of a people. In the Shahnama the scene is laid in Andalus, i.e. in Spain, which was conquered by the Arabs early in the eighth century A.D. In the Greek, Candace's other son, who had married a daughter of Poms, is unnamed, but is called Charogos in the early Latin version of Julius Valerius. In the Synac he appears as Kerator, and in the Shahnama as Tamush, who is represented there as being the eldest son, as in the Ethiopic, where he is called Kanir.³ The Ethiopic too alone coincides with the Shahnama in giving the dramatic conclusion of the story—the discovery by Tamush (Kanir) that the ambassador to his mother was Alexander himself—from which we might conclude that both versions derived the incident from a common Arabic source. Another view, however, may be suggested. The hand of a poet is visible in Firdausi's presentment of the whole story. He enlists our sympathy by making Kaidiush and his wife a newly married couple, which is found in no other version, suppresses the worst of the lady's misfortunes, which is

¹ The l being read ab r cf p 14

² Proneptis in the version of Julius Valenus, from which the Greek is restored, MPC, p 126

³ BLEA, p 206

expressed or implied 111 the other versions, and makes two other consequential alterations Tainush is described as being the elder instead of the younger son, because Firdausi represents him as having been longer married, and Faryan, who stands for the abductor of the lady in the other versions, becomes her own father Further, the Ethiopic version appears to have been a late production which came into being some time between the fourteenth and sixteenth centuries,¹ when the Shahnama itself had become a great authority, and it seems not unlikely that the dramatic conclusion in the Ethiopic version was derived through the Arabic from Firdausi's own handiwork

§ 24 This corresponds with Bk I I I, chaps 5-6, of the Pseudo-Callisthenes and of the Synac version, in both of which the order of events is the war with Porus, the interview with the Brahmins, the affair with Candace In Firdausi the order of the last two is transposed This is due to the interpolation horn Arabic sources of Sikandar's expedition to the Kaaba, in § 16, immediately after the war with Fur Consequently he has to make a second expedition eastward His interview with the Brahmins may be regarded as a literary invention based partly on the account of Onesicritus² and partly on some other source, which is responsible for his questions and their answers These appear in Plutarch's *Life of Alexander*, ch 64 That historian makes the interview take place in the course of Alexander's voyage down the Indus to the sea The questions and answers vary in the different accounts The question as to whether the living or the dead are the most numerous is found in Plutarch, where the answer is, the living, in the Pseudo-Callisthenes, in Julius Valerius, and in the Synac and Ethiopic versions

The question whether there is most land or water occurs in the Pseudo-Callisthenes and Julius Valerius In the Synac version the question is as to whether the land or the water is the older In Plutarch the question is whether the earth or sea produces the largest beast In both cases the answer is, the earth

The question as to who are the sinners, or the most sinful, is found in the Pseudo-Callisthenes, in Julius Valerius where it occurs in the form, which is the most cunning of beasts? in the Synac and in the Ethiopic

Alexander's question as to what the Brahmins would have of him is found in the Pseudo-Callisthenes, in Julius Valerius, and in the Synac and Ethiopic versions

Several of the questions occurring in other versions do not appear in the Shahnama, such, for instance, as those in the Synac

¹ BHA, p IXXIX

² See p 61, and cf NAR, p 6

as to whether death or life is the mightier, which existed first, day or night, and whether the limbs on the left side of the body or on **the** right side are the better, and so forth.

§§ 25-27 At this point the adventures of Sikandar become more romantic. In codex A of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, and in the Latin version of Julius Valerius, they form the subject of a letter, purporting to be written by Alexander to Aristotle, and come between the visit to the Brahmans and that to Candace, The letter is a long one, and is lengthier still in the Synac version, which contains incidents no longer extant in the Greek but found in the Shahnama In the Greek the letter forms- ch 17 and in the Syriac ch 7 of Bk III

It may be well to quote here a short passage from M'Crmde's- *Ancient India as described by Magabthenis and Arrian*, which is very apposite in the present connexion Speaking of the ancient Greeks' conception of India, he says — "They imagined it to be an Eastern Ethiopia which stretched away to the uttermost verge of the world, and which, like the Ethiopia of the West, was inhabited by a race of men whose visages were scorched black by the fierce rays of the sun See Homer, *Od* 1. 23-24, where we lead

Αἰθίοπες, τοὶ διχθὰ δεδαίταται, ἔσχαται ἀνδρῶν,
Οἱ μὲν δυσόμενον Ἵππεριονοὶ οἱ δ' ἀνιόντος

(The Ethiopians, who are divided into two, and live at the world's end—one part of them towards the setting sun, the other towards the rising) Herodotus in several passages mentions the Eastern Ethiopians, but distinguishes them from the Indians (see particularly Bk vii 70) Ktesias, however, who wrote somewhat later than Herodotus, frequently calls the Indians by the name of Ethiopians, and the final discrimination between the two races was not made till the Makedonian invasion gave the Western world more correct views of India Alexander himself, as we learn from Strabo, on first reaching the Indus mistook it for the Nile Much lies in a name, and the error made by the Greeks in thus calling India Ethiopia led them into the further error of considering as pertinent to both these countries narrations, whether of fact or fiction, which concerned but one of them exclusively This explains why we find in Greek literature mention of peculiar or fabulous races, both of men and other animals, which existed apparently in duplicate, being represented sometimes as located in India, and sometimes in Ethiopia or the countries thereto adjacent "¹ Bearing this passage in mind, it is easy to understand that the original author of the Romance of

¹ MCA1, p 3 and note

Alexander, whose idea was to make his hero traverse the whole world, and the later redactors of the Romance, found it easy to provide a crop of marvels, of which the Persian version III the *Shahnama* furnishes a by no means exhaustive account. The Macedonian invasion may have given the Western world more correct ideas of India, but it did not prevent the Pseudo-Calhsthenes from coming into being some five centuries later and flourishing exceedingly. The return of Alexander from India to Persia by sea and land along the desolate shores of Makran (Gedrosia) naturally gave rise to a crop of marvels not all without foundation.

§ 25 The people encountered by Sikandar after leaving the Brahmans were known to Arrian as the Oritæ. They dwelt in the neighbourhood of the Pur-Ali River. He describes them as wearing a dress and using arms similar to those of the Indians, but as differing in language and customs.¹ The shore-dwelling Oritæ are responsible for one of the etymologies suggested for the name of the country—Makran—i.e. "Mahi-khuran," "Fish-eaters," "Ichthyophagæ," which, even if it be not correct, is at least appropriate. Two extracts from Arrian's *Indica*, based on the account of Nearchus, Alexander's admiral, and others from modern sources, will serve to show that the habits of the shore-dwellers in that region have not altered materially during a period of over two thousand years, if we except the employment of the skeletons of whales for house-building—a custom that would be mentioned by modern travellers in those parts if it still obtained. The dwellings now consist of mats held together by poles or else take the form of mud huts.² "The Ichthyophagi live on fish, whence their name. Few of them indeed fish, few indeed have boats for the purpose, or know the art of fishing, but catch most at the ebb of the tide. Some even have made nets to do this, most of such a size that they stretch two stades.³ These they make of palm-bark, which they twist like flax. When indeed the sea recedes, deserts the land, and leaves it dry, it is generally void of fish, but when the land retains the water in some deeper indentation, then they find a great abundance. Of these most are small, others large. These they encircle with their nets and take. The finer sorts they eat raw as they draw them from the water, the larger and coarser they dry in the sun, and, as soon as they are baked through, reduce them to flour by grinding and convert them into

¹ DAI, c 25

² *Diary of Proceedings of the Mission into Mckran*. By Major F. J. Goldsmid, in JRGS, Vol xxxm. pp 189, 198, 200, 203

³ Rather over 400 yards.

bread. Some make it into a paste. They even give their beasts fish-flour instead of fodder. All the region, in the absence of meadows, produces no herbage. They take withal in these parts a great quantity of crabs, oysters, and shell-fish. The region also naturally produces salt, from which they make (an equivalent or substitute for?) oil. Those of them indeed that inhabit the desert parts, and a region productive of neither trees nor fruit, live on fish only: a few sow a little ground, and eat bread as a relish with their fish, for fish are their corn. They build their houses thus. The wealthiest of them take whatever bones of the whale the sea throws up, and use them in the place of timber, making the largest into doors. The indigent majority make then houses of fish bones "¹ In the following chapter Arnan enters more into detail — "Some of the whales are driven ashore occasionally in various places, and are stranded when the tide recedes, others are cast on to the land by violent storms, and perish of putrefaction, then flesh dropping off leaves then bones for men to employ in house-building. Their greater ribs are selected for the beams, the smaller for the planks, the jaw-bones are taken for doors "²

A modern account says — "Nearchus names the whole of this coast, from the river Indus to Charbar, the country of the Ichthyophagi or fish-eaters, and the inhabitants still live entirely on fish, the cattle having much the same diet as their masters, for the country is wholly destitute and barren, and yields no sort of grass. Vast stores of oysters, crabs, and all kind of shell-fish are found on the coast, of which Nearchus's description is generally very accurate. In many places, both here and in Arabia, the cattle are fed entirely on dried fish and dates mixed together, on account of the great scarcity of grass in these sun-burnt and sandy regions "³

A later account says — "Fish, to this day, is the staple article of food for those of the inhabitants living on the sea-board, and in this respect they fully bear out the name of ichthyophagi given to their ancestors by ancient writers "⁴ And again — "Nearchus coasted along the shores of Balochistan, and his account of the natives he met with, and the difficulty he found in obtaining supplies, is as credible as if the voyage had been carried on under similar circumstances at the present day " "

¹ DAI, c. 29

² *Id.* 30

³ *Notes made on a Survey along the Eastern Shores of the Persian Gulf in 1828.* Communicated by Lieutenant G. B. Kempthorne. In JRGS, Vol. v, p. 270, original series

⁴ HB, p.

19.

⁵ *Id.* 178

There is further mention of the Ichthyophagi in § 34

The story of Sikandar's adventure with a basking whale which was mistaken for an island, with disastrous consequences to those that visited it, has not been lost sight of by the romancers and poets of later ages. In the first voyage of Sindbad the sailor, 111 the *Arabian Nights*, he lands upon an island "like a garth of the gardens of Paradise," but which proves to be a great fish, and sinks when fires are lighted on it for cooking purposes¹. For the poets the reader may be referred to the passage in *Paradise Lost*, Bk 1 line 200 seq., Aldine ed.²

The reeds mentioned are of course bamboos, of which one of the many uses is for house-building.

§ 26 Here we are introduced to the true Ethiops, who, according to Greek notions, occupied the extremities of the world both in the East and West³.

§ 27 The above remark applies equally to the Narmpai.⁴ The story of the dragon is not extant in the Pseudo-Calhsthenes or in the Latin version of Julius Valerius. It is found, however, in the Syriac version and in the Ethiopic,⁵ which represent the monster as being regarded as a god by the natives. In the Syrrac it is described as killing its victims by drawing in its breath, and so sucking them down its throat.⁶

The temple that Sikandar visits is that of Dionysus, and the corresponding passage 111 the Pseudo-Calhsthenes is Bk III ch 28. There is a doublet of the visit in § 31.

§ 28 Modern historical research, which is restoring to us the knowledge of the great Hittite empire once dominant in Asia Minor and northern Syria, appears incidentally to have thrown light on the origin of the legend of the Amazons. The period of the historical importance of the Hittites dates approximately from B c. 2000 to B c. 700, and it appears that their great goddess Ma—the prototype of Cybele, the Great Mother—was served by women "who in later centuries, on the decline of the Hittite power, at the coming maybe of the Phrygians, at first for the defence of their religion, and later separating in independent action, developed into armed priestesses."⁷ In the Introductory Note to the work here quoted Professor Sayce says—"The Amazons of Greek legend prove to have been the warrior-priestesses of the

¹ BAN, vi 5 ² See too *id notes*, and LAN, 111 83 ³ Seep 68

⁴ They are referred to in Pliny's *Nat Hist*, Bk v, sect. 46, as "Himantopodes loripedes quidam quibus seipendo ingredi natura sit." Cf Vol. 11 p. 55, and note.

⁵ BHA, p. 107, BLEA, p. 166

⁶ *Of*. Vol. v. p. 233, note.

⁷ GH, pp. 170, 357

great Hittite goddess " ¹ The seat of the Amazons, which legend places on the river Thermodon, is quite in concord with the above identification, and their legend itself extends from Homer ² through Herodotus and many other writers to Sir John Maundeville ³ As to the origin of the legend that brought Alexander into connexion with the Amazons we are told by Arrian that when that king was in Sughdiana he received a visit from Pharasmanes, king of the Kharazmians, who stated that his dominions marched with those of the Colchians and Amazons, and that if Alexander desined to proceed to those legions and subjugate the laces in the neighbourhood of the Euxine he would act himself as guide and furnish necessaries for the troops ⁴ The land of Kharazm is now represented by the modern Khiva, and the whole breadth of the Caspian Sea intervened between Pharasuianes and his nearest neighbour to the west, but the mere suggestion seems to have taken root, and soon it was affirmed by some of the more romantic, or less scrupulous, historians of Alexander that the queen of the Amazons had visited him in prison—the view adopted by Quintus Curtius, who tells us how then queen Thalestus arrived with her suite of three hundred women horn the vicinity of the river Thermodon, and spent about a fortnight with the king ⁵ In the Pseudo-Calhsthenes it is Alexander who visits the Amazons, and the visit takes place immediately after that to Candace, queen of Ethiopia, in which the ground is laid for it by representing her son and daughter-in-law as being on then way to perform religious rites in the land of the Amazons when the lady was abducted Fndausi, who omits the passage about the abduction, naturally leaves out the reference to the Amazons and gives his account of them in another connexion ^b His version corresponds with that of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, Bk III ch 25-27, and with the Synac version, Bk III ch 15-17 In these versions and in the Shahnama the Amazons are represented as living on an island, and the account of their marriage-customs in the Pseudo-Calhsthenes and in the poem may owe something to the stories of the Male and Female Islands that no doubt were current in Egypt in connexion with the country—southern Arabia—whence it obtained its supplies of frankincense It seems to have been the custom of the incense-gatherers, who were always men, to leave then wives and children at home, which in this case would mean, among other localities, the Kuria Muna Islands, while they themselves crossed over to the mainland for the purposes of then trade Sons, when grown up, would

¹ GH, p IX.

² *Iliad*, III 187 seq., vi 186

³ AM, cap. L.

⁴ DAA, IV. 15

⁵ HQC, vi. 5.

⁶ See p 153.

accompany their fathers, while the daughters would remain with the mothers. The seven Kuna Muria Islands thus became known collectively as "The Female Island," while the mainland represented "The Male Island" ¹ There appears to be a reference to the same custom in Hiuen Tsiang — "To the south-west of Fo-lin, in an island of the sea, is the kingdom of the western women here there are only women, with no men, they possess a large quantity of gems and precious stones, which they exchange in Fo-lin. Therefore the king of Fo-lin sends certain men to live with them for a time. If they should have male children, they are not allowed to bring them up" ²

By the black race encountered by Sikandar on his way to the city of the Amazons the negroes seem to be intended, and the description is quite in the style of one in the *Arabian Nights* — "Then sprang with a drop-leap from one of the trees a big slobbering blackamooi with rolling eyes which showed the whites, a truly hideous sight" ³ The bunging of frost and snow would be a great marvel in their hot country. Similarly Sarv, king of Yaman, tries to overcome the three sons of Farid un ⁴

It does not seem possible to identify the fair-haired rare that Sikandar met after leaving Harum. The type is too common and his wanderings are too vague. There is the Berber lace in North Africa among which the blond type with blue eyes is not uncommon, and in northern Europe the Scandinavian. Herodotus too speaks of the Budun, whom he places north of the Palus Mæotis, as having blue eyes and red hair, ⁵ and Tacitus describes in similar terms the peoples of Germany ⁶ Moreover, tribes with long beards and blue eyes are mentioned in Chinese annals as living in Central Asia ⁷

The notion of "The Gloom," about which Sikandari makes inquiries, seems to have been the outcome of two distinct conceptions. One was that as the sun set in the West, and thereupon night ensued, there was a Land of Darkness in that quarter. This notion is as old as Homer, who opposes the East to the West by describing the former as being πρὸς Ἡῶ τ' Ἠέλιόν τε, "towards the dawn and the sun," and the latter as being πρὸς ζόφον, "towards the gloom" ⁸ The other was based on the accounts that filtered through to the sunnier South of the dark-

¹ SP, p. 144.

² BBR, 11 279. Fo-lin is supposed to stand for the Byzantine empire. *Id* p. 278, note. Cf. too YMP, Bk. 111 c. xxxi., and note

³ BAN, 16

* See Vol. 1 p. 184

⁵ Bk., IV c. 108

⁶ Germania, c. 4

⁷ BAG, 1. 193, and note

⁸ *Ilad*, xii 239-240, *Odi/vey*, xiii. 240, &c

ness of the North—the long sunless winters of the Arctic Circle. Attached to each conception was the idea of an earthly paradise—in the West the garden of the Hespides, and in the North the elysium of the Hyperboreans, who had their counterpart, 01 original, in Indian legend which told that "towards the North, beyond the Himalaya, dwelt the Uttarakuri, a people who enjoyed a long and happy life, to whom disease and care were unknown, and who revelled in every delight in a land all paradise "¹ Hesiod knew of the Hyperboreans ² There is an interesting chapter on "The Land of Darkness " in Marco Polo³

§ 29. At the close of § 28 we have the beginning of the story Of Sikandar's famous expedition into the Land of Darkness and to the Fount of Life This does not appear in branch A of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, in the early Latin version of Julius Valerius, or in the Syriac version It is given at large, however, in branch C, which has Christian leanings, and it is found also in the Ethiopic version It is obvious that Firdausi's account had passed through the Arabic The Arabic in its turn came from the Syriac, and the existence of the account in the Syriac is due to the fact that Jacob of Sarug⁴ inserted it in his metrical version of the Syriac Christian Legend of Alexander already referred to⁵ The basis of the whole is branch C of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, where the account runs as follows—"Thence Alexander set forth again with his host, retiring to a level place in the midst whereof was a ravine Having thrown a bridge across he wrote thereon in Greek, Persian, and Egyptian, and the writings signified 'Alexander, arriving hither, built this arch, and crossed it with his whole host, being desirous of possessing the ends of the earth, God willing' And in three days he came to regions where the sun did not shine The name thereof is 'The Country of the Blest' And Alexander, having left the baggage and the infantry with the old men and the women, was minded to take chosen youths with him to investigate and see these regions His friend Callisthenes advised him to make his entry with forty friends, one hundred youths, and twelve hundred soldiers King Alexander set forth, instructing them to take no old man with them An inquisitive elder, however, who had two sons—noble and trusty soldiers—said to them 'Children, hearken to your father and take me with you, and I shall be found not empty on the journey, for I wot that in time of difficulty the old will be sought after, and you therefore, as having me with you, will be honoured much

¹ MCAI ; p 24

³ VMP, Vol. 11. p. 483 *seq.* and *notes*

⁵ *Id*

Herodotus, IV. 32.

⁴ See p. 15.

by your king. Lest, being found to transgress his ordinance, ye be deprived of life, now, bestirring yourselves, crop my head and beard, thus altering hair and appearance I will go with you and prove of great use to you in the time of need.' So doing then father's bidding, they took the old man with them. Thus they fared with Alexander and reached a murky spot. Being unable to advance further, owing to the impassable nature of the place, they removed thence their tents. Next day, Alexander, taking with him a thousand soldiers, went to ascertain if the end of the earth were there. Going leftward he saw a part that was lighter, and fared over places waste and precipitous for half the day. This he knew not from the sun but by taking measurement of the way geometrically. Afterwards he turned back in alarm because the route was impracticable. Emerging, he was minded to go to the right because the plain was level, albeit dark and gloomy. But being in difficulties because none of the youths were willing for him to enter that dark place in that, the horses being wearied out by the glooms of that dark road, they would be unable to return, Alexander said to them — 'O noble soldiers' ye all know now that in wars nothing is done nobly without counsel and advice, for in good sooth an old man coming with us would direct us how we ought to enter this dark region. If now there be some noble man among you let him go and bring into our camp for me an elder, and he shall have much gold of me.' Howbert none of them was found to do this thing by reason of the length of the way and of the lightless an. Then, presenting themselves, the sons of the old man said to Alexander — 'If thou wilt hear us with forbearance, O king' we will tell thee somewhat' King Alexander said — 'Say what ye will, for I swear by divine Providence not to wrong you.' Forthwith they told him about their sire, and ran and brought the old man to him. Alexander, on seeing, embraced him and asked him to counsel them. The old man said 'It is fit, O king Alexander^f for you to know this, that if horses enter you will see the light never more. Choose therefore mares with foals, and leave the foals there, going yourselves with the mares, they will lead us thither. Alexander therefore made search among all those with him, but only found a hundred mares with foals. Taking these and another hundred selected ones, as well as many others to carry then provand, he entered according to the counsel of the old man, leaving the foals without. The old man instructed his sons that whatever they should find lying on the ground as they went they were to collect and place in their pouches. There entered with Alexander three

¹ I.e. back to the foals

hundred and sixty soldiers, and thus advancing along the dark road for fifteen *schani*,¹ they saw a certain place wherein was a bright fountain whereof the water flashed like lightning, the air was fragrant and most sweet. Now Alexander, the king, becoming hungry, wished to eat bread, and calling his cook, who was named Andreas, told him to prepare a meal. Taking a dried fish he went to the shining water of the fountain to wash the meat. On being wetted in the water it came to life forthwith and escaped from the hand of the cook, who told nobody of what had happened, but took himself some of the same water in a silver vessel and safe-guarded it, the whole place indeed gushed with waters whereof all drank and partook of food. Alexander, after he had eaten, again journeyed on for thirty *schani*, and further saw a light without sun, moon, or stars, and he beheld three birds flying, but having the aspect of men, and crying to him from aloft in the Grecian tongue 'The land whereon thou treadest, Alexander' is that of God alone. Return, thou wretch! thou art not able to tread the Country of the Blest. Go back then, O man! and tread the earth bestowed upon thee, and prepare not troubles for thyself. Being affrighted, Alexander gave instant heed to the words spoken to him by the birds, one of which cried to him again — 'The East calleth thee, Alexander' and the realm of Porus shall become subject to thee by conquest'. Thus saying the bird flew off. Alexander, having resigned himself to Providence, bade Antiochus to signify to the troops — 'Let each that wisheth take of what is here, be it stone or earth or wood'. To some it seemed good so to do, while to others Alexander's words appeared madness. Now as they went he said to Philon — 'Dismount and take up whatever chanceth'. Philon, dismounting, found a stone that seemed to him one of the worthless sort, and taking this he fared with Alexander. Many of the troops too took what each found from the material lying in that place, and the sons of the old man in particular, according to the bidding of their father, filled their wallets till they could walk no longer. Alexander, having guides, sent on the asses in front, marched by the Wain, and in some days arrived within hearing of the neighing of the mares, and in this manner issued from the land of night. So they came to the light where were the rest of the troops, and, looking on one another, found pearls and stones of price. When they saw this those that had taken none repented, while all those that had taken them blessed the old man and Alexander for their good counsel. Philon brought his stone to Alexander, and it was

¹ A measure of length varying from 60 to 30 stades. A stade = 606¾ English feet.

all gold. Then the cook told how the meat had come to life. Alexander, enraged, ordered him a terrible scourging. He said however to Alexander — 'What boots it, Alexander' to repent a past matter? He did not say that he had drunk of the water or that he had kept some of it. This the cook refrained from confessing save as to the dried fish coming to life. Then that wicked cook going to Kale, the daughter of Alexander and of the concubine Une, seduced her, promising to give her to drink of the Water of the Fount of Immortality, which he did. Alexander, hearing of this, envied their immortality. He called his daughter and said to her — 'Take thy clothes and depart, for behold thou hast become a goddess, being immortal, and thou shalt be called Nereis as having immortality from water, and therein shalt thou dwell'. Weeping and mourning she departed from him, and consorted in waste places with the spirits. As for the cook, Alexander gave orders for a stone to be fastened to his neck, and that he should be flung into the sea. Being cast away thus he became a god and dwelt in a part of the sea that on this account was called Andieanticus. So much for the cook and the daughter of Alexander, who took these things to signify that the end of the earth was in those parts. When they came to the arch that Alexander had built, he engraved thereon again to this effect — 'Let those that wish to enter the Land of the Blest fare to the right'"¹

This legend through the Syriac became known to Muhammad, who gives his version of it in the chapter of the Kuran known as "The Cave". Of part of the story he makes Moses the hero and of the rest Zii-'l-karnain, *ie* The Two-homed (Alexander the Great). In the Kuran the part of the legend concerned with the salt fish is told in connexion with Moses and, being somewhat obscure and fragmentary, has given a fine opportunity to the commentators. To elucidate the passage in the Kuran it was explained that on one occasion when Moses had made an eloquent address to his followers they were so impressed that they asked him if he knew of any one wiser than himself, and he replied that he did not. The Almighty reproached him for his vanity and told him that if he would go to a certain rock, where two seas met, he would find his master in wisdom. He was to take with him a fish in a basket and, when he missed the fish, would know that he had reached the right place. Accordingly Moses and Joshua set forth, arrived at the rock, forgot all about the fish, and fared onward. At length Moses became hungry, bethought him of the fish, and told Joshua to bring it. Joshua had to admit

¹ MPC, Bk. 11. cc 39-41

that he had forgotten all about it. The fish in the meantime had made its way to the sea in some marvellous manner, as Muhammad says. Moses and Joshua therefore returned to the rock, where they met one of God's servants who by his proceedings proved his superiority in understanding. He is identified by Muhammadans with the prophet Al Khidr, known from the hue of his raiment as "The Green Prophet," and the friend of the Faithful in their distress. He is familiar to readers of the *Arabian Nights*, and is a curious development of the reprobate cook, Andreas, of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes.¹

The angel Israfil, whose introduction into Firdausi's account is another sign of his indebtedness to Arabic sources, is one of the four archangels and the sounder of the Trump of Doom which will slay all creatures, himself included, after which the general Resurrection will ensue.²

§ 30 The legend of the iron gates built by Alexander in the Caucasus to exclude from the civilized world the savage tribes of the North is absent in branch A of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, in the Latin version of Julius Valerius, and in the Synac version. It is found, however, in branches B and C.³ Thence the account passed into the Christian Legend of Alexander and thence into the poem of Jacob of Sarug and the Kuran.⁴ In the latter the passage is as follows—"Then followed he (*i e* Zu-'l-karnam) a route until he came between the two mountains, beneath which he found a people who scarce understood a language. They said—'O Dhoulkamain' verily, Gog and Magog waste this land, shall we then pay thee tribute, so thou build a rampart between us and them?' He said, 'Better *than your tribute* is the might where-with my Lord hath strengthened me, but help me strenuously, and I will set a barrier between you and them. Bring me blocks of iron'—until when it filled the space between the mountain sides—'Ply,' said he, 'your bellows'—until when he had made it red with heat (fire) he said,—'Bring me molten brass that I may pour upon it'. And Gog and Magog were not able to scale it, neither were they able to dig through it."⁵

Naturally this account appealed to the commentators on the Kuran and to Arabic historians, and as embellished by them provided the material for Firdausi's picturesque version. Tabari, for instance, compares the promiscuity of the excluded races to that of beasts, speaks of their sleeping on one ear and covering

¹ See on the story of the fish in the Kuran and Al Khidr, SK, 11 116 seq., and notes, LAN, 1 22, 233, 11 420

² LAN, 1 -0

³ MPC, 11 26 (C), 29 (B)

⁴ See p 15

RK, p 222

themselves with the other, and as having a thousand children each¹—traits found in the *Shahnama*² The word used in that poem for the monsters whereon Yajuj and Majuj are said to batten is "tinnin"—the same as that variously translated in the Old Testament R V, as sea-monster,³ dragon,⁴ and serpent.⁵

It is a question as to which of the passes through the Caucasus⁶ Sikandar's barrier is to be referred The most probable, because the most exposed, is the one between the range and the Caspian, but the description in the text, and still more in the older authorities, which describe the wall as being built from mountain to mountain, seems to favour the pass of Dariel, where the road runs through vertical walls of rock nearly 6000 feet high

The method of vitrifying fortifications by means of heat was known in ancient times, and was used in the new world as well as the old The operation is said to be not difficult if the proper locks are used for the purpose, some of the primaries fusing easily when exposed to the heat of wood-fires There are stated to be some fifty examples of such vitrified forts in Scotland alone⁷

§ 31 We have had already a version of the account of the corpse in the palace of jewels in § 27

The speaking trees of the sun and moon are found in all the branches of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, in A as part of the contents of a letter from Alexander to Aristotle, and in B and C as part of the narrative⁸ They occur also in the Synac version⁹ and in Julius Valerius The trees, which in the above versions are described as resembling cypresses, seem akin to those of the riddle propounded by the archimages to Zal¹⁰ In fact it is not improbable that the riddle was suggested by this passage in the Romance of Alexander Other passages in the *Shahnama* may have been suggested similarly, the wonders, for instance, seen by Kai Khusrau during his voyage in pursuit of Afrasiyab,¹¹ and the account of how Asfandiyai, whom Persian tradition may have liked to regard as forestalling Sikandar, wandered over the whole world and reached the Gloom.¹² In the same chapter of the Syriac version as that mentioned above we have the account of another solar tree, corresponding to a passage in the Pseudo-Calhsthenes¹³—
"From thence we set out again and came to a river (the ocean-

¹ ZT, 1. 521

² See p 163.

Gen 1 21, Job vii 12

⁴ Ps lxxiv 13

⁶ *Id* xci 13

⁶ *Of* Vol 1 p 16.

⁷ See the article on "Vitrified Forts" in *Ency Brit*, 11th ed

⁹ MPC, 111 17, and note

BHA, 111 7

¹⁰ See Vol. 1 p. 308

⁹ *seq*

¹³ *Id* iv 245

¹² *Id* v. 76

BHA, p 100, MPC, p 88

stream '.) And upon the bank of the river there was a tree, which grew and increased from dawn until the sixth hour, and from the sixth hour until evening it diminished in height until there was nothing to be seen of it Its smell was very pleasant . . ." In Zal's riddle the sun only was taken into consideration In Sikandar's case the tree has a double trunk to provide for the moon as well The male trunk (the sun) speaks by day, the female (the moon) by night Much has been written about these trees, but the allegory seems fairly obvious

§ 32 Sikandar's expedition to Chin and his dealings with the Faghfui are extant only in the Syriac version of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, whence it passed into the Arabic as Dinawari's account, which follows the Syriac closely, shows ¹ Firdausi's is closer still and agrees with the Syriac in making the Faghfui, though conscious of his power, fall in with Sikandar's wishes through sheer love of peace—a point omitted by Dinawari² This is the third occasion on which Alexandeī is represented as going as his own ambassador³—a notion originating no doubt with the Egyptian author of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes

§ 33 According to Firdausi's version, this is the third time that Sikandar goes to Hind Historically, after the defeat of Porus, Alexander had some trouble with that king's nephew, who, after having sent ambassadors to Alexander out of enmity towards his uncle, became disaffected when he found that Porus was held ¹¹¹ such great honour by his conqueror⁴ Part of Alexander's army, under Craterus, returned from India by way of Nimruz

§ 34 This has some correspondence with the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, Bk III ch 28, and with the Syriac version, Bk III ch 18 In the former the priest of the sun is described as being an Ethiop, and seems to reappear in the Gush-bistar of the Shahnama We have had Gush bistars already, in fact if not in name in Firdausi's description of the races excluded by Sikandar's barrier—

" They sleep upon one ear,
And use the other as a coverlet " ⁵

In this connexion the following passage is of interest " The Enotokoitai are called in Sanscrit *KarnaprdwramtU*, and are frequently referred to in the great epic poems—eg *Mahdbh* II 1170, 1875 The opinion was universally prevalent among the

¹ NAK, p 40, BHA, p 109 seq

² *Id* note

³ Or the fourth if we include his visit to the city of Porus, which is not mentioned in the Shahnama See p 64.

⁴ See p. 64.

⁵ *Id* p. 163

Indians that barbarous tribes had large ears . "It is easy," says Wheeler (*Hist Ind*, Vol m p 179), "for any one conversant with India to point out the origin of many of the so-called fables . Men do not have ears hanging down to their feet, but both men and women will occasionally elongate their ears after a very extraordinary fashion by thrusting articles through the lobe . If there was one story more than another which excited the wrath of Strabo, it was that of a people whose ears hung down to their feet . Yet the story is still current in Hindustan . Babu Johan Das says — An old woman once told me that her husband, a sepoy in the British army, had seen a people who slept on one ear, and covered themselves with the other ' (*Domestic Manners and Customs of the Hindus*, Banaras, 1860) The story may be referred to the Himalayas . Fitch, who travelled in India about 1585, says that a people in Bhutan had ears a span long "¹

For the Ichthyophagi see p 69 seq

§ 35 The correspondence with Anstotle with legard to the succession is of course an Oriental addition which came to Firdausi through the Arabic . Dmawari has it to the same effect, the chief difference being that he makes the matter the subject of an interview between Alexander and Aristotle at Jerusalem where, according to him, the former died² . The device was intended to account for the long interval—five centuries and a half—that separated the last of the Karanians (Sikandar) from the first of the Sasamans (Ardshri Papakan) . The Persians made it out to be much shorter³

The prodigious birth that occurred on Sikandar's arrival at Babylon is descnbed in the Pseudo-Oalhsthenes, Bk III ch 30, 111 the Latin Version of Julius Valerius, and in the Syriac, Bk III ch 19

§ 36 The version of Alexander's will in the Psoudo-Calhsthenes, Bk III . ch 33, is longest in codex A, which unfortunately is much mutilated . The corresponding passage in the Synac version is Bk III ch 22, and this agrees with Fudausi's in the following points—the request to his mother not to grieve, the instruction to the chiefs to honour her, the gift of the kingdom of Macedonia (of Rum in Firdausi) to the son of Rushanak, if she shall have one, and the direction that his (Sikandar's) body shall be laid 111 a golden coffin filled with honey, and conveyed for interment to Egypt . Most of the provisions of the will as given in the Greek and Synae would have little or no interest for later

¹ MCAI, p 75, note, cf AM, p 275 ² NAR, 41 ³ See p 193
VOL VI. F

Persian or Arabic writers, or for Firdausi himself, and naturally are lacking in the *Shahnama*

§ 37 This corresponds with the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, Bk III ch 32, 34, and with the Synac version, Bk III ch 21, but the latter omits the dispute of the Greeks and Persians over the disposal of Alexander's body. According to the Greek version the oracle of the Babylonian Zeus was consulted, by whose direction the corpse was conveyed to Memphis whence, at the instigation of the high priest of that city, it was taken to Alexandria and there buried. According to Firdausi the oracle was consulted at a place called Khuim, a word which means "vapour " or "exhalation " Similar emanations are said to have existed at Delphi

Alexander died at Babylon on June 13th B C 323. His death was no doubt a natural one, the result of a fever, but it gave rise to a legend, referred to by Atnan only to be rejected,¹ that poison was employed for the purpose by Antipatei who, fearing that his position as regent in Macedonia had been undermined by the intrigues of Olympias, sent his son Cassandei to bring about the death of his master. Cassander found a willing instrument in Iollas, Alexander's cup-bearer, who had injuries of his own to avenge, and the fatal draught was administered at a banquet. The Pseudo-Calhsthenes repeats the story,² and it appears in the Synac and Ethiopic versions,³ but not in the *Shahnama*

§ 38 The sentences of the sages over the corpse of Sikandar are not in the Pseudo-Callisthenefe or in the Synac version of it. They are an Oriental addition, and Mas'udi gives another version of them.⁴

§ 39 Alexander's bunal at Alexandria of course is historical. His mother, according to Mas'udi, removed the corpse from its golden coffin, lest the cupidity of future kings should be aroused and the tomb desecrated. Mas'udi, who spent some of his last years in Egypt, and died about A D 956, states that a pedestal of white and other coloured marbles, and known as the tomb of Alexander, was to be seen at Alexandria in A D 943-944⁵. S. Chiysostom, however, says that the tomb was destroyed in his time (A D 345-407), and the annual observance at Alexandria of the day of Alexander's death abolished.⁶ Perhaps there may have been some restoration of the tomb by the Arabs, to whom the personality of Alexander was of interest,⁷ after their conquest of the city in the middle of the seventh century A D

¹ DAA, vii 27

²

MFC, III 31

³ BHA, Bk III c 20, BLEA, p 339

⁴ MM, II, 251, NAR, p. 48

⁶ *Id.* 259

⁶ MPC, p xxvi

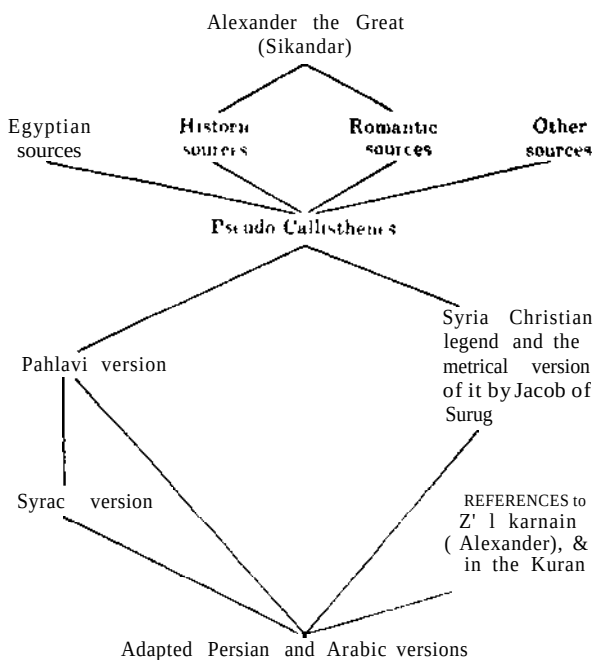
⁷ See p 15

Firdausi says that Sikandar built ten cities. In the Pseudo-Calhsthenes the number is twelve or thirteen,¹ thirteen in the Synac version,² and twelve in the Ethiopia³. One at least of them has not become a brake of thorns, and the Romance of Alexander, which there first took literary form, has done more to extend his fame and make his name a household word than all the sober histories of him ever written.

To conclude then, in the three reigns of Darab, Dara, and Sikandar, taken collectively, we have the Persian version of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes which, if it does not possess a complete historical skeleton, has at least a historical backbone, some of the vertebrae of which reappear in the Shahnama—*eg* Sikandar's invasion of Iran, the defeat and death of Darius, Sikandar's accession to the throne of Iran, his marriage with an Oriental princess, his invasion of India, his defeat of Porus and intercom se with Indian sages, his return to Iran, his death at Babylon, and interment at Alexandra. Of the elements introduced into the Pseudo-Calhsthenes by its Egyptian author the Persian version reproduces two—the device of Sikandar going as his own ambassador, and the story of Kaidafa. Of Persian and Arabic substitutions and additions, not appearing in versions of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes other than the Persian, the most important are the account of the birth of Sikandar, his address to the chiefs on his accession to the Iranian throne, and his correspondence with Anstotle as to the succession. The purely Arabic are the story of Kaid, the pilgrimage to the Kaaba, the interview with the angel Israfil, and the sentences of the sages at Sikandar's interment.

The appended diagram may help to show the provenance of the Persian version of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes

1 MPC, 151,note - BHA Bk III c 24 BLEA, p 351.



Reigns of Darab, Dara, and Sikandar in the Bastan narna

ditto in modem Persian version of ditto

|

ditto in the Shahnama

§ I

How Sihandai sat upon the Throne of Iran

When seated on the throne, Sikandar said — c 1286
 " Be wisdom wedded to the minds of kings,
 For God is all-prevailing in the world,
 And wicked is the world-lord that doth fear
 Not Him. Our good and ill beyond all doubt
 Will pass and not escape time's clutch Whoever
 Shall come to this our court and shall appeal
 For justice to ourselves against ourselves,
 At audience-time 01 midnight, shall receive
 An answer to his plaint, for in that God
 Who giveth victory, hath granted us
 The Grace and oped the door of conquering fortune,
 My subjects all on mountain and on waste,
 In city and at sea, shall share therein
 We do not ask for tribute from the world
 For five years, saving from the man that saith —
 ' Sikandar's peer am I.' We will bestow
 Much wealth on mendicants, but ask not aught
 From him that hath "

At these his gracious words
 And at this union of his heart with justice,
 There went up a thanksgiving from Iran
 To that just-dealing monarch of the earth,
 And then the assembly scattered, but the king
 Sat on with his advisers, counselling

§ 2

*How Sikandar wrote to Dilarai and Rushanak, the Wife and
 Daughter of Dara, touching the Nuptials of Rushanak*

Sikandar ordered that a scribe should come,
 And called for reed of Rum and silk of Chin.

The scribe, when he had made the kex a pen
 Indited this epistle to the mother
 Of Rushanak " The guerdon of the good
 God grant to thee and mind-peace after pain,
 c. 1287 I wrote to thee erewhile with more advice
 Than is contained herein. What time the days
 Of him who was thy spouse had reached their close,
 And he was murdered by a servant's hand,
 I buried him with royal obsequies,
 And have accomplished all the days of mourning
 Oft-times before the war I sued for peace,
 But he refused because his time had come.
 His very foemen sorrowed for his blood
 May God receive him into Paradise,
 The Just One give him place among the Saints,
 And to his foes the bane of arrow-points
 None maketh shift to scape death's clutch 'tis like
 An autumn-blast, and we are as the leaves
 Now ye have all the world at your disposal.
 Not few bear witness to Dara's last wish,
 How he gave Rushanak to me, and said —
 ' Thou hast no equal to her in thy bower.'
 So send her to me, and that presently,
 Escorted by her guardians and her slaves,
 And by the chiefs and nobles of Iran,
 To bring the light upon my darkling soul
 Make Ispahan¹ thine own as in the past,
 Send out intelligencers everywhere,
 And keep in office those just, modest men
 Appointed by Dara, son of Darab.
 If ye would live not there choose where ye will,
 The cities of f ran are all before you,
 But be ye reconciled to me in heart,
 And give me in the world the name Dara."
 He wrote a letter too to Rushanak,

¹ The text has the Arabic form Isfahan

SIKANDAR

And made the pen's point eloquent. He first
Gave praise to God, the Ruler of the world,
The Wise, the All-sustainer, then he said —
" The stock of kings begetteth but men pious,
Attractive, well-advised, refined, and modest,
Men eloquent of speech and soft of voice
Thy father gave thee to me , then he died,
And bare away with him a goodly name.
When thou arrivest hither, and beholdest
My bower and palace, thou shalt be my queen,
Chief consort, the adornment of my throne,
The lustre of my Grace, my name, and fortune
A letter have we written to thy mother
To bid her send thee hither in a fashion
Befitting issue of the king of kings,
And with an archimage of Ispahan
Preceding thee, with servants of the crown,
With elephants and litters, and with her
Who gave thee milk and honey Dwell within
Our house with joy—chief lady of the bower
Now be high heaven circling to thy will,
Thy person far from foe and far from harm "

Came, swift as flying dust-cloud, one well versed
In wisdom, and the world's king's words rehearsed

§3

How dilarai answered the Letter of Sikandar

When Dilarai heard this she heaved a sigh,
And weeping for Dara in tears of blood,
So that the dust beneath was saturate,
Called for a scribe and wrote a fair response
In well instructed terms and well inspired
She first gave praises to the Omnipotent,
The Lord of counsel, peace, and excellence,

Then : " From the process of revolving heaven
Whence are strife, peace, and love, we used to ask
All Grace upon Dara's behalf and made
His name the jewel of our tongues, but since
His day is over, and he is enthroned
Upon a coffin-board, it is for thee,
And thee alone, that I ask blessings, might,
With triumph, kingship, and the world's obedience
I ask it openly without reserve,
For I have heard (may heaven joy in thy soul')
What courteously thou hast conveyed to me
About the obsequies of Shah Dara,
How Mahiyar was gibbeted and how
Malevolent Janusiyar was punished
Brief is his life that murdereth his master
Thou hast sought peace, too, and passed many a day
In counsel. Service is not for the Shahs,
And none expecteth thralldom in the great.
Thou'rt in Dara's place, who was king of kings,
And as the Sun hath set thou art our Moon
Since he that was the monarch of the age
Chose thee not one will dare transgress his rede.
Next as to what he said of Rushanak,
That wish of his which made our heart rejoice
She is thine handmaid, and we are thy slaves,
We bow our heads to thy command and will
She sendeth greetings and hath writ to thee
A letter like the garth of Paradise
We have, moreover, written to the magnates,
The frontier-chieftains and the men of war,
That thy commands are as Dara's commands,
And none will swerve from fealty to thee."

She gave the envoy purses, slaves, and treasures
Of all kinds. When that Ruman reached Sikandar,
And told what he had seen and heard of court,
Of precedents obtaining, and of throne,

Whereon thou hadst declared " The Shah still liveth "
 Sikandar was rejoiced at what was said,
 And placed the crown in peace upon his head

§4

*How Sikandar sent his Mother, Nahul, to fetch Rushanak,
 and how he Mamed het*

He called his mother from 'Ammunya,¹ c. 1289
 Told her upon her coming what Dara
 Had said, and added " Go to Dilarai,
 And enter into gracious intercourse
 With her, see Rushanak within the bower,
 And, having seen her, greet her on my part,
 Take her a bracelet, earnings, torque and crown
 Of royal gems, a hundred mules with loads
 Of tapestries and furthermore ten camels
 With gold brocade of Rum, and place withal
 In purses thirty thousand in dinais
 Out of the treasury by way of largess,
 And take with thee three hundred Ruman damsels,
 Or more if more are needed Give each one
 A goblet worthy of a queen's fair handmaid,
 Take servants to escort thee and forgo
 No circumstance of royal etiquette "

The mother of the Shah, as he commanded
 Made ready and set off upon her journey,
 With her interpreters escorting her—
 Ten of the honey-tongued philosophers
 Now as she drew anigh to Ispahan
 A crowd of nobles went to give her welcome,
 While Dilarai came forward from the palace,
 She and the magnates, as their custom was,
 And gave such largess in the court that treasure

¹ Cf p 23 and vote.

And money grew misprized. They held a conclave
 Of counsellors within the palace, all
 The chiefs attended Dilarai the while
 Prepared such wedding-gear that the bazars
 Looked busy everywhere, and league-long files
 Of camels carried stuffs for clothes and carpets,
 For hangings and for tapestries inwoven
 With gold and silver thread, and diverse-hued
 There were such Arab steeds with golden bridles,
 Such Indian scimitars with golden scabbards,
 Surtouts and morions and bards withal,
 With golden sparths and maces ponderous,
 With stuffs for raiment cut or in the piece,
 That no one in the world e'er looked on more,
 Such aloe-wood, gris-amber, and pure musk,
 As gave to enemies good cause to writhe.
 They requisitioned servants from the palace,
 And made them ready forty golden litters
 In one of them with parasol and slaves
 Sat Rushanak rejoicing. From the halls
 C 1290 Of Dilarai, for half the route, the way
 Was all gold, jewels, horses, and attendants
 They raised triumphal arches in the cities,
 All lips were smiling, all hearts full They showered
 Drachms on the bride's brocaded parasol,
 And mingled overhead musk and dinars
 When that Moon reached the Shah's own bower
 Sikandar
 Much scanned her stately form and goodly face
 Thou hadst said "Wisdom nurtured her on love."
 Whenas her mother set her on the throne
 Of gold he poured out all his soul to her,
 And passed a sennight in her company,
 Conversing much with her, observed her shrewdly,
 And saw in her but majesty and meekness,
 Discretion, modesty, and fair behaviour,

So that his heart was joined to her in love.
Then all the paladins throughout Iran
Called blessings down on him as Shah, and brought
Great gifts of gold and royal jewelry,
While justice o'er the world's whole face was spread,
And everywhere the waste inhabited.

§ 5

*How Kaid of Hind had a Dream, and how
Mihran interpreted it*

A speaker of the tongue of days of old
A tale that thou wilt muse to hear thus told —
There was in Hind a monarch, Kaid by name,
Whose sole pursuit was knowledge and advice,
He had a sage's heart, a prince's brain,
King's bearing and the Grace of archimages
He dreamed a dream ten nights successively—
A portent mark it well The men of learning
In Hindustan, the mighty both in word
And lore, the sages and the counsellors,
Met at his bidding, and he told his dreams
At large without reserve, but every heart
Was full of deep concern, each visage wan,
For there was none that could interpret them
Then said a sage to Kaid "O sovereign,
Memorial of the great and man of wisdom !
There is a famous one by name Mihran,
Who hath attained his fill of earthly lore.
He will not sleep or rest him in a city,
And liveth but with cattle of the field,
Subsisting on the herbs upon the mountains,
And not accounting us as fellow-men,
His home is with the onager and deer,
Apart from habitation and mankind,

C. 1291 Naught in the world doth injure him, devout
Is he, and of high fortune,"

To the sage

Thus said king Kaid " One must not overlook
This virtuous man "

Moved by Mihran's renown

He mounted then and there upon his steed,
While, lest he should grow downcast, men of lore
Escorted him. The monarch reached Mihran,
Saluted courteously the sage, and said —
" Thou devotee who with the mountain-sheep
Inhabitest the heights' hear thou with care,
And then interpret wisely, these my dreams
Know that one night, O wise and holy man '
I slept in peace, unfrighted, undismayed,
No care at heart, no impulse in my head,
And in my chamber there was none with me.
Night's noon had passed, but dawn was not I saw
A habitation like a vasty palace,
Therein a huge, fierce elephant The dwelling
Showed doorless, but had one strait aperture
Wherethrough that savage elephant would pass
Uninjured by the startness, its black bulk
Would pass therethrough, but leave its trunk behind
Next night I saw the throne devoid of lord
Fair-fortuned, but upon the ivory seat
Sat one who donned the heart-delighting crown.
The third night came, I made me haste to sleep,
And dreamed that I beheld a goodly kerchief
Whereat four men tugged till their cheeks turned blue
With pulling, yet the kerchief was not rent,
Nor were the men fordone. Upon the fourth night
I saw, illustrious sage' a man athirst
Beside a stream. O'er him a fish kept pouring
The water, yet his droughty head was dry
Although the water followed as he moved'

How read'st thou this, good friend ? Upon the fifth night
My mind dreamed of a city by the water.
The citizens though blind seemed none the worse,
For thou hadst said ' The whole place is afire
With liberality and trafficking"
Upon the sixth night, honoured lord I saw
A city, all whose citizens were sick,
And went to question those in health, who first,
Preventing them, inquired ' How came ye thus
With body aching and with heart o'ercharged?'
And then the sick, whose soul had reached their lips, c 1292
Sought of the healthy for a remedy
When half the seventh night had passed I saw
A horse that grazed at will upon the plain,
It had two fore, two hind, feet, and two heads,
And cropped the grass off quickly with its teeth.
It grazed on both sides with its double mouth,
And yet its body was without a vent'
I saw upon the eighth night, holy man!
Three vases on the ground set all a-row,
Two filled with water but the central empty,
And dry for many a year. Two worthies tried
To fill it from the others whose contents
Were minished not by pouring while the dry
Remained with lip unmorstened On the ninth night
I dreamed that I beheld a cow reposing
'Mid grass and water in the sun. A calf,
Small, gaunt, and wizened, with lack-lustre face,
Was standing just before her, and she sucked it !
The cow was lusty and the calf was weak
If thou wilt lend thine ear to my tenth dream
Thou wilt not grow weary ere I end.
Upon a spacious plain I saw a spring
With streams and dykes about it. All the champaign
Was watered yet the fountain-head was dry.
I prithee answer and reveal the future."

Mihran, when he had heard this thing from Kaid,
 Said " Be not sick at heart about this dream,
 Thy fame shall fail not, ill not reach this realm.
 Sikandar will lead forth a mighty host,
 The chosen chieftains of Iran and Rum,
 And, if thou wouldst still rule, consort with wisdom,
 And fight him not Four things thou hast whose
 equals

None, great or small, e'er saw. One is thy daughter,
 Like Paradise above, through whom thy crown
 Is bright on earth, the next thy privy sage,
 Who telleth thee the secrets of the world,
 The third thy worthy leech, most famed of doctors,
 The fourth a cup wherein, if thou pour water,
 That water will not heat for sun or fire,
 No drinking minish it These will defeat
 All his endeavours, for when he shall come
 Confide in these, and not in war, if thou
 Wouldst have him gone betimes Thou canst not face
 His troops, his strategy, his realm, and treasure
 As wisely I advise thee so will I

Interpret these thy dreams. Thou didst behold
 C 1293 A dwelling and strait aperture wherethrough
 Passed elephant but left its trunk behind.
 Now hear the rede of the interpreter.
 Know that this dwelling imageth the world,
 The elephant a thankless king, unjust,
 False in his words, and royal but in name,
 A man of mean heart and of feeble body,
 Keen in his greed and gloomy in his soul
 At length, when he shall pass away, his name
 Abideth in dishonour in the end.
 Thy second dream concerning crown and throne,
 Which one man voided and another gained,
 Illustrateth that this inconstant world
 Removeth one and speedeth up another

As for thy third dream of that goodly kerchief,
 Clutched by four righteous men yet never rent
 Though they that tugged thereat were never weary:
 Hereafter there will come a man renowned
 Forth from the desert of spear-wielding horsemen,
 A holy, virtuous man by whom the Faith
 Of God will come to be four-square, and, know,
 'Tis imaged by that kerchief, while the four
 That tug thereat tug in safe-guarding it
 One Faith is the Dihkan's who worshippeth
 The Fire, and taketh not the sacred twigs
 Save with a muttered prayer¹ Another one
 Ts that of Moses, which thou call'st the Jew's,
 Who saith . 'None other should be praised', another
 That of Yunan,² a good Faith making just
 The great king's³ heart, and, fourth, the Arabian,
 Pure and exalting from the dust the prudent
 Four parties thus assuming to be guardians
 Tug at the kerchief in their several ways,
 And, as they pull against each other thus,
 Antagonize for their religion's sake
 Then, fourthly, for the droughty man who shunned
 Sweet water which a fish threw after him
 A time will come when holy men will be,
 Just like that fish, despised as having drunk
 Of wisdom's stream, but evil-doers' heads
 Will be exalted to the Pleiades
 When one shall call the thirsty to the water
 None wisely will respond, but all will shun
 The wisdom-seeker and combine to curse him.
 In thy fifth dream thou sawest a busy city.
 The burghers spent their lives in feasting, largess,
 And trafficking, but 'Fortune,' thou hadst said,

¹ See Vol 1 pp. 80, 81 s v. *Dihkan*, *Baj*, and *Banam*

² / e Javan, the son of Japheth and the progenitor of the Greeks

³ Sikandar

' Had sewn their eyes up so that none could see
 c 1294 Another' This referreth to a time
 When wise men will be slaves to ignorant,
 Who will despise the erudite and these,
 Their tree of wisdom fruiting not for them,
 Will laud, and openly commend, the witless,
 Though conscious of their own hypocrisy,
 And that such service is inglorious
 As for the sixth dream, when the ailing sick
 All went to question those in health a time
 Will come wherein the wretched mendicant
 Will be mispnzed in the rich man's eyes,
 And turn in his resourcelessness to any
 Possessed of goods, who will not give him aught,
 So that he will become a wageless servant,
 Or else a slave without the purchasing
 As for the ventless and two-headed steed
 Of thy seventh dream a time will come when men
 Will joy in wealth and never have enough
 The beggar, student, and celebrity
 Will get no share from them, for they will think
 Of no one save themselves and help not any.
 As to thine eighth dream of two vases brimming,
 And one left wholly void, two vases filled
 With lucid water, and the middle one
 All dry and morstureless a time will come
 Wherein the poor will grow so weak and wretched
 That, though the clouds of springtide, charged with
 showers,
 Shall hide the sunshine from the mendicant,
 Those very showers not e'en then will descend
 On him, and he will be heart-stricken. The rich
 Will lavish gifts among themselves and bandy
 Their honied compliments while beggars go
 With droughty lips and so pass day to night
 As for the ninth wherein a lusty cow

Sucked its lean calf when Saturn entereth Libra
 The world will be beneath the strong arm, poor
 And sick fare ill, and yet the well-to-do
 Will still exact from them, will never open
 Their own hoards, nor abate the others' travail.
 In thy tenth dream thou sawest a fountain dry,
 With waters all about it savouring musk,
 Yet no clear stream of water bubbled forth,
 And sped to mingle with those other waters.¹
 A time is coming when the world will have
 A king that is devoid of understanding,
 A king whose dark soul will be full of dudgeon,
 The whole world gloom beneath his tyranny,
 And never good be found among his treasures.
 He ever will be gathering fresh hosts c.1295
 To win his crown new fame, but in the end
 This monarch and his hosts will pass away,
 And there will be a change of dynasty
 But our time is the epoch of Sikandar,
 Who is the crown upon the heads of nobles
 Upon his coming give him these four things,²
 Methinketh not that he will ask for more,
 But, when thou dost content him, pass thee by,
 For he is diligent to learn and wise "

Kaid, having heard the matter from Mihran,
 Regained the vigour of his former years,
 Came, kissed the sage's head and eyes, and went
 His ways triumphant, happy, and content

¹ Peihaps this may mean "I have pations among the nobles|but Mahmud is obdurate " Cf what follows and Vol 1 p 33

² le the Foui Wonders Cf p 94,

§6

*How Sikandar marched against Raid of Hind
and wrote a Letter to htm*

Now when Sikandar had surveyed Iran,
And knew that crown and throne were his, he led
His host toward Kaid of Hind and, road or none,
Pursued his march, while as he went along
The people of the cities on his way
Unbarred their gates to him. In all that coast
He found none worthy to be called a man,
And raised his helm o'er Venus On approaching
The mighty city, named by valiant Kaid
Milad, they called a scribe and seated him
Before Sikandar who, like lion lusting
For quarry, wrote to Kaid " This from Sikandar
The mighty and victorious, the lord
Of scimitar, of crown, and belt."

The letter
Began with praises of the man that laveth
His heart with knowledge, " for in his desire
To eat the fruitage of his toils he chooseth
The easiest course, adoreth holy God,
And trusteth, feareth, reverenceth Him,
While knowing that we top the throne and are
The Shadow of the all-conquering Lord. Now I
Have written thee a letter to enlighten
Thy darkling mind, so when thy scribe shall read it
Lay it not out before thee and consider,
But, if it come by night, wait not for day,
And do my will forthwith If thou shalt slight
My words so will not I, but trample down
Beneath my feet thy throne and head and crown."

§7

How Kaid of Hind answered Sikandar's Letter and announced the Sending of the Font Wonders

Now when this letter came to Kaid of Hind
He interviewed the great king's envoy, praised
And favoured him exceedingly, assigned him
In courtesy a seat upon the throne,
And said ' I joy to do the Shah's behest,
And always will be true to him , but still
That one so great as I am should set forward
So quickly and unready would please not
The Maker and the monarch of the earth "

Then calling for a scribe, for pen of Chin,
And silk of Hind, he wrote at once an answer,
And decked it like the garth of Paradise
He gave, first, praises to the Omnipotent,
The Lord of victory and time, the Lord
Both generous and just, the Lord of manhood,
Of sense and prowess, then " The good man's head
Will turn not from the great, illustrious king,
Nor are we well advised in keeping aught
From him who hath the army, crown, and sword.
Four things have I that none else in the world
E'er hath possessed in public or in private,
And after me none will possess the like.
These, if the Shah shall bid me, I will send
To give new vigour to his heart and rule,
And afterward, if he commandeth me,
Will come and slave-like do him fealty "

§ 8

*How Sikandar sent back the Messenger to receive the
Four Wonders*

The envoy came as swiftly as the wind,
Told all that he had heard, and gave the letter.
Sikandar said to him "Go to, return
To that famed man, and say 'What things are these
That none e'er had in public or in private,
For we ourselves have seen whatever is,
And heaven will not create afresh ?'"

The envoy
Went from the presence, journeyed swift as fire,
c 1297 And said to Kaid "The Shah is tain to know
What things they are that no one else possesseth,
For seeing is believing."

When he heard,
Kaid cleared the court and sat with his advisers
In council, set the envoy in his presence,
And courteously entreated him, then said —
"I have withm my bower a daughter such
That if the sun on high should gaze on her
Twould gloom contrasted with my darling's face.
Her locks are lassos of one hue with pitch,
Milk savoureth on her lips, a cypress-stem
Is crooked to her, she scattereth pearls in speech,
Her looks and countenance make wisdom fly,
Yet 'tis the food of her discourse. When silent
She is the soul of modesty, and none
Hath seen her peer in this age Sprung from chiefs,
And pious, she is chaste of heart and modest.
I have a cup which thou mayst fill with wine,
Or pour therein cold water, and although
Thou sat'st with boon-companions for ten years

The wine would tail not, whether wine or water
 The cup affordeth thee, the marvel is
 No drinking draineth it My third possession
 Is this a youthful leech who diagnoseth
 Disease by making a uroscopy.
 So long as he is at the court the Shah
 Will never ail, and, fourthly, I possess,
 Though privily, a sage who will foretell
 The Shah all that will chance from circling sun
 And shining moon."

The noble messenger
 Withdrew, made wind his mate, came and informed
 Sikandar, and the heart of the world-king
 Bloomed like a rose He said " If what is spoken
 Be true could this world purchase all the four?²
 Kaid will illume my dark soul if he send them.
 His country 'neath my feet I will not tread,
 But with this good will hie me home instead "

§ 9

*How Sikandar sent Ten¹ Sages with a Letter to inspect the
 Four Wonders of Kaid of Hind*

The Shah made choice of Rumans learned, wise,
 And well disposed, then wrote a letter all
 Excuse and perfume, colour and device —
 " Ten trusty chiefs of mine, world-veteran,
 And in my confidence, wise men and modest,
 Endowed with Grace and counsel, shrewd observers,
 Learned and directing, lo' I have dispatched thee:
 They will not deviate from thy shrewd counsels.
 Exhibit those four wonders unto them,
 And suffer them to stay with thee awhile
 When I receive the letter of mine ancients,
 Those men expert and erudite, to say :—

C. 1298

¹ Nine in P.

¹ The four things—those whose like none e'er beheld—
Have passed before our eyes/ I will indite
A patent drawn on silk to this effect —
' Kaid, while he liveth, is the king of Hind "'

So those ten Ruman sages left Sikandar,
And sped to Kaid who, when he saw those chiefs,
Had much to ask of them and heard their answers,
Received them graciously and lodged them featly

Next day, when heaven grew pallid and the sun
Drew forth its sword of battle, they adorned,
Although the moon requireth no adornment,
The monarch's daughter, and within the palace
Set up, and decked with ornaments of Chin,
A golden throne whereon she sat sun-faced,
Outshining Venus in the sky The sages,
Those ancient men, fair-spoken and observant,
Drew near. The monarch sent them to the bride,
As bade Sikandar, son of Failakus
The ancients, seeing the king's daughter's face
Illumining the palace, crown, and throne,
Were lost in wonder and astonishment,
Feet failed them at the sight They stood stock-still,
Their tongues all busied with the praise of God,
Unable to withdraw or look elsewhere,
Till one arrived to call them, since they lingered,
Before the king, who said " Why such delay ?
The owner of that face is but a human,
Endowed with goodliness by every star."

A Ruman answered " None, O king ' beholdeth
A picture like her in his halls, so now
We each of us will send the Shah a letter
Describing somewhat of the lady's charms."

They all sat down with paper, ink, and pens.
Each wrote what he had noted, covering all
The paper with his words , then from ¹ Milad

¹ Heading with P

They sent in haste a horseman to Sikandar,
Who marvelled as he read, for every sage C. 1299
Had written some description of the lady.
He wrote to them and said " Ye have done well,
Ye ancients ! ye have looked on Paradise.
Return with those four things and ask naught else
When ye have given the patent unto Kaid
Make ready for the way and load the beasts
No man henceforth shall do him injury,
For I have found him just, and that sufficeth"
The envoy quitted that green country-side,
And to those Rum an ancients' presence hied

§ 10

*How the Ten Sages brought the Daughter, the Cup, the
Leech, and the Sage, from Kaid of Hind to Sikandar*

Now when those sages heard their Shah's reply,
Brought by the toilful cavalier, they went
Forth from their palace and approached king Kaid,
And his famed court. The king of Hindustan,
When he had read the answer to his letter—
The message of the imperious world-aspirant—
Joyed to be free from trouble with Sikandar,
And chose withal a hundred men of Hind
Of honied tongue and eloquent, unlocked
Hoards not by him amassed, and chose therefrom
Crown, throne, and armlet, and of gems withal,
And raiment in the piece, all that was best.
They brought three hundred camel-loads of raiment,
And royal jewelry, ten of dinars,
And five score all of drachms, there was withal
A splendid litter of green aloe-wood,
Inlaid with gold and gems. Kaid placed gold thrones
Upon ten elephants and on another,

More splendidly caparisoned, the Beauty,
 Who was escorted by the sage and leech,
 And showered tears of blood A magnate bare
 The cup, whose wine made all the chiefs bemused.
 When that Moon reached the royal women's house
 There was a crown of black musk on her head,
 She had let fall her tresses o'er her cheeks,
 Like mail o'er cercis-blossom, and appeared
 A slender cypress 'neath the full orb'd moon
 c 1300 To gaze was perilous Her eyes were like
 To twin narcissi grown in Paradise
 Thou wouldst have said " She is compact of charms."
 Sikandar gazed upon her stately form
 Her hair, her face, and all from head to foot,
 And said " Behold the Lustre of the world '"
 While privily invoking benisons
 Upon the All-just, the Maker of the sky,
 Who had created such a form and face
 He gave command, and all the men of lore,
 And understanding, in the host of Rum
 Sat by while he demanded her in marriage,
 The which he solemnised with Christian rites,
 And showered dinars upon her from above
 Out of his hoards till scarcely she could move

*How Sikandar tested the Sage, the Leech, and the Cup sent
 by Kaid of Hind*

The matter of the Cypress-tree¹ achieved,
 And an abode fit for her rank prepared,
 The Shah was free to find out how the sage

¹ The daughter of Kaid

SIKANDAR

Would come off in a strife of wits, and so
He sent a large bowl all abrim with ghee
To that redoubtable philosopher,
And said " Anoint thy limbs herewith, loms, waist,
Breast, back, and neck withal, repose thyself
Till thou hast shaken off thy weariness,
Then fill for me my mind and bram with knowledge.

The sage, when he beheld the ghee, observed —
" This should not prove a mystery to me! "

He placed a thousand needles in the bowl,
And then returned it to the sovereign,
Who, when he saw them, summoned privily
A smith and bade him melt them to an ingot,
And fashion out of it a disk Sikandar
Dispatched this to the sage who furbished it,
And sent back in the place of that dull iron
A mirror free from rust and luminous.
They took this to Sikandar in the night,
Who, saying naught, exposed it to the wet
Till it grew dark and dull, then he returned it,
And thus prolonged the riddle of the iron.
The sage refurbished it to brilliancy,
And sent it back forthwith, but first applied
That which would prove preservative from damp.
Sikandar, seeing, called to him the sage
And, greetings done, assigned to him a seat
Below the throne, then spake about the bowl
Of ghee to further test that famed man's wit,
Who said " Ghee will not penetrate the frame.
Thou said'st ' I pass the sages of the state
In knowledge.' I replied: ' O mighty Shah!
A man that is both wise of heart and pure
Will like a needle pierce both feet and bones,
Or e'en a stone if one is in the way'
I said in fact to thee ' My goodly speech,
My heart and soul and prudent purposes

Make use of words still finer than a hair,
 And thou hast not a heart more dense than iron'
 Thy answer to me was ' In bygone years
 My heart grew rusty in the midst of bloodshed.
 How shall the gloom depart, for why should I
 Continue thus distraught?' I answered thee •—
 ' I will refurbish by celestial wisdom
 Thy heart if it becometh malcontent,
 And when it shmeth with a brilliant lustre
 How shall it rust again " "

His goodly words

Found favour with the Shah whose heart grew keener
 By dint of the procedure of the sage.
 He ordered that the treasurer should bring
 A robe, gold, silver, and a vase of gems
 These they presented to the sage who said —
 " I have a privy jewel of mine own,
 Which is both brighter and immune from foes,
 And not, like wealth, the mate of Ahriman
 I need not hire a watchman for the night,
 And when I go abroad I fear no thieves,
 Since in the night-time knowledge is my warden,
 And wisdom my soul's crown when it is waking,¹
 For wisdom, knowledge, right, are necessities
 Since error knocketh at the door of loss.
 The Shah will see that I have food and raiment
 Enough for public and for private uses,
 Why should I joy in superfluities,
 And have to safeguard all this wealth? Command
 To carry back these havings, and may wisdom
 Direct thy soul."

Sikandar mused at him,

And turned the matter o'er, then said " The Lord
 Of sun and moon will find me not in fault
 In future since I have thy counsel, rede,

¹ Order of couplets as in P

SIKANDAR

And useful talk."

He bade the leech approach
That judged diseases by uroscopy,
And asked " Who is the greatest sufferer
Whose pangs compel our tears ?"

The leech replied

" The glutton, one without restraint at table.
Excessive food conduceth not to health,
And great is he who maketh health his aim
Now will I gather herbs from every side,
And will exhibit unto thee a medicine,
One that will keep thee sound, no need to purge
Thine appetites will greaten too, and when
Thou eatest much it will not injure thee
Heed thou my skilled advice, then blood and brain
Will wax in thee, thou wilt grow strong of frame,
Thy heart will be as blithe as jocund spring
Twill bring back colour to thy face and make
Thy judgment sound in all, thy flowing locks
Shall turn not grey, not soon shalt thou despond."

Sikandar said " I have not seen or heard
Of any king thus favoured, but if thou
Produce this noble potion thou wilt be
My guide to good, and I with mine own soul
Will purchase thee. The malice of thy foes
Shall harm thee not "

Sikandar got prepared
A robe of honour and fair gifts for him,
And made him chief among the learned physicians
That suasive leech departed to the mountains
Without attendants. With his ample knowledge
He could distinguish bane and antidote,
And, having gathered many mountain-herbs,
And put the worthless by, chose such as were
Medicinal, and out of these compounded
The needed potion. With these mountain-simples

He purged the Shah and kept him sound and whole,
 So that for nights he slept not but enjoyed
 Society, affected much the Fair,
 And sought their soft embraces till he ailed,
 Because he tendered not himself, and so
 One day the leech came, by uroscopy
 Detected signs of decadence, and told him —
 "Youths surely age by intercourse with women
 Methinketh that for three nights thou hast slept not
 Speak unto me and give me a reply"

Howbert Sikandar answered "I am well
 None of the ills of life is troubling me "

Yet still the approven leech of Hindustan
 Would not admit the matter to be so,
 But sought that night among his books, and mixed
 A medicine against that decadence.
 That night Sikandar had no lovely mate.
 The leech, when morning came, found him alone,
 And, having ended the uroscopy,
 Flung down the potion, sat in high delight,
 And, taking in his hand a goblet, bade
 The board be spread and wine and minstrels ordered,
 c 1303 The Shah inquired "Why hast thou poured away
 The draught that thou hadst mixed so carefully?"

He said: "Last night the world-lord sought no mate
 But slept alone, and when thou sleepest thus
 Thou needest, sire' no draught"

Sikandar smiled,
 Delighted with the leech, to whom he said •—
 "Ne'er may this world lack Hind, for thou wouldst say
 That all the leeches and astrologers
 Flock thither."

Calling for a purse of gold,
 And for a sable steed whose reins were hung
 With golden balls, he gave that skilled leech both,
 And said "Be honest rede thy tongue's companion."

Then bade he, and they brought the golden goblet
Brimmed with cold water. All folk drank thereof
From morn till bed-time as in revelry,
But all the drinking did not minish it
Then to the sage the Shah said " Kaid hath not
His equal in the world, and from this time
No longer shall we speak of Hindustan,
But Jadustan,¹ as being Raid's abode
The people are no more than other folk
In looks but wonderful in tricks and magic ¹"

Then said the Shah to that philosopher —
" This knowledge must not be concealed from us
How is the water in the cup renewed ?
Is it the stars or Indian jugglery ?"

"Despise not, sire ' the cup," the sage replied,
" For they were many years in making it,
And labours underwent in that behoof
From all the provinces the astrologers,
Where'er there was a master known to tame,
Assisted Kaid, when fashioning the cup,
Both day and night, and passed full many a day
In noting all the aspects of the stars
Take thou the loadstone, that wherewith a man
Attracteth iron, as an illustration.
This cup by innate force attracteth water,
Receiving fresh additions from the sky
It catcheth water to replace the waste
Too quickly for man's eyes to follow it "

The Shah, on hearing that wise man's discourse,
Approved thereof, he thought the words of profit
Thus said he to the elders of Milad —

" I will observe the compact made with Kaid
In honour while I live, for he is one
Before whose presence other folk should stand
Since I have gotten from him four such things

¹ Sorcerer-land.

We will not ask for more."

Now afterward

Sikandar set the goods that he possessed,
 With all the treasures that he had amassed,
 c. 1304 And therewithal a hundred jewelled crowns,
 Upon two hundred carriers and stored
 All, with dinars and jewels in the rough,
 Upon a mountain When they vanished there
 None saw again what was repositied,
 From that time forward no one e'er beheld
 That treasure and the men that hoarded it
 Sikandar only knew where, hid from sight,
 Were laid those treasures on the mountain-height.¹

§ 12

*How Sikandar led a Host against Fur of Hind and
 wrote a Letter to him*

Sikandar swift as wind marched from Milad,
 Abandoning his treasures, reached Kannuj
 And, having led his army near to Fur,
 Bade write to him a harsh and hostile letter
 As from Sikandar, king of kings, the son
 Of Failakus, the illumer of knowledge,
 Of weal and woe, to Fur, the king of Hind,
 High-starred, and chief of Sind.

First praised he God,

Who hath been and will be for ever Then —

" With one whom He hath made victorious
 Realm, crown, and throne will last, whom He despiseth
 Will be still wretched, and the sun on high
 Will shine not on him Surely thou hast heard
 What in this darksome earth all holy God
 Hath given to us of victory and fortune,

¹ Sikandar's method of hiding his treasures bears a suspicious resemblance to that of Captains Kidd and Flint.

SIKANDAR

Grace, diadem, and throne of king of kings,
But not for long. our day will pass, another
Will come and be partaker of these fruits,
And so I strive to leave an honoured name
In this small circle compassed by the Moon
When they deliver this possess thy soul,
Thine unenlightened soul, with what is right,
Exchange thy throne of greatness for thy steed,
Advise not with the priests, thy counsellors
But ask immunity from us, and practise
No craft because the crafty labour long.
If, in thy pride and thine audacity,
Thou wilt not do my bidding thou shalt me
Thy dallying when with my cavaliers
I come to fight with thee."

When thus these words
Had been indited, and the scribe had done,
They sealed the letter with Sikandar's signet,
And for the journey chose a prudent envoy,
Who reached the court of Fur and held discourse
At whiles of strife, at whiles of feast and revel
They summoned to the king that man discreet,
And by the throne appointed him a seat

§ 13

How Fur answered the Letter of Sikandar

Bold Fur, when he had read the letter, raged
Against that famous magnate and forthwith
Wrote fiercely in reply, and set a tree
Within the garth of vengeance. He began —
" Tis ours to fear and reverence holy God
We will not speak so many empty words,
The boaster is a man without resource.
Art thou so shameless as to summon me ?

Is wisdom to thy mind so light a thing ?
 If Failakus on this wise wrote to Fur
 Do thou begin too and provoke a quarrel'
 But 'tis Dara who thus hath heartened thee,
 Because of him revolving heaven was weary,
 And when good fortune goeth from a race
 They heed not the advice of counsellors
 Thy strife with Kaid was but a merry-make,
 Thou thinkest kings thy prey No such address
 Or words proceeded from the ancient Karans.
 Fur am I and the son of Fur. We take
 No thought of Csesars When Dani asked help,
 And I perceived his heart and fortune failing,
 I sent him mighty elephants and gave him
 Words of encouragement. When he was slain
 By that slave's hand the Iranians' fortunes fell,
 And when earth's face was franchised from Dara
 That trenchant bane became thine antidote
 Why lose thy head because bad ministers
 Ill-treated him ? Talk not of war so proudly,
 Because with me it is another story
 Thou shalt behold my mighty elephants
 And host, which bar the wind, confronting thee
 Thy whole aim is supremacy, thy nature
 One rust with Ahnman Do not thou sow
 The seed of harshness in the world, but be
 In fear of misadventure and the ills
 Of fortune In this letter 'twas my part
 To seek thy welfare and instruct thy heart"

§ 14

*How Sikandar arrayed his Host to fight with Fur of Hind
 and made von Steeds and Rulers filled with Naphtha*

C 1306 Forthwith Sikandar, when Fur's answer reached him,
 Chose from the host chiefs fit and enterprising,

Young but mature 111 wisdom, and led forth
 To war against that Indian such an army
 That all the earth seemed sea, and thou hadst said —
 " Sikandar is sole monarch in the world "
 But all those mountains, seas, and rugged paths
 Quenched in the soldiers' hearts the flame of war
 The troops were all aweary of a march
 By loads so grievous, steep, and profitless
 Once at a stage they gathered round the Shah
 And said " O Caesar and the lord of Chin '
 Earth is not able to sustain thy host
 Not Fui of Hind, not the Faghfur himself,
 Or king of Sind, will seek to fight with thee.
 Why must thou bring disaster on thy troops
 By this vile country and by such a road ?
 We see no sound steed left whereon to fight
 With vigour, and if e'er the troops turn back
 From warfare neither horse nor foot will find
 The way When we have triumphed hitherto
 It hath been o'er an army of our foes,
 But now we are opposed by seas and mountains,
 And none of us is weary of his life
 Convert not all our glory into shame,
 None hath made war with water and with rocks "

The words displeased Sikandar, and in wrath
 He frustrated their scheme. " Such words," thus said
 he,

" Befit but mutineers What time I marched
 From Rum Iranward we beheld all garden
 And settlement, our Ruman slam leached not
 A hundred, and our costs were small Iran
 Is yours. What better could ye ask of God '
 Ill came upon Dara from his own slaves,
 No one of you hath seen one weak or wounded '
 I will proceed without you and set foot
 Upon the Dragon's heart Come what come may

Of fight and feast henceforth ye shall behold me
 Abandon not for good my task with Fur.
 What time I quit him I will march to Rum,
 And by my valour overcome the land
 C 1307 With God to and me, and Iranian troops,
 I ask not I a Ruman to befriend me "

On seeing that their words enraged the Shah
 The troops sought to excuse themselves, and said —
 " We all are Caesar's slaves, we only walk
 The earth to do his hest, will strive, and when
 Our horses fail will foot it to the field
 Of strife Though foes make earth sea with our blood,
 And valleys into mountains with our fallen,
 None in the day of fight shall see our backs
 Though sea and mountain-crag contend with us
 We all are slaves, and it is thine to bid
 In thy calamities our lives are thine "

Sikandar, hearing this, prepared fresh strife,
 And chose a hundred thousand of Iran,
 Equipped for war. Behind were Ruman captains,
 All clad in mail, and stalwart warriors
 Thus forty thousand veteran cavaliers
 Marched in support of the Iranians
 Succeeding these came mounted men world-taking,
 And falchion-brandishers, from Misr Then Caesar
 Chose from the men of Rum, Misr, and Barbar
 Twelve thousand cavaliers efficient, martial,
 For battle eager all and all renowned,
 So that with this array supporting him
 The dales and plains seemed heights' He took withal
 Of readers of the stars and priests three score—
 Wise men well known to fame and veteran—
 To choose the days for battle

When Fur heard —

" A host hath come" he picked his battle-field,
 And all his troops assembled on the plain,

The earth was mountain-like with elephants.
The army stretched four miles with troops behind
And elephants in front.

Now spies arrived
From Hind before the world-lord and informed him
At large of how the elephant contendeth
In warfare " It will rout two miles of horse.
No cavalier will dare to face that beast,
Or, if he did so, ever come again,
Because its trunk is higher than the air,
And Saturn is its helper in the sky"

They drew a picture of an elephant,
And showed it to Sikandar who commanded
That the philosophers of Rum should model
One out of wax for him, and then inquired —
" Who can propound a scheme to cope with such ?"

The sages held a session and devised
A plan in all its details Then the Shah
Assembled all the master-smiths of Rum, c. 1308
Of Misr, and Pars, twelve hundred men in sum,
Who made a horse, with saddle and with rider
Complete, of iron, fastening the joints
With bolts and rivets Horse and man were furbished
They charged it with black naphtha, and then ran it
On wheels before the troops At sight thereof
Sikandar was well pleased for, being wise,
He felt the gain thereof, and bade to make
A thousand such and more who e'er beheld
On chargers dappled, chestnut, black, and grey
An iron host[?] The matter took the month,
And then the workmen rested from their labours
Thus led they forth on wheels an iron host
That of all things resembled horsemen most

§15

*How the Host of Sikandar fought with the Host of Fur,
how Fur was slain by Sikandar, and how Sikandar
seated Sawurug upon the Throne of Fur*

Now when Sikandar was approaching Fur,
And from afar one host beheld the other,
On both sides rose the shout and dust of battle,
And eager for the fray the warriors
Advanced They lit the naphtha in the steeds
Fill's troops were in dismay The naphtha blazed
Fur's troops recoiled because those steeds were non
Whereat the elephants, when their own trunks
Were scorched, fled likewise, and then drivers marvelled
Thus all the Indian host and all those huge,
High-crested elephants were put to flight
Sikandar like a raging blast pursued
The foe until the air turned indigo,
And opportunity for fight was over

The monarch with the Rumans in full force
Dismounted 'twixt two mountains and sent scouts
On all the roads to guard his host from foes
Now when the ingot of the sun's crown showed,
And all the world became as 'twere white crystal,
There rose a blare of trumpets and the sound
Of fife, of cornpipe, and of kettledrum.

Both hosts made ready for the fray and raised
Their spear-heads to the clouds Sikandar came

C. 1309 Between the lines, with Ruman sword in hand,
And sent a cavalier to cry from far
To Fur. " Sikandar hath come forth and seeketh
An interview with thee He is prepared
To name his own conditions and hear thine,
And if thy terms are just he is amene "

When Fur, the Indian, heard the herald's words

He rushed forth from the centre of his troops
Sikandar said to him " O noble man?
Our two hosts have been shattered by the fight,
The wild beasts batten on the brains of men,
The horses' hoofs are trampling on their bones
Now both of us are heroes brave and young,
Both paladins of eloquence and brain,
Why then should slaughter be the soldiers' lot,
Or bare survival alter combating?
Let us two arm ourselves and fight it out
Since one of us must needs obtain the realm.
When one of us hath proved victorious,
The troops, the crown, and throne all will be his "

Fur joyfully agreed to fight Sikandar,
For well he knew that he had hon-strength,
And rode a charger dragon-like, whereas
Sikandar was a reed-like cavalier,
Armed lightly and ill-mounted, so he said —
' Agreed we will engage in single combat "

Both took their swords and wheeled between the lines,
But when Sikandar realised the bulk
Of that mad Elephant, who rode a Mountain
And grasped a Dragon, he grew dazed in fight,
Despaired of life at heart and kept his distance,
Till, as he wheeled with Fur upon the field,
A mighty shout arose behind the host,
Which filled Fur's heart with dudgeon and distracted
His heart and eyes and ears Then like a blast
Sikandar issued from the dust and smote
The hero with his sword, clove crest, head, neck,
And from the steed the body sank to earth
The Ruman army raised its head to heaven,
The warriors charged. Now Fur possessed a drum
Of lion-skin whose sound rose o'er the clouds.
That drum's dm and the trumpets' blare arose,
Earth turned to iron, air to ebony,

While by that token those brave troops of Hind
 Advanced to face their foes, but from the plain
 Was proclamation made • " Ye righteous men,
 The chief est of the realm of Hindustan'¹
 The head of Indian Fur is in the dust,
 His elephantine form is cloven asunder

- c 1310 What is the purpose of this present struggle,
 Such strife of scimitars, and such reluctance ?
 What Fur was to you is Sikandar now,
 And ye must look to him in fight and feast"

The warriors of Hindustan assented,
 They went and saw Fur's head all dust and blood,
 His body hacked up by the scimitar
 A bitter cry ascended from his troops,
 Who dropped their weapons and went grieved and
 wailing

To Caesar, dust upon their heads Sikandar
 Restored the weapons of the warnors,
 Addressed them with all courtesy, and said —
 " Though Fur of Hind is dead ye need not yield
 Your hearts to grief because I will entreat you
 More graciously than he did, I will banish
 Both fear and anguish from them, and will give
 In largess all his treasures To my troops
 These are forbidden I will make the folk
 Of Hind all wealthy and administer
 The crown and throne with vigour "

Thence he mounted

With mingled feelings to the throne of Fur

So is it with this Hostel by the way
 It never is content to let thee stay.
 Enjoy, leave naught for other folks to take,
 Why shouldst thou labour for another's sake?

For two months Caesar filled the throne and lavished
 Fur's whole wealth on his troops. There was a man
 Of parts, Sawurg by name, a mighty chief

Of Hindustan; to him Sikandar gave
 The throne of kingship " Never hoard dinars,"
 He said " Give and enjoy whate'er thou gettest,
 Not glorying in the fleeting crown and throne,
 For whiles it is Sikandar and whiles Fur,
 Whiles pain and wrath, whiles feast and banqueting "
 Bestowing as a present on his host
 Drachms and dinars he ordered all that coast

§ 16

How Sikandar went on a Pilgrimage to the House of the Kaaba

Now in a little while, when all the troops
 Were satiate of wealth, a sudden impulse
 Came on Sikandar, and he greatly longed
 To journey to the Kaaba. So at dawn
 The dium-roll rose,¹ the air grew like the eye
 Of chanticleer, while all the mass of spears,
 And silken pennons, formed a canopy
 Of yellow, red, and violet² Sikandar
 Departed with his diadem and treasures
 To look upon the house of Ibrahim,
 Who bare no little toil to build that shrine,
 Which God hath named Baitu'l Haram, and there
 Thou hast His perfect Way who calleth it,
 By reason of its purity, His house,
 And thither summoneth His worshippers,
 Though needing not the world, or any place,
 Or food, enjoyment, rest, or blandishment,
 But still, since place had being, that hath been
 A place of worship—God's memorial
 Sikandar then drew near to Kadisi,
 World-conquering up to Jahram of Pars.

c 1311

¹ Reading with P

Couplet omitted

When news of him reached Nasr, son of Katib,
 Who was the Grace and ornament of Mecca,
 He went to meet the Shah with warlike chiefs,
 And valiant, spear-armed cavaliers. Meanwhile
 From Mecca sped a horseman to Sikandar,
 And said " The famous chief now on his way,
 But not in quest of treasure, crown, and host,
 Is sprung from Isma'il, the prophet, son
 Of Ibrahim, the favoured of the stars "

When Nasr arrived Sikandar welcomed him,
 Assigning him an honourable rank
 Nasi, joying, told Sikandar of his race,
 And of his secret purposes He answered —
 " Good-hearted chieftain, speaker of the truth^f
 Who, next to thee, is greatest, most esteemed,
 And honoured in the tube ?"

Nasi' said " O world-lord[?]

Khuza' is master here When Isma'il
 Had passed away Kahtan, the monarch, came
 With mighty hosts of swordsmen horn the waste,
 And seized the country of Yaman unjustly
 Of our race many guiltless folk were slam,
 So that the day was over for our tribe.
 Now this displeased the Maker of the world,
 High Heaven frowned upon Kahtan but when
 He was reduced to dust Khuza' appeared,
 Unjust, audacious, and tyrannical,
 All from Haram up to Yaman is his,
 His angle is within the sea of Misr.
 He hath transgressed from justice and the way,
 And hath no thought of goodness in his heart,
 The world is in his clutch, the hearts of all
 The race of Isma'il are full "

On hearing,
 Sikandar slew such scions of Khuza'

¹ Mecca and the Kaaba

As he could find and scalped them, sparing none
Of friend or foe, delivering Hajaz,
And therewithal Yaman, from the oppressor
By policy and by his warnor-swordsmen,
And set up of the seed of Isma'il
All that were worthy of supremacy
He visited afoot Baitu'l Haram ,
The seed of Isma'il rejoiced in him
At every step of Caesar's pilgrimage
His treasurer showered dinars The Shah, when he
Returned and reached the throne, bestowed on Nasr
Dinars and treasure while the mendicant,
And they that lived by toil, grew free from want.

§ '7

How Sikandar led his Troops from Judda toward MISI

He led his army thence with all dispatch,
And came to Judda He abode not long
But bade the soldiers build abundant ships
And transports, and departed with his host
For Misr The monarch there was named Kabtun,
His troops exceeded all imagining
On hearing that a conquering king had come
Forth from Haram vamglonously, he went
To meet him with a numerous retinue,
Slaves, purses, crown, and throne. At sight of him
Sikandar joyed, and all his foemen's words
Proved wind The Shah abode a year in Misr
To rest himself and troops.

There was a lady,
The queen of Andalus, and she was wise,
Ambitious, bounteous, with a countless host,
Famed and victorious through her own deserts,
And named Kaidafa From her warriors

She chose a cavalier, a clever draughtsman,
 And said, "Go to Sikandar, naming not
 This country and ourselves, mark everything
 Minutely—his appearance, stature, court,
 Then make a full length picture of him, showing
 His favour, face, and bearing."

When he heard

He mounted, girt him to perform her bidding,
 And went in courier-wise from Andalus
 To Misr to eminent Sikandar Caesar,
 Observed him both upon the throne and saddle,
 Brought paper out and implements of Chin,
 And, having limned him to the life, returned
 With all dispatch Kaidafa, when she saw
 Sikandars likeness, grieved, concealed her feelings
 Sighed, and thus said "By war and policy
 This man will trample on the world, and brief
 c 1313 Will be their lives that come to fight with him!"
 While for his part Sikandar asked Kabtun —
 "Who is Kaidafa's peer on earth?"

"O king"

He made reply, "she is unique None knoweth
 The number of her troops without at least
 Much searching of the muster-roll In treasure
 In matters courteous and of obligation,
 In counsel and benevolence of speech,
 Thou wilt behold not in the world her equal
 She hath a city that is built of stone,
 A leopard could not wrest it from her grasp
 The ground it covereth is four leagues long,
 And four leagues wide withal. If thou inquirest
 About her treasure 'tis past measuring :
 Her doings in the world are no new thing'

*Sikandar's Letter to Kaidaja, Queen of Andalus,
and her Answer*

Sikandar, having heard that mindful man,
Bade come a scribe. They wrote on silk a letter —
" This from Sikandar, who o'erthroweth lions
And taketh cities, unto wise Kardata,
Whose name is eminent in majesty.
First, praise be to the Master of the sun,
Who lighteth up the moon and turning sphere,
The Lord that meteth justice out aright,
And granteth more than any one can ask
We have not sought thy throne by violence,
But have respected thine exalted state
When they deliver unto thee this letter,
And light is thrown upon thy darkened counsels,
Thou wilt dispatch what we impose as tribute,
As knowing that thou canst not strive with us
To act thus will be wise and provident,
It will be strength in thee and true religion,
Oppose and thou wilt see but change of fortune
Draw thy conclusions from Dara and Fur,
Thou needest go no further for instruction "

Whenas the wind had dried the superscription
They sealed the letter with a seal of musk
A cameleer sped to that famous queen,
Who marvelled at the letter as she read
In answer, first, she poured her praises forth
" To that just Judge, the Maker of the earth,
Who raised the turning sky and set therein
The seat of good and ill. He made thee victor
O'er Fur of Hind, Dara, and chiefs of Sind.
Thy head hath been elated by success

Against those famous swordsmen but dost thou
 Rank me with them or think by conquering me
 To wear my crown when I surpass them all
 In Grace and greatness, troops and royal treasure[?]
 Shall I obey a Caesar, fear his threats,
 And quail? A thousand thousand warriors
 Are at my gate, and kings are in command
 Of each contingent. Called I all my lieges
 My land would not afford them room to camp,
 While treasures wait my chiefs when they go forth
 To war across our marches What vain words
 Thou speakest in thus crowing o'er Dara[?]"

 This 'neath her golden signet-ring she past,
 Then sent a cameleer swift as a blast

S 19

*How Sikandar led his Troops to Andalus and took the
 Hold of King Faryan*

Sikandar, having read the queen's reply,
 Let blow the brazen trumpets and set forth.
 When he had been one month upon the road
 He reached the marches of Kardafa's realm,
 Where reigned a monarch who was named Faryan,
 Possessed of treasure, troops, and puissance
 He had a city well supplied with arms ,
 No crane had seen the summit of its walls.
 He gathered troops and garrisoned that hold,
 And cavaliers patrolled the ramparts round.

 Sikandar bade the bishops¹ bring their warns
 And catapults, and in a sennight took
 That lofty hold , his noble army entered,
 As did Sikandar who forbade all bloodshed.
 One of Kardafa's sons, the son-in-law

¹ Cf Vol v p 305 and note

SIKANDAR

Of king Faryan who had much joy in him,
Was there within To him Faryan had given
A favourite daughter, and his crown had been
Exalted by the queen. The son-in-law
Was named Kaidrush and he was all in all
To king Faryan for whom the sky decreed
Death in the fight, his daughter and her spouse
Were taken by the hands of one Shahrir
Sikandar, knowing who the spouse was, thought —
"What cure is there for this contingency?"
Bade his wazir to come and gave to him
Authority and crown and throne This sage
Was named Naitkun, a counsellor, a man
Of influence, to whom Sikandar said —
"They will produce the wedded pair before thee,
And I will title thee Sikandar, son
Of Failakus Assume the Karan throne,
And, when I come before thee girt for service,
Bid some fierce deathsman to behead Kaidrush,
Then I will come to thee and intercede,
Exhibiting the lowliest submission,
Make thou the audience private and, when I
Am waxing urgent, grant me my request."

The minister was troubled, knowing not
What was the hidden purpose of the Shah,
Who added "We must keep this secret. Call me,
Like other envoys, talk much of Kardafa,
Send me right gladly with ten horse, and say .—
Go to, take this, and bring an answer quickly'
Dispatch Kaidrush with me and hide all from him
Naitkun said "I will do so and will practise
Deception at thy bidding."

When the sun
Had drawn its sword at dawn, and gloomy night
Had vanished in dismay, Naitkun assumed
The throne but ill at ease, ashamed, and sorry,

Sikandar stood before the presence girded.
 They shut the door and oped the path of guile.
 Now when Shahrgir brought in Kaidafa's son,
 A captive weeping with his wife beside him,
 And clinging to his hand in all her charms,
 Naitkun spake hastily "What man is this
 Whose pains enforce such tears?"

"Be calm," replied

The youth, "because I am Kaidafa's son,
 Kaidrush Save for this daughter of Faryan's
 I have no spouse concealed behind my curtains.
 I went to bring her home to cherish her
 As mine own life, but now the lion-taker
 Hath ta'en me prisoner The stars have smitten
 My soul, and shafts my body."

When Naitkun

Heard what the young man said he was distressed,
 His heart grew full, howbeit he showed anger,
 And then addressed the deathsman "Earth must hide
 them.

Behead them with thine Indian scimitar—
 The husband and his consort in their bonds"

Then came Sikandar, kissed the ground, and said —
 "O Shah of Cesar's race' if thou wilt spare
 The blood of this young couple for my sake
 My head will be exalted o'er the people
 Why in thy wrath behead the innocent,
 For God will not approve thee?"

c 1316

Shrewd Naitkun

Replied "Thou hast preserved the blood of both "
 Then added quickly "Thou hast saved thy head,
 Kaidrush I when thou hadst lost it' Now will I
 Send him with thee to tell thy mother all.
 If she shall send me tribute, it is well,
 And none shall burst his skin on that account.
 Tend well my worthy minister, for he

Will proffer unto her a tight or feast
 With me Repay him for his kindness,
 For good men's hearts are moved by gratitude,
 And, when he hath the answer of the queen,
 Dismiss him kindly on his homeward way."

Kaidrush replied " My heart and eyes and ears
 Are his Oh ' how shall I express myself?
 I tender him as dearly as my life
 Because I owe him that and world and wife."

§ 20

*How Sikandar went as an Ambassador to Karddfa and
 was recognised by her*

Sikandar chose ten Rumans, men of name,
 All confidants who would respect his secret,
 And said to them " While we are on our way
 Call me Naitkiin "

Kaidrush led on , Sikandar,
 Put trust in him. The chieftains spurred like fire,
 And reached a mountain where the rocks were crystal
 Upon it there were fruit-trees of all sorts,
 And on the top they noticed grass in plenty
 They left this mountain and kept speeding on
 Toward the country where Kaidafa dwelt,
 Who eagerly heard tidings of Kaidrush,
 And went to meet him with a mighty host,
 All men of name and favoured by the stars
 He, when he saw his mother, lighted down,
 And did obeisance, but she bade him mount.
 They rode, hand clasped in hand Kaidrush described
 All that he had gone through and paled in telling
 His troubles in the city of Faryan,
 Where he had lost crown, army, throne, and treasure
 The man that cometh with me," he proceeded,

" Preserved me and my consort from Sikandar,
 Who else had given orders to behead me,
 And burn my corpse in fire Do what he wisheth
 With right, good will and thwart not his request "

c 1317 Now when Kardafa heard her son's account
 Her heart was upset by that affliction
 She summoned from the palace to her presence
 The envoy, placed him in the nobles' seat,
 Gave him much greeting and a kindly welcome,
 Assigned to him a splendid residence,
 And sent all kinds of provand, robes, and carpets
 He tarried there that night and at the dawn
 Went to the court to offer his respects
 The attendants raised the curtain and allowed him
 To enter through the portal on his steed
 When he beheld Kardafa on her throne
 Of ivory, crowned with a crown of gems
 And turquoise, and arrayed in lobes of Chin
 Inwrought with gold, the attendance of her servants,
 Her face bright as the sun, her throne supported
 By crystal feet, and o'er her robe a net
 Of onyx of Yaman on golden thread,
 Impleached with many a *gem*, and slaves, with torques
 And earrings, standing in that rosary¹
 All arabesqued with gold, he stood astound,
 Oft times invoking to himself God's name
 To Caesar, gazing on that court, Iran
 And Rum seemed even as nothing, and he kissed
 The ground like other courtiers in her presence.
 Kaidafa gazed on him, received him well,
 Much questioned him, and made him sit. Now when
 Bright Sol set, and the audience-time for strangers
 Had passed, she gave command to deck the palace
 And call attendants, and for harp and wine
 They ranged in one hall tables made of teak

¹ *Ie* Court.

With gold stars and designs in ivory,
 Meats were provided past all reckoning,
 Wine was brought forth and, when the eating ceased,
 And gold and silver cups were handed round,
 The company drank first Kaidafa's health
 That noble queen gazed often at Sikandar
 Amid the revel till at length she bade
 The keeper of her treasures "Bring to me
 The lustrous silk with that delightful portrait,
 Just as it is, and handle it with care."

He brought it to the queen, who scanned it much
 And, having scrutinised Sikandar's face,
 Found the presentment just, so that she knew —
 "'Tis Gesar, chief of yon famed army' He
 Hath made himself his own ambassador,
 And boldly leached this court Imperious sir "
 She said to him, "come give Sikandar's message "

He thus replied "The monarch of the world c 138
 Thus charged me in the presence of his nobles
 To say to pure Kardafa 'Here below
 Ensue naught but the right See that thou shun not
 My bidding but observe shiewd fealty,
 For if in aught thou art perverse in heart
 I will lead forth a host heart-shattering,
 Rob all thine army of the breath of life,
 And give up all thy kingdom to the flames
 I had some intimation of thy virtues,
 And therefore was not instant to assail thee,
 For thou possessest modesty and wisdom
 Thy shrewd rede is the world's security
 Thou knowest that if thou refusest tribute
 Thou canst withstand me not, but thou shalt have
 Naught that is not both fair and just if thou
 Wilt turn from falsehood and from fraud.' "

Kardafa

Was wroth thereat but saw no salve but silence,

And said to him " Return to thine abode,
 And for the present rest there with thy friends.
 To-morrow when thou comest we will answer,
 And take fair order for thy homeward way."

Thereat Sikandar went back to his lodging,
 And thought all night how to secure himself.
 Now when the bright Lamp rose above the mountains,
 And plain and upland glittered like brocade,
 He went to court again with smiling lips,
 But heart o'ercast with care. The chamberlain
 Saw, greeted him, and took him to the queen.
 He saw a throng of strangers and a hall
 Where was a crystal throne with patterns traced
 In emeralds and cornelians, every boss
 A royal gem. The dars was compact
 Of sandal and lign-aloe, and the pillars
 Of onyx and turquoise. The edifice,
 The queen's Grace, throne, and puissance much amazed
 him

He cried " This is indeed an audience-chamber'
 God's worshippers behold not such another."

He paced toward her, and they set a seat
 For him below the throne. Kardafa said —
 Why marvel at our palace thus, Naitkun ?
 Is Rum indeed so other that thou needs
 Must wonder at our land ?"

He said to her —
 " O queen misprize not thme own dwelling-place.
 Thy head is higher than the heads of kings
 Because thme ocean is a mine of gems "

Kaidafa smiled: his speech and conduct charmed
 her

She then dismissed her court and, having seated
 The envoy graciously before her, said —

C1319 " O son of Farlakus' thou art a master
 In fight and festival, in good and ill.

Thou hast approached me boldly to ask tribute,
Although I know not what incited thee."

On hearing this Sikandar's favour changed ,
His soul was full of pain, his cheeks were livid
He said " O most wise queen ' such words as these
Become thee not. I thank the All-provider
That none of all our famous chiefs are here
To tell this to the master of the world,
And take my life anon. Naitkun am I,
O mistress of the world ' so call me not
The son of Failakus "

Kaidafa said —

" Dispute it not because thou art Sikandar,
And, when thou seest the portrait of thyself,
Cease to dissemble and display no wrath "

She brought and showed to him the silk all limned
With that fair portrait and so vividly
That, given motion, it had been himself
He bit his lips, day grew for him like midnight
He said ' Let no one be without a dagger
Concealed about him ' "

' If thou hadst one here
Suspended from thy shoulder," she replied,
" No strength or trenchant scimitar would serve,
There is no room for fight or road for flight "

Sikandar said " The great are eager ever
To win the world by valour, and must shun not
The path of danger, for the faint of heart
Excel not Had I but my weapons now
The whole house would become a sea of blood,
And I, confronted by mine enemy,
Would rend my liver's seat or slaughter thee '"

§ 21

How Kaidaja counselled Sikandar

Kaidafa, smiling at Sikandar's bearing
 His gallantry, and angry words, replied —
 " O monarch lion-like ' become not headstrong
 In valour It was not through Grace of thme
 That Fur of Hind, Dara son of Darab,
 And all those warriors of Sind were slain,
 But 'twas because those world-lords' day was over,
 And thy star in the ascendant Thme own valoui
 Hath made thee so presumptuous as to deem
 Thyself the lord of time and earth, but know
 That all our blessings are derived from God
 So while thou livest give the thanks to Him.
 c 1320 Thou said'st ' The wisdom of the world is mine '
 I do not look upon thy words as true
 What profit hath thy wisdom been to thee
 Since thou hast come within the Dragon's breath,
 And, while still youthful, hemmest thme own shroud
 By going as thme own ambassador ?
 But bloodshed or a reckless strife with kings
 Is not my wont The ruler who is strong,
 And justly generous, is wise withal,
 For, know, the shedder of king's blood will see
 But fire at last. Be easy, go rejoicing,
 And in departing make a new departure,
 For henceforth thou wilt do no embassies
 Since all the earth will recognise Sikandar
 I know not any of the great whose portrait,
 Limned thus on silk, is not in my possession,
 And in a careful keeper's hands, and I
 Have used the judgment of astrologers
 Thereon to learn if I should trust or dread,
 For when a prudent king hath been vouchsafed
 The age proclaimeth it to man and woman.

SIKANDAR

Thee will I call Naitkun while thou art here,
And by that token seat thee at a distance
That none may know thy secret, hear thy name,
Or fame. I will dismiss thee with all kindness
But thou must be a master of discretion,
And, further, promise never more to be
A foe or ill-disposed toward my sons,
My kingdom or my kindred or allies,
And treat me as thy peer."

Sikandar heard
And joyed, relieved from fear and slaughter, swore
By that just Judge, who ruleth all, the Faith
Of Christ, and by the sword of war, and said —
" So long as thy dominions, thine own sons,
And potentates allied to thee, endure
I will do naught but what is good and right,
I will not think of fraud or knavery."

When he had sworn Kaidafa said to him —
" I must not fail to warn thee of one thing
Know this then that Tainush my son misprizeth
My knowledge and my counsel He is wayward,
Fur's son-in-law, and must not hear from near
Or far that thou art one skin with Sikandar,
Or friend withal, for he would farn avenge
Fur and in battle dash down heaven to earth
Return now to thy house in peace and joy,
And utter naught about the world's concerns "

Sikandar went, his heart was big within him,
For wise men think of death with seriousness
Kardafa brought no frown upon his face,
And never disregarded he her counsel
He stayed that night and early in the morn
Went from his lodging and approached the queen,
Who sat within the hall of audience,
Surrounded by a crowd of warriors¹

¹ " toute paree et entourfe de bouquets de fleurs " (Mohl)

The ceiling was of ivory and gold,
 And in the gold were divers jewels set
 In front of all the musky-scented throng
 Before the queen there stood two proper sons,
 One was Tamush, the cavalier, the other
 Kaidrush who used to hearken to her words
 The younger son spake to his mother thus —
 " O queen well favoured of the stars and just
 Take order that Naitkun glad, well content,
 And with a guide, may leave thee, so that none
 May harm or treat him as a foe, forwhy
 He saved my life, and as bright life I hold him."

She said ' Mine actions shall increase his great
 ness "

Then to Sikandar spake that noble queen —
 " Now make the secret patent to us What
 Hast thou to say ? What is Sikandar's purpose ?
 What knowest thou about the Shah, and whom
 Hath he for minister ?"

Sikandar answered —
 " Great lady ¹ I have tarried long The Shah
 Said. 'Go, ask tribute from her land If thou
 Delayest I will lead the army thither,
 And leave her not the kingdom, crown, and throne
 Grace, queenship, might, or fortune for her own

§ 22

*How Tamush, the Son of Kaiddja, was wroth with Silandar,
 and how Sikandar took Precaution against him*

Tainush, when he had heard Sikandar's words,
 Raged like a blast, and said : " Thou worthless fool^f
 No man could reckon thee a man at all[?]

Know'st not before whose presence thou art seated⁷
 Assume the bond slave's pose ¹ Thy head is full
 Of wrath and arrogance Inform me who
 Thy monarch is. Save for our sovereign's Grace
 I would pluck off' thy head as I would pluck
 An orange from its bough This very night,
 Because I grieve for Fur, will I display
 Thy trunkless head in presence of the host!^{1"}

His mother called to him, for his hot head
 Was growing more distraught, and said " The words
 Are not his own Address the envoy's sender,
 Whose utterance they are."

She bade " Conduct c 132

Tamush outside the court. Thou scowling one !"
 She added, " show not thy vile temper here
 He saved Kaidrush, thy brother, from the Shah,
 And reached our court, and yet thou railest thus
 Against him and art wroth and sore displeased ^{1"}

The Son went forth fulfilled with rage and dudgeon
 With bloodshot eyes In private to Sikandar
 She said " Tamush is foolish and the tool
 Of divs. In private he must not devise
 Some loss or crime Thou seekest after knowledge,
 And thou art wise. Consider what to do "

Sikandar said " So be it then Thy course
 Is to recall Tamush "

Thereat the queen
 Sent for her son and set him 'neath the throne.
 Sikandar said " Imperious prince ' if thou
 Wouldst have thy wish command thyself, and 1
 Will not oppose thee. I accept each word
 Of thine. Sikandar, who is Shah and hath
 The throne and crown, hath plunged me into gloom.

¹ Literally " Sit not before the queen. Show not thy hands," the proper attitude for slaves being to stand with folded arms, with the hands under the arm-pits In this position they cannot do mischief

He sent me to the queen with this command —
 ' Ask tribute from that famous sovereign,'
 So that whatever ill grow manifest
 From foes toward him may come on me. Hear, prince
 Rage not nor storm—another's due—at me,
 For much have I been wronged by him myself,
 And I have schemed to slay him To thy hands
 Will I deliver him, and then the world
 Will be well quit, and I fare free, of him
 Thou know'st not yet my plan and what good thoughts
 I harboui I will go to him to-day
 With my reply and will advise him finely '
 If I shall grasp his hand and from his camp
 Conduct him to thee, and in such a fashion
 That he shall have no troops with him, and thou
 Shalt look not on his scimitar, his throne,
 And crown, then what wilt thou bestow upon me
 Of all the realm, how recognise my service?"

Tamush thereat made answer "I have heard
 Thy words, and we must act thereon forthwith,
 For if thou shalt achieve this, and wilt do
 Thine utmost honestly, I will bestow
 His treasures and his purses, steeds, and men -
 Devoted lieges—and my thanks upon thee,
 Thou shalt possess the world, know good become
 My loyal minister, and in this land

C 133 My treasurer "

Sikandar lose and shook
 Hands on the bargain, and Tainush inquired —
 " How wilt thou compass this and by what spell
 Effect this sorcery ?"

Sikandar said .—

" Thou must go with me, when I quit the queen,
 And take a thousand horsemen of thy host,
 All famed in fight, Upon my journey hither
 I marked a wood where I will put in ambush

Thee and thy soldiery, and go myself
To him, will look on that malignant soul
And say 'The queen hath sent so much that thou
Ne'er wilt want more Her elder son, Tainush
By name, hath brought the Shah her salutations
And messages, but saith "I dare not face him
Amidst his host " Now if my lord would deign
Escorted only by his priests and sages,
To meet Tainush then in that interview
He could receive the goods and hoarded treasures
Of all sorts, for Tainush would come, on seeing thee
Without thy host, or else be free to go'
Sikandar, when he heareth my smooth words,
Will never guess my colour and design
But seek the shade beneath those trees, requiring
From thee those crowns and thrones Do thou sur-
round him

With thy fierce troops and make the future certain,
This will achieve my vengeance and thy wishes,
And thy fame soar by favour of the stars.
When thou hast taken him I am all thine,
And, when thou biddest, I will be thy watchman
Then mine affairs will prosper and my market
Grow hot and brisk, for thou shalt carry off
Much wealth and slaves and steeds caparisoned."

Tainush rejoiced on hearing him, appeared
A noble cypress-tree, and answered thus —
' My hope is that his day may turn to night,
And that he may be taken unawares
Within my toils, for all the bloodshed made
By him within the world—that of Dara,
Son of Darab, the warriors of Smd,
And that great man of Hind, the valiant Fur "

Now when Kaidafa heard Sikandar's words,
And marked and understood his stratagem,
She smiled at his device behind her lips,

And hid those corals underneath her veil
 Sikandar left her presence in a mood
 O'ershadowed by his great solicitude

§ 23

*How Sikandar made a Compact with Kardafa and
 returned to his Troops*

- C. 1324 That livelong night Sikandar laid his plans
 And, when the sun displayed its fringe of Chin,
 And set its golden banner o'er the heights,
 While sank night's silken robe of violet,
 He visited the queen and asked for audience
 From her attendants. As their custom was
 They caused him to alight, and then that seeker
 Of world-dominion paced before the queen
 They cleared the hall and hastened to present
 The envoy When he saw Kaidafa throned
 He said " May Jupiter espouse thy counsels !
 By Christianity, the law of right,
 By God who witnesseth to what I say,
 By the religion of the mighty Cross,
 By a brave monarch's life and head, priest's girdle
 And Holy Ghost,¹I promise that henceforth
 The soil of Andalus shall not behold me,
 Nor will I send a host to battle thither.
 I will employ no colourable ruse,
 I will entreat not ill thy stainless son
 By act or hest of mine, but bind true faith
 To thee upon my soul and no wise seek
 Thine injury. Thy friend shall be my brother
 Thy throne as sacred to me as the Cross."
 Kaidafa marked his oath, his singleness
 Of heart, and honest pledge. She had the palace

¹ Or the angel Gabriel may be intended

SIKANDAR

Filled with gold seats, and set forth gauds of Chin,
Called for her nobles and the well-starred chiefs,
Set them, each one, upon a seat of gold
And, having sent for both her well-loved sons
And for her kith and kin, harangued them thus —

* It is not well that we be over-troubled
Withm this Wayside Inn, and changeful fortune
Must make not battle and revenge my lot.
Sikandar still will be insatiate
Of treasure though he over-top the sky,
And tor that reason seeketh war with us
Though all earth's treasures are not worth the toil.
I purpose that we do not tight with him,
I will not bring distress upon the realm
But we will make a politic response,
At once exalting and exhorting him
If alter mine advice he seeketh war,
ignoring both my Glory and my throne,
I with the host will face him so that sun
And moon shall pity him. Still what we try
Will do no harm, and peace may be preserved
What say ye? What respond? Advise me well"

The chiefs all raised their heads and answered her
" O queen of counsel and of justice' none
Can call to mind a chief like thee, and thou
Speak'st naught but good Oh' fan befall the land
That hath a chief like thee If this great Shah
Become thy friend, what more can good men wish
The Shah will not attack thee for thy wealth,
To vex thee would cost more than all thy treasures
When a Sikandar cometh out of Rum,
Converting earth to ocean with his sword,
And then departeth from thy gates with gifts,
The fact outvalued! the whole world's havings
We cannot favour any course but peace,
For he is foolish that desireth war."

When she had heard the words of those wise men,
Of those approved and holy-hearted priests,
She oped her treasures and took out the crown
Worn by her sire, with bracelet and gold torque
(It was a crown the value of whose gems
None in the city or the country knew),
And to the messenger she said " This crown
Is priceless, those that otheis have are naught
And, seeing that Sikandar hath deserved
This crown of chiefs, I have adopted him
As son adult "

Now she possessed a throne
That was compact of seventy parts and more
Well gifted he that could dismember it!¹
The pattern was of intricate design,
And every juncture fitted curiously
The feet had terminals of dragons' heads.
None knew its jewels' worth, but it comprised
Four hundred royal gems, an equal sum
Of brilliant rubies, two whereof, in hue
Pomegranate-grain, weighed one miskal apiece,
And emeralds four hundred, several stones,
Bright as a rainbow, and uncut She added
Of raiment more than forty camel-loads,
The lady's heart was bounteous as the sea.
There were five hundred tusks of elephants,
What tusks they were' Then total length reached
miles'

There were four hundred leopard-skins and more,
The sort brought from Barbar of dappled deer-skins
A thousand plain or dyed, all fair to see,
Besides a hundred hounds keen in the chase,
Which sped like arrows over hill and plain.
Kardafa's servants then led forth before her
Two hundred buffaloes, there were withal
Four hundred seats upholstered in brocade

And silken stuffs, the frames of ebony,
 And of fresh aloe-wood four hundred more c. 1326
 With sunbeams saturate and golden hue
 She ordered too a thousand Indian swords
 With daggers and with coats of battle-mail,
 While from the plain they brought a hundred steeds,
 High-bred and harnessed, with the other wealth,
 Besides twelve hundred casques and morions.
 She bade her treasurer " Now, tarry not,
 Account for all these to Naitkun, and say —
 ' Be ready to depart at dawn to-morrow''

Whenas the morning showed its flag on high,
 When heaven's violet lace grew camphor-like,
 When earth was fresh and height like sandarac,
 A sound of drums rose horn the palace-gate
 Sikandar, having leave to go, bestrode
 His steed and, when the brave Tamush had bidden
 The troops to mount, proceeded horn his palace
 To court, and to Kardata said " Farewell,
 And, while the world shall last may it and thou
 Be woof and warp "

They journeyed stage by stage
 Until they drew anear the scene of action—
 The camp of that famed Shah, the fortune-favouied
 Sikandar, who left baggage in the forest,
 Where there were streams and many trees, and told
 Tamush " Here rest and, rested, take the cup
 In hand I will depart, make good my words,
 And do all for the best "

Sikandar reached
 The encampment. All the host came forth and showed
 Their gladness by their shouts, while making ready
 The Kaian crown, because they had despaired
 Of their aspiring lord Who ever thought
 To see his face again' With tongues all praise
 The soldiers bent their faces to the ground

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

Sikandar then selected from the host
A thousand of the Ruman men of name,
Who, warriors as they were intent on strife,
With ox-head maces and in coats of mail,
Set forward and begirt the wood about—
A line of men and weapons. Then he cried —
" Rash man art thou resolved on fight or flight?"¹
Repenting of his plots and cleverness
Tanush quaked and exclaimed " High-minded Shah'
Thou shouldst choose rather to be praised than blamed.
This was not thine agreement with my mother
Didst thou not say ' I will not quit the right'[?]
Display, as in the instance of Kaidriish
True greatness and endeavour righteousness "

Sikandar said " O prince' why hast thou grown
So feeble in this weighty enterprise
c 1327 But have no fears for thou art safe with me
I will not harm one, of thy kin or shun
Kaidafa's bidding I 'Tis ill for kings
To break their faith."

Tainush forthwith alighted,
And kissed the ground, displaying deep abasement
The world-lord grasped his hand and reaffirmed
The former covenant, and said withal —
" Be of good cheer and harbour no suspicions
I feel no hate toward thee When thy mother
Sat on her throne of gold, and when I clasped
Thy hand in mine, I told thee I will lay
The king of earth's hand thus within thine own'
This very day my promise is performed,
For hasty speeches come not well from Shahs.
I am the same Sikandar that held forth
So pleasantly to thee Kaidafa knew
That very day that thou didst grasp his hand."

Then Cæsar bade the attendants " Set a throne

¹ Reading with P

SIKANDAR

Beneath a blossom-scattering tree "

He bade

To spread the board and call for wine and harpers.

They spent a while in pleasure and delights.

Now when the ruddy wine had made them glad

The Shah gave orders for a royal gift

Of stuffs of Rum, of Chin, and Persian make,

And gave it to Tanush with gold and silver

For his companions, crowns and belts withal

To those that merited, and thus enjoined him —

' Stay not, this wood is distant, not thy home

Say to Karidafa ' O thou prudent lady,

Thou ruler shrewd of heart and well advised'

While life endureth I will constant be,

And have possessed my soul with love for thee'''

§ 24

*How Sikandar went to the Country of the Brahmans, inquired
into then Mysteries, and received an Answer*

He marched thence to the country of the Brahmans

To make inquiry of their ancient rites

From those abstemious men. The Brahmans heard

News of the Shah that he was marching thither,

And from the heights came down those devotees,

Assembling at the tidings Then the sages

Wrote to Sikandar, chief of priests. The letter

Began with heart-felt blessings from the Lord

Of all upon the monarch of the world —

" May the Shah ever conquer, wax, and have

c 1328

Both mastery, and knowledge," then proceeded —

" God hath bestowed on thee the mighty world,

Brave king What wouldst thou in our meagre land,

The dwelling of God's worshippers ? If thou

Dost come for wealth, good sooth ' thy wits are failing

It is our part to suffer and be wise,
 Yea, knowledge maketh musical our souls
 Thou canst not rob us of long-suffering,
 While knowledge harmeth none. Thou wilt but see
 A naked flock dispersed by wind and snow,
 And fain eat grass-seed if thou tarriest!¹

The envoy, girt with roots of grass, approached
 The Shah who, having seen him and the letter,
 Resolved to act aught and do no hurt
 He halted all his host and then proceeded
 Himself with the philosophers of Rum.
 Informed thereof the devotees all came
 To meet him on his way with paltry gifts,
 Because they had no treasure, tilth, or crops,
 And blessed that noble monarch of the earth.
 Sikandar marked the Brahmans' looks and talk,
 How they went bare of body, foot, and head,
 Their bodies barren while their souls bare knowledge,
 With grass for raiment and its seeds for food,
 At ease from feast and battle-day, and how
 They ate, reposed, and slept on plain and mountain,
 And gathered everywhere in naked troops,
 Their provand all of tree-fruits and the seeds
 Of grasses on the mountain-tops, their girdles
 The pelts of game, their raiment ready-made¹
 He asked them of their ways of sleep and provand,
 Rest and good days and fight "What share have ye
 Of this world's good? Hath Heaven no antidote
 For bane save this alone?"²

A sage replied —
 "O conqueror of the world! none of us talketh
 Of war and strife, we need not clothes, stuffs, foods
 Man being born in mother-nakedness
 Should not be dainty in his garniture,
 And hence returneth naked to the dust,

¹ In the sense explained below

Where all is fear, anxiety, and dread.
 Earth coucheth and heaven clotheth us, our eyes,
 Expectant of the ending, watch the way
 How much the ambitious striveth after things
 Which, strife and all, are hardly worth a doit,
 For when he goeth from this Wayside Inn
 Behind are left his gold and crown and treasure '
 But, know, his virtues bear him company
 While both his head and state descend to dust"

C 1329

Sikandar asked of them • " Which number most—
 The hidden or the manifest, to wit
 The living or the dead whose needs are over ?"

The sage leplied " Know, king' the hidden far
 Exceed the manifest, for thou mayst reckon
 Upon a hundred thousand dead and more
 For each alive, and blest is one not outcast
 In Hell. The living too must die. One goeth,
 And leaveth his position to another "

The Shah inquired " Is there most land or water
 Illumined by the sun ?"

The Brahman answered —
 " The water is the keeper of the land."

He asked " Who are the awakened, who the sinners
 On earth ? They make a stir, and many live
 Not knowing wherefore they are here at all'"

The Brahman answered " Know thou pure in heart
 And justice-seeking chief¹ the awakened man
 Is he whom little of this world sufficeth,
 The guiltiest, one whose wisdom hath been docked
 By hate and greed. If thou wouldst know such well
 Look first upon thyself, for all earth's face
 Is thine, and one would say that restless heaven
 Is kin to thee, yet still thou schem'st for more,
 And to withhold thy wits from grimy dust,
 For greed is thy soul's hell, and it may be
 That these our words may cause thee to repent."

The Shah inquired ' What is our ruling passion,
And our companion everywhere for evil ?"

The Brahman answered ' Greed—the sum of hate,
And soul of sin "

" What is its nature then,"

The Shah asked, " seeing there is cause to weep
O'er this its passion for aggrandisement ?"

The Brahman made this answer " Greed and Need
Are two divs and long-drawn calamities
One hath its lips dried up with poverty,
The other sleepeth not to compass more,
While both are hunted by the evil day
How blest is he whose soul is fed on wisdom!"

Now, when Sikandar heard, his face resembled
The bloom of fenugreek, his cheeks were pale,
Tears filled his eyes, his smiling countenance
Was drawn with frowns The imperious Shah in-
quired —

1330 " What would ye have of us ? I will not grudge you
My treasures, nor regret what they have cost me"

One said " Exalted Shah ! deliver us
From eld and death."

' Death is inexorable,"

The Shah made answer. " How canst thou escape
That Dragon's piercing clutch ? For wert thou non
Thou wouldst not find release, while youth, if here
It tarneth, is not exempt from eld "

The Brahman said to him " O mighty Shah,
The world-lord, sage, and one whose word is law '
Thou knowest death to be remediless,
And that there is no worse calamity
Than eld. Why seek to win the world by toil,
Why in thy madness sniff the bloom of bale ?
Thou wilt but leave the product of thy travail
Behind thee and bestow what thou hast toiled for,
And treasures, on the foe To undertake

To toil for others is both ignorance
And folly. White hair is Death's messenger,
Why hope so much to live ?"

The shrewd Shah said —

" If any of God's servants could escape
From His decree, I had escaped withal
By observation of the turning sky,
But neither man of lore nor warrior
Evadeth that decree, strive how he may.
Moreover they that perished in my wars,
Or had their days cut short by destiny,
Deserved their fate by bloodshed and ill deeds,
For no oppressor 'scapeth. They have suffered
God's chastisement for quitting wisdom's way
Tis not in man to limit heaven's powers,
Or shun the process of the passing hours ' "

§ 25

How Sikandar came to the Western Sea and saw Wonder

Sikandar proffered many a gift, but none
Accepted them, the Brahmans had small greed.
He did no hurt, set off upon his march,
By that same token fared toward the West,
And from the Brahmans' country reached a spot
Whence he beheld a deep and boundless sea.
The men there had their faces veiled like women,
And went arrayed, all colour and perfume.
They spake not Persian, whether old or modern,
Or Arabic, or Turkman, or Chinese,
They lived on fish alone, there was no means
Of bringing aught by road. Sikandar stood
Astound at them and in the Ruman tongue
Invoked God's name Then from the water rose
A rock as bright and yellow as the sun

The Shah desired a swift ship whence to view
The thing aright. Of his philosophers
One said " 'Tis not for thee to cross the Deep,
Wait till some man of lore survey the rock."

Then thirty men, some Persian and some Ruman,
Embarked. That bit of rock turned out to be
A yellow fish which, as they came anigh,
Diew down the vessel swiftly, dived, and vanished^f
Sikandar's soldiers were aghast, and all
Invoked God's name. A priest said to the Shah —
"A goodly thing is knowledge, for the man
That hath it is in this world chief of folk
Now if the Shah had gone and perished thus
Blood would have filled the souls of this great host"

Departing thence he led the army on
To where a novel water came in view
Around it there were reeds as large as trees •
Thou wouldst have said • "They are the mighty stems
Of planes" They were above ten cubits thick,
And measured forty cubits in their height.
The houses were of reeds and built thereon.
They might not tarry in that reed-bed, no one
Drank of its water for 'twas salt Sikandar
Fared thence until a deepsome lake appeared,
The world was jocund, water honey-like,
The soil exhaled the scent of musk. They ate,
And set themselves to sleep, when from the water
Came writhing snakes in swarms while from the wood
Flame-coloured scorpions issued, and the world
Grew black and straitened to those slumberers.
On every side there perished multitudes,
Men great in lore and war. On one side came
Herds of wild boars with long tusks diamond-bright,
And on the other lions that out-bulked
An ox, none could withstand them, so the host,
Withdrawing from the mere and flinging fire

Upon that reed-bed, set themselves to slay
Hogs in such numbers as to block the way.

§ 26

*How Sikandar reached the Land of Habash, fought, and
was victorious*

Departing thence the sun-like Shah in haste c 1332
Came to the country of Habash and saw
A land as 'twere a raven's plume with men
Black-faced with eyes like lamps A lusty crowd
Of able-bodied folk, large-limbed and naked,
Raised, when they saw afar the army's dust,
Their war-cry to the clouds A thousand thousand
Assembled All turned black before the Shah
They came on him and slaughtered many troops,
Transfixing them with bones instead of spears
He bade his soldiers arm. Those lion-men
Discomfited the blacks, who charged unclad,
And slew above a thousand while the rest
Turned from the fray. Earth's face seemed like the sea
Of Chin with bloodshed. When the dales and deserts
Were smirched with gore, and slain piled everywhere,
The soldiers scattered fuel on the heaps,
And then Sikandar bade to kindle them
When it was dark the wolves began to howl
Sikandar donned his helmet and cuirass.
A pack approached, all big as buffaloes.
Their leader, larger than an elephant,
Had on its head a dusky horn It slew
Full many a chief and, oft attacked, ne'er showed
Its back. With arrows they made shift to kill
At last that elephant-taking iron Hill.

§27

*How Sikandar reached the Land of the Narmpai, how he fought
and was vertouss, how he slew a Dragon, ascended a
Mountain, and has foreuarned of his own Death*

Thence marched he quickly and invoking oft
The just World-lord On reaching the Narmpai
He saw a countless folk who had no steeds,
C 133 Or breastplate, sword, or mace, and every one
Was lion-like in form Now when the host
Neared the Narmpai the world grew black to them ,
They roared like rattling thunder, came like divs
Upon Sikandar, running on their knees,
With martial bodies and contentious hearts,
And showered stones fiercely as the autumn-blasts
Beat on the trees. The Ruman host advanced
With sword and arrow, and thou wouldst have said —
" Bright day is dimmed "

When few Narmpar were left
Sikandar rested, then led on the host,
And reached what seemed a boundless city whence
All, as then wont was went to meet him gladly,
Asked naught but brought all kinds of tapestries,
Of raiment and of provand while Sikandar
Saluted, well received, and honoured them
According to their station. Then he bade
The common folk, the chiefs, and those star-favoured
To carpet all the plain The sands and soil
Were tricked out with brocade Upon the waste
They pitched the Shah's pavilion, and the brave
Took post around. All revelled, Shah and horsemen.
Thus, as he fleeted time with feast and wine,
Or rest, the host, inured to heat and cold,
Reposed from war. Thereafter ceaselessly
He sought a lucky day whereon to march

Sought for intelligence from all, but none
Gave him auspicious counsel He observed
A mountain with its summit midst the stars
Thou wouldst have said " It will arrest the sky' "
Few were the folk thereon, and none of them
Remained at night. Of these he asked " What way
Is there, and how must I conduct the host ?"

All blessed him, saying " Famous king of earth'
" The way is o'er the mount if guide could go,
But on its farther side there is a dragon,
Whose grievous venom doth confound the wolf
Thy troops can pass it not, its venom's fumes
Mount to the moon flames issue from its maw,
And its two side-locks would avail to snare
An elephant. Our folk can not withstand it
It needeth for its food five oxen nightly
We buy, and drive, them on yon rocky mount,
Drive them with care and trouble, lest the dragon
Come hither, and our folk in numbers suffer "

c 1334

Sikandar, at the dragon's feeding-time,
Chose troops and bade to give it naught that day
The dragon, when its hour for battenning
Was o'er, came down the pass like fire. Sikandar
Bade his troops shower thereon their arrows swiftly
That laidly dragon drew one breath and sucked
Some warriors in The son of Farlaku
Bade beat the tymbals and the kettledrums,
Enkindle mighty fires and make a blaze
In every quarter. When the mountain rang
With tymbal-dm the monster feared and fled

When Sol ascended from the Sign of Taurus,
And soared the lark's note from the garths of roses,
The warrior-chieftain brought with him five oxen,
Procured with money from his treasury
He slew and skinned them, heads and all, his scheme
Gave courage to his friends. He charged the hides

With bane and naphtha, and made speed toward
 The dragon Blowing up the skins he called
 Upon the Giver of all good and bade
 Men pass the hides along from hand to hand
 As he drew near the dragon it appeared
 Black like a cloud, its tongue was livid, its eyes
 Seemed blood, its maw belched flame They cast the
 oxen

Down from the mountain-top and closely marked
 The dragon, which engorged them, swift as wind,
 Or ever they had left those warriors' hands
 Now when its frame was hide-stuffed, and the bane
 Had spread throughout its body, it prered through
 The entrails and invaded brains and feet
 The dragon dashed its head on mount and rocks,
 And thus a long time lapsed while all the troops
 Showered arrows on it till that mountain-form,
 That hunter, fell Thence fared the host with speed,
 And left in scorn the dragon's body there

Sikandar led them to another mountain
 One that amazed the troops. The keen of sight
 Could mark its height from far and that its peak
 Was like a scimitar-blade and thereupon,
 Apart from folk and distant from the throng,
 Was set a golden throne A hoary corpse

C. 135 Was on it verily still full of grace

In death, palled in brocade, upon its head
 A crown of gems of all kinds, and heaped round
 With gold and silver None could pass that way,
 For all that scaled the mountain-top to seek
 Aught of that corpse began to quake though fearless,
 Died, and returned to dust Sikandar clomb
 The mountain-top to view the corpse with all
 Its gold and silver, but he heard a voice —
 " O Shah¹ thou hast accomplished thy career,
 Hast voided many a monarch's throne, exalted

Thy head to heaven, and slaughtered many a foe
And friend. 'Tis time for thee to quit the world "

Burned like a lamp the Shah's cheeks as he heard ,
He left that mount and with a heart all seared

§ 28

*Hon Sikandar reached the City of Women, named
Harun, and san Wonder's there*

On marching with his chiefs of Rum Sikandar
Fared toward the city that thou call'st Harum,
Which was inhabited by women only,
Who suffered none to come within their gates.
Their left breasts were like eager warriors',
Who don the breastplate on the day of battle,
While on the right hand they resembled women's,—
Pomegranate-like on silk. The Shah with all
His mighty men of Rum approached Harum,
And wrote a letter fit and fair and worthy
Of his high birth, addressed thus " From the king
Of Rum and of Iran to her that is
The ruler in Harum

The letter first

Named Him who ruleth o'er the starry heaven,
Of whom are justice, love, and bounteousness,
And then went on " Whoe'er is wise of soul,
And walketh yet alive upon the world,
Hath heard of what we have achieved on earth,
And how we have exalted sovereignty,
While he that hath refused to do our bidding
Hath no couch save dark dust. Fain would I have
No place concealed from me throughout the world.
I roam not for addition's sake but ache
For knowledge. Be my hand withheld from gain,
And justice ever comrade of my soul.

c. 1336 If I approach 'tis not to fight with you,
 My heart is set on peace and jollity,
 If ye have any sage wise, shrewd, and clerkly,
 When he hath read my letter of advice
 Let all of you of worth prepare to meet me,
 For none shall lose by coming "

He commanded

That a philosopher of Rum should bear
 The letter to the city of Harum,
 And added many honied words. The envoy
 Was wise himself. When he arrived he saw
 The city full of women and no men,
 And all the people went forth to the plain
 To see the Ruman All the counsellors
 In that assembly gathered round the letter
 And, when a city-sage had read it over,
 And grew possessed of what the Shah proposed,
 They sat, and wrote back " O exalted Shah '
 Live ever. We have set thy messenger
 Before us and have read thy letter through
 First as to what thou sayest touching kings,
 Thy victories, and former lights • if thou
 Shalt march against the city of Harum
 Thou wilt not see the ground for hoofs and feet
 The districts of our city pass compute,
 And in each one there are ten thousand women
 We sleep in arms and battle for addition
 We all are spouseless, modest maidens we.
 Whichever way thou comest to this land
 There is deep water to be ferried over
 When one among us hath a mind to wed
 We none of us behold her lace again,
 And she must cross the water be the day
 Fine, blusterous, or snowy Having married,
 If she shall have a daughter—one refined
 And fond of hues and scents—that child of hers

Abideth ever in her native air,
But if she proveth masculine and proud
Her mother will dispatch her to Harum ,
While if the mother bringeth forth a son
He tarneth, coming not to dwell with us.
Each night ten thousand maidens guard the river
When one of us unhorseth in the fight
Some lion-man we set a golden crown
Upon her head and raise o'er Gemini
Her throne, and surely there are thirty thousand
Among us, wearing crown of gold and earrings
By whose hands some illustrious warrior
Hath turned to dust upon the day of battle
Thou art a great man, and thy fame is high, c 1337
Close not the door thereof upon thyself,
Else folk will say that thou didst fight with women,
And, after fighting, fled'st, and this will shame thee
And ne'er be obsolete while this world lasteth ,
But if thou, with thy famous men of Rum,
Wilt come and go about Harum, observing
All faith and courtesy, thou shalt behold
But mirth and kindness. If thy choice, O Shah'
Be other thou wilt shrink from us in battle.
We will lead forth against thee such a host
That sun and moon shall darken."

When this answer

Was finished an ambassadress departed
With crown and royal raiment, and with ten
Fair cavaliers. When she approached the Shah
In state he sent some troops to welcome her.
The noble lady gave to him the letter,
And told the message of the valiant women
Sikandar, having read that answer, chose
A man discreet and wise, sent this reply,
And said. " Be wisdom wedded to men's brains.
No kings or chiefs, exalted though they be

And favoured by the stars, are left on earth
 That are not subject unto me. Black dust
 And camphor-dust, and feast and battlefield,
 Are one to me. I have not come with drums,
 With elephants, with players on the tymbals,
 And such a host that plain and mountain quake
 Beneath the horses' hoofs, to fight with women.
 I fain would see your city, and if ye
 Will make approaches to me all is well
 When I have seen I will march hence the host,
 And not abide here long. We will behold
 Your policy and glory, how ye manage
 Your steeds, your grace, and potency. Privily
 Will I inquire as to your works and ways,
 How women can exist, men absent, how
 Death's ravage is repaired, and find the outcome "

The envoy went and did his embassy
 At large The magnates met and made reply
 " We will select two thousand women, fluent,
 Learned, and discreet, each hundred have in charge
 Ten crowns of gold each set with many gems,
 Two hundred crowns in all, and none but kings
 c 1338 Are digne of them. We will collect and heap them,
 Each with its jewels weighing thirty ratl.¹
 We will go forth to meet the Shah when we
 Are ware of his approach, for we have heard
 About his knowledge and his Grace."

The envoy

Returned and spake those words instinct with wisdom
 Sikandar marched forth from his resting-place,
 And marvelled at the conduct of those women.
 He went two stages, then a storm arose,
 Whose snow-drifts made all level with the hills,
 And many followers perished on that day
 Through cold and snow. The Shah pursued his march

¹ A ratl now = 1 014 lb av, I' reads " three " for " thirty "

Two stages farther through that grievous frost,
Then reached a burning land whence vapours rose,
And murky clouds; "The host," thou wouldst have said,
" Was marching over fire " The hauberks burnt
The shoulders of the Persians, and the earth
Glowed with the horse-shoes of the cavaliers,
And thus it was until they reached a land
Where they beheld all folk as black as night,
With pendent, slobbering lips, all lips and slobber
Were they, all slobber and lip' Their eyes seemed
blood,

Flames issued from their mouths ' Their warriors
Brought many elephants and offerings
Before the Shah, and said " We caused tins storm
And snow to harm you, for none e'er hath traversed
This route as we have seen your army do."

The Shah abode a month When he and host
Had been refreshed he sped thence merrily,
His heart prepared, toward the women's city,
And o'er the stream two thousand women passed
With crowns and earrings on. There was a forest
Thick and well watered, all the place was glad,
And flourishing The women brought a store
Of provand and bright, figured tapestries
Out to a mead and, when Sikandar reached
The city of Harum, they flocked to him
Out of their settlements. Full many a crown
They proffered him, as well as raiment, gems,
And things both fair and sweet These he accepted,
Received the women with all courtesy,
And gave them quarters in that charming spot

When night turned day he visited the city,
And occupied himself in seeing it,
Investigating all its usages
Till all had been made clear. He questioned much
Surveyed the river, and departed westward.

He found a mighty city of brave men
 c 1339 With ruddy faces and with flaxen hair,
 All fit for battle and the day of fight
 They came before Sikandar at his bidding
 With bodies bent and hands upon their heads
 He asked their chiefs " What wonders have ye here
 An elder thus replied " Star-favoured Shah
 And hon-capturer' there is a Deep
 Beyond the city Brighter than that water
 Naught have we seen, for when the radiant sun
 Arriveth there it setteth in those depths.
 Beyond it all is dark and lost to sight,
 While of that place of darkness I have heard
 So many tales that they are numberless.
 A man of lore, a worshipper of God,
 Declareth that there is a fountain there,
 And mine informant, who is wise and great,
 Referreth to it as the Fount of Life.
 That wise, discerning man said ' How shall one
 Who drinketh of the Fount of Life e'er dre
 From Paradise it runneth, wash therein
 The body, and thy sins will pass away"
 Then Cæsar said " As to this place of gloom,
 How can beasts fare therein ?"

The devotee
 Made answer " Ye must ride upon young horses."
 The Shah bade herdsmen gather to the camp
 The herds at large and chose ten thousand steeds,
 All four-year-olds and fit for battle-needs

§ 29

*How Sikandar 'went into the Gloom to seek the Water of Life
and spake with Birds and Israfil*

Sikandar, summoning his prudent chiefs,
 Marched cheerly thence his host and reached a city
 Where to he saw no middle and no end,
 And having all things needful in abundance
 'Twas full of garths, parks, halls, and palaces.
 There he dismounted and at dawn next day
 Went forward unattended toward the Source
 Which in his story of the hero's fortunes
 The rustic minstrel calleth that of Life
 He tarried there until the sun, grown pale,
 Sank in that fount of lapis-lazuh
 He saw the wonder wrought by holy God—
 The Bright One's disappearance from the world—
 Returned to camp, and pondered much. That night
 He prayed to God, mused on the Fount of Life, c 1340
 First chose the most enduring of his troops,
 Took with him food for forty days and more,
 And went forth eagerly to look on wonders.
 He camped his other troops within the city,
 And sought and found a guide. Khizr, who was chief
 Among the nobles of that folk, advised him
 Sikandar did as Khizr enjoined, surrendered
 Both heart and soul to his allegiance,
 And said "Shrewd-hearted man' be diligent
 Herein, and if we shall obtain the Water
 Of Life then we will pass much time in prayer.
 He will not die who nurtureth thus his soul,
 And in his wisdom refuge with God
 I have two signets that in sight of water
 Shine out at night like suns. Take one, lead on,
 And tender well thy person and thy life,

The other one shall light me on my way.
 I go amid the Darkness with mine escort,
 And we will see what God omnipotent
 Preserveth hidden where so much is seen
 Thou art my leader, and He is my refuge,
 And showeth me the Water and the Way."

Now when the troops marched toward the Fount of
 Life

A shout rose from the desert "God is great!"¹

Khizr left that station and all food behind him,
 And fared thus for two days and nights while none
 Bestirred his lips to eat Upon the third
 Two ways showed mid the Darkness, and the Shah
 Lost trace of Khizr What while the prophet went
 Toward the Fount of Life, exalting thus
 His living head to Saturn, bathed his body
 And head in that bright Water, sought no guard
 Save God, drank, rested, and returned apace,
 More instant ever both in prayer and praise,
 Sikandar reached the light and saw a mountain
 Both high and bright, and on its top four columns
 Of aloë-wood uplifted to the clouds
 On every column was a mighty nest,
 And in each nest there sat a huge, green bird,
 Which, speaking loudly in the Ruman tongue,
 Hailed the victorious master of the world,
 Who hurried to them when he heard. One said —
 "O votary of toil' what seekest thou
 Within this Wayside Inn, for though thou rarest
 Thy head to heaven above it will dismiss thee
 In grief at last?² But now that thou hast come,
 Hast seen aught built of reeds or reed-baked bricks?"
 He answered "Both our dwellings are directly
 Or indirectly made with reeds."

The bird,

¹ Allah akbar. Properly "God is greatest" This part is very Arabic

On hearing this reply, perched lower down,
 Astonying that worshipper of God,
 And asked him "Hast thou heard within the world
 The sounds of harp, of reveller, and song?"

He made this answer "One, whose lot it is
 To have no share in joy, the glad account not
 Although for them he pour out heart and soul."

From that tall column of lign-aloe-wood
 The bird flew to the ground, its musky perch
 Was void. The bird inquired "Do understanding
 And right prevail or do defect and guile?"

The Shah made answer "He that seeketh know-
 ledge
 Is eminent in every company."

Back from dark ground to column went the bird
 And, having cleaned its talons with its beak,
 Inquired of ~~Caesar~~ "Why do devotees
 Dwell on the mountains?"

"The devout," he said,
 "Find not another place so good for worship."

The bird ran up the column to its nest
 The monarch was delighted with that fowl,
 Which with its talons sharpened up its bill
 In full security. Then it instructed
 Sikandar to ascend the topmost peak,
 Afoot and unescorted, there to see
 That which would cause the merriest to weep
 On hearing this he went toward the mountain
 Alone to view the sight upon its summit,
 And there saw Israfi'l, with trump in hand
 And head uplifted, standing at his post,
 Wind on his lips and moisture in his eye,
 Till God shall bid him blow. On seeing Sikandar
 He roared like thunder: "O thou slave of greed t
 Toil not so much, because some day a Call
 Will reach thine ears. Be less concerned for crown

And throne. Make ready to depart and bind
The baggage on."

"It is my lot from fortune,"
The Shah replied, "for save by stir and roaming
I may not look on sight and mystery."

He then descended, wailing and imploring
The Giver of all good, and, with a guide
Preceding him, advanced along that route,
Involved in gloom, which when the army entered
A cry ascended from the darksome heights —
"He that shall take a stone up from the road
Will grieve for what he beareth in his hand,
C 1342 And if he taketh none he will repent,
And heartily in each case seek a cure."

The soldiers all gave ear, and every one
Grew thoughtful at that cry since, whether they
Took stones or no, must they not count on ills?
One said "It is the punishment of guilt
To bear repentance and the stones as well"

Another said "We should take some, perchance
We may not have to savour pain and toil."

One man took of the stones, another left them;
A third through indolence took little ones.
When from the region of the Fount of Life
They reached the plain, emerging from the Gloom,
Each sought the truth and then perceived the trick
One had his bosom full of jewels cut,
Another his with jewels in the rough,
And both regretted that they had so few,
Why had they passed by emeralds as vile?
But sorrier still was he that picked up none
At leaving precious gems as he had done.

§ 30

*How Sikandar went to the East, saw Wonders, and built a
Barrier against Yajuj and Majuj*

Two weeks he tarried and, when rested, marched.
 He set forth eastward, having seen the west;
 His purpose in the world was wayfaring.
 Now as he went he saw a noble city ,
 " No wind or dust passed o'er it," thou wouldst say.
 Whenas the drums beat on the elephants
 The chiefs came out two miles to welcome him.
 The Shah, on seeing them, received them well,
 Exalting them o'er circling Sol, and asked —
 " What matchless marvels have ye in these parts ?"
 They loosed their tongues and thus bewailed their
 fortune —
 " A very grievous case confronteth us,
 And we will tell it to the conquering Shah
 By reason of this cloud-capt mountain-range
 Our hearts are full of anguish, toil, and grief.
 Since for resistance we are poweless
 Yajuj there and Majuj give us no sleep,
 For when a portion of them reach our city
 Our portion is all misery and travail.
 Their faces all resemble those of beasts,
 Their tongues are black, their eyes like blood, their
 faces
 Are black, their teeth are like wild boars!¹ Who dareth
 Draw nigh to them ? Their bodies all are clad c 134
 With hair, the hue of indigo, their breasts,
 Their bosoms, and their ears resemble those
 Of elephants. They sleep upon one ear,
 And use the other as a coverlet.¹
 The mothers have a thousand children each,

¹ See p 80.

And who can reckon them ? They herd like beasts,
They go apace and run like onagers.
In spring, when clouds roar and the green sea heaveth,
The clouds draw up great monsters from the waves,
While air is roaring like a mighty lion,
And pour them down in masses * then these folk
Come troop on troop and batten year by year
Upon these monsters and thereby grow lusty
In limbs and body Afterward they feed
On herbage, scattering to gather it.
In winter they are pale and thin, their voices
Like doves', but through those monsters in the spring
They are as wolves and roar right lustily.
Now if the great Shah could devise a means
To liberate our hearts from this distress,
He will receive the praise of every one,
And will prolong his sojourn in the world.
Exert thy power and do this work for us,
For thou too needest help from holy God "

Sikandar mused at them, grew grave, and pondered,
Then answered thus " I will defray the cost;
Your city must provide both aid and labour.
By help of God, our Guide and Succourer,
I will reduce this way of theirs to reason."

All cried " May fortune's ills be far from thee,
O Shah ! We are the slaves of thy good pleasure,
Thy *lifelong* servitors. We will supply
All that thou need'st, for we have no concern
More urgent."

So Sikandar came and viewed
The heights, and took with him a troop of sages.
He ordered to bring blacksmiths, copper, brass,
And heavy hammers, mortar, stone, and fire-wood
Past reckoning, bring all things requisite.
They brought him everything that he demanded
In measureless supplies. When all was ready,

SIKANDAR

And planned, the masons and the smiths, all those
Of mastery in their trade throughout the world,
Assembled to Sikandar to assist him
In that most needful work. From every province
The experts mustered, and he built two walls
Across the mountain-pass from base to crest,
One hundred royal cubits broad, one cubit
Of charcoal, one of iron, in between
Strewed copper, and showered sulphur in the midst,
Such is the craft and subtlety of kings !
He laid thus his materials course on course,
And when from top to bottom all was set,
They mixed much ghee and naphtha, poured it over
Those substances, and on the top shot charcoal
In ass-loads. Then the Shah bade fire the whole,
And five score thousand smiths blew up the flames,
As bidden by that king victorious.
A sound of blowing went up from the mountain,
The stars were frightened at the glowing fire.
Thus passed a season with the fire in blast,
And smiths a-toil. They ran the substances
Together, fusing them in that fierce blaze
Thus was the world delivered from Yajuj
And from Majuj, and earth grew habitable,
For by Sikandar's famous barrier
The world escaped the misery of strife,
It was five hundred cubits high, about
One hundred broad. The nobles blessed the Shah,
And said. " May neither time nor earth lack thee."

They brought before him in abundant store
Whatever was the produce of those parts.
He would accept of naught and went his ways,
His doings filled the whole world with amaze.

§ 31

*How Sikandar saw a Corpse in a Palace of Jewels on the Top
of a Mountain, and the Speaking Tree, and how he was
warned of his Death*

He marched one month till Shah and troops were
weary.

At length he reached a mount where he beheld not
A man or beast Its peak he saw to be
Of lapis-lazuli and thereupon
A palace built of topazes, with lustres
Of crystal everywhere, and in the middle
A fount of brackish water A ruby served
For lamp and lighted palace, mount, and heights,
The light fell on the water, and the jewel
Illumed the palace like the sun Beside
The fount was set a double golden throne
Where lay a hapless one with human body
And with a wild boar's head—a helpless corpse
On that fine throne. His couch beneath was camphor,
And o'er him spread a mantle of brocade.

C. 1345 Whoever went to carry aught away,
Or even trod the dust upon the floor,
Died in convulsions on the spot A cry
Came from that briny fount " O slave of greed!
Be not so mad. Much hast thou seen that none
Besides hath seen 'Tis time to draw thy rein
Because thy life is ending, and thy throne
Of sovereignty is going all astray "

Sikandar feared, turned him about apace,
And came back to his camp as swift as smoke.
He marched thence quickly, wailing and invoking
The name of God, then from that mountain took
The desert-route in dudgeon and concerned
About his life. All sorrow and in tears

He went with troops behind and guides before
 Till, by that desert-route, he reached a city,
 And joyed to hear the voice of men. The land
 Was all a garden, gladding to delight
 The heart of man. The magnates of the city—
 The men of valour—went to welcome him,
 All praised him, showering on him gold and gems,
 And said " O Shah! how blessed 'tis that thou
 Shouldst traverse thus our coasts' No host before
 E'er visited this city, none of us
 E'er heard the name of Shah, but now that thou
 Hast come our souls are thine, and mayst thou be
 In spirit lucid and in body hale "

Sikandar gladdened in his heart at them.
 He rested from the desert-march, and asked:—
 " Of marvel what is there for me to note?"

The guides thus answered " O victorious Shah,
 And pure of rede' there is a wonder here,
 Whose match none in the world of small and great
 E'er hath beheld—a tree with double trunk—
 A marvel manifest One trunk is female,
 The other male, they speak, have boughs, and flourish.
 At night the female yieldeth speech and perfume,
 The male doth speak by day,"

Sikandar went
 With cavaliers of Rum and native chiefs
 Of whom he asked " This tree—when speaketh it
 Aloud?" The interpreter replied " One trunk
 Will talk or ever day's ninth hour hath passed,
 So that the auspicious Shah will hear its voice,
 When it is night the female trunk will speak,
 Its foliage will savour as 'twere musk."

The Shah asked • " When we pass the tree, good friend ! c. 1346
 What marvel meet we then?"

"Of going further,"
 The interpreter replied, " there is no question.

There is no place beyond it, and guides call it
' The World's End.'"

Then the blest Shah with his Rumans
Set forward. When he reached the speaking tree
The ground was seething hot, and all its surface
Was hid by beasts' skins

" What are these, and who
Hath torn beasts thus ? " he asked of his informant,
Who said " The tree hath many devotees,
Who, if they hunger while engaged in worship,
Feed on the flesh of beasts."

When Sol attained
The apex of heaven's vault Sikandar heard
Aloft a cry proceeding from the leaves
Of that tall tree—an awful, boding cry.
He feared and asked of the interpreter —
" Shrewd, trusty friend¹ what say the talking leaves,
Because they bathe my heart in lymph of blood ?"

The guide replied " O favourite of fortune '
The leaves upon the boughs of this tree say —
' Why doth Sikandar roam so o'er the world,
For he hath had his portion of good things,
And, when he shall have reigned for twice seven years,
Must quit the throne of sovereignty ?"

Sikandar
Wept tears of blood, the guide's words wrung his heart.
Thenceforth he spake to no one, but remained
All sorrowful till midnight. Then the leaves
Upon the other trunk gave utterance
Again the Shah asked of his friendly guide —
" What is it that the other branches say ?"

Thus his informant solved the mystery —
" The female branches say ' Thou travailest
In this wide world for greed and for addition
Why torture thus thy soul² It is thy passion
To go about the world, afflicting folk

And slaying kings. Thou hast not long to live,
Do not thyself cloud and contract thy days."

The great king asked of the interpreter —
"O good, discerning man¹ inquire if I
Shall be in Rum when my dark day shall come,
And if my mother see me not alive
Will she at last enshroud this face of mine?"

The speaking tree said to the Shah "Be speedy,
And bind the baggage on Thy mother, kindred
In Rum, and face-veiled ladies there will look
On thee no more. Death in an alien land
Will come ere long, crown, diadem, and throne
Grow tired of thee."

c 1347

He heard and left the tree,
Heart-stricken by the scimitar of fortune.
When he reached camp the noble native chiefs
Went home and, when they had made ready gifts,
Came hurrying to the Shah. There were a breastplate,
Resplendent as the Nile and wide and broad
As is an elephant's hide, two elephant-tusks
Five cubits long—a toil to lift—mail-coats
And rich brocade, and, made of solid gold,
A hundred eggs, each weighing sixty mans¹
If weighed as drachms, and a rhinoceros
In gold and gems Accepting these he led
His host away and tears—his heart's blood—shed.

§ 32

*How Sikandar marched his Army to Chin, canned his own
Letter to Faghfur, and returned to his Army with the Answer*

He led his army thence toward Chin and raised
The chiefs' heads to the Pleiads. Stage by stage
He crossed the desert till in forty days

¹ The weight of the "man" varies with the locality. The "man" of Tabriz "—the smallest— = from 7 to 7½lbs av

He reached the sea,¹ dismounted there his troops
 And pitched the camp-enclosure of brocade.
 He ordered then a scribe to write a letter
 As from Sikandar, conqueror of cities,
 Bad9 that the letter should comprise all kinds
 Of fair and foul, and, when the scribe had finished,
 Went as ambassador. He chose a Persian,
 A shrewd man, one with him in heart and word,
 To bid him "Do " or "Do not." Then he gave
 The captain of the host charge of the troops,
 And of the Rumans took with him five sages.

When tidings reached Faghfur "There is an envoy
 Approaching Chin " he sent a force of troops
 To meet him, and Sikandar fared in state.
 He reached that spacious court Faghfur beheld
 That chosen troop of valiant men and came,
 With mind averse and anxious, from the entry
 To meet Sikandar who ran up to him,
 Did him obeisance, and sat long within
 The hall of audience. Faghfur gave greeting,
 Received him well, and lodged him splendidly.

Now when the bright Lamp rose above the mountains
 They brought a horse caparisoned with gold,
 C 1348 And summoned the Shah's envoy to the presence.
 Sikandar spake at large, said what was fit,
 Then gave the letter, and recalled what Cæsar
 Had said The letter's superscription ran —
 "From Rum's Shah, who is world-lord and the prince
 Of every march and land, whom other monarchs
 Praise, to Faghfur, the glory of the realm "

The letter thus began "Praise to the Maker
 From us His slaves," and then went on to say —
 "Our will for Chin is this, that it should prosper.
 Ye should not fight us, that cut short Fur's life.
 So was it with Dara, who ruled the world,

¹ Cf p. 174

Faryan the Arab, and with other chiefs.
 From west to east none hath escaped our sway.
 Heaven knoweth not the number of my troops
 Though Venus, Mercury, and Sol shall count them.
 If thou infringest my command m aught
 Thou wilt but vex the country and thyself.
 Prepare thy tribute when thou reatest this,
 Be not aggrieved, and meddle not with evil
 If thou wilt come and see me and my host
 I will regard thee as ally and friend,
 Assure to thee thy throne and crown, and fortune
 Shall harm thee not; but if thou wouldst not come
 Before thy lord, send to my treasury
 The rarities of Chin, as golden ware,
 Swords, steeds and signets, raiment, slaves, and thrones
 Of ivory, rich brocade and torques and crowns—
 Whate'er thou hast—as thou wouldst be unscathed
 By us. Repulse mine army by these means,
 And keep in safety crown and throne and treasure.
 Thou know'st both courses now my host expecteth
 Thy fall or rise. The Maker bless thee. Mayst
 Thou ne'er have reason to recall my words!"

The lord of Chin, on seeing such a letter,
 Was wroth but showed it not and with a smile
 Said to the envoy: " Heaven is thy Shah's consort¹
 Tell what thou canst about his looks, his stature,
 His prowess, and his speech."

The envoy said —

" O chief of Chin know, none is like Sikandar
 On earth. In prowess, bounty, rede, and wisdom,
 He passeth man's conception. Cypress-tall
 Is he, an elephant in strength, a Nile
 In bounty, and in tongue a trenchant sword.
 His blandness draweth eagles from the clouds."

Faghfiir, on hearing this, took other order.
 He bade serve meat and wine, and deck a hall

Within the garth They quaffed till it was dark,
And they were all bemused. The lord of Chin
Said to the ambassador " Be Jupiter
Thy Shah's ally Tomorrow I will answer,
And make the day right glorious in thy sight."

Now when Sol rose in Leo, and the sky
Had night alow, Sikandar drew anear,
But not with ill prepense Faghfur inquired —
" How went the night, for thou wast flushed wine-red
Yestre'en when going hence ?" then bade a scribe
To come with paper, musk, and spicery,
And wrote a warm rejoinder, and adorned,
Like Paradise, that paper wrought in Chin,
And first he praised the Judge, the Lord of manhood,
Of justice, and accomplishment, the Lord
Of learning, self-control, and Faith, " and may
He bless the king of Rum. Thy courteous envoy
Hath reached us with the letter of the Shah,
That seeker after knowledge We have read
Thy royal words and with the great discussed them.
For what in fight and feast befell Dara,
Son of Darab, Faryan, and Fur whom thou
Didst triumph over and become the shepherd,
With monarchs as the flock the Lord of sun
And moon so ordered it, impute it not
To prowess and the number of thy troops,
For when a chiefs life endeth 'tis all one
To die in feast or fight. Thou foughtest them
Upon their fated day which altereth not.
Boast not and vaunt not over them, for thou
Past doubt wilt pass thyself, though thou be iron.
Where are Jamshid, Zahhak, and Faridun ?
They came from wind and went to wind again.
I neither fear thee nor will fight with thee.
Not, as with thee, doth bluster fill my head,
Who am not used to bloodshed, while ill-doing

Is not accordant to my Faith. Thou call'st me
Before thee but in vain, for I serve God,
Not king. I send thee more than thou dost ask,
Regarding largess I am not contentious."

Upon his cheek Sikandar felt the blush
Of shame, his liver arrow-pierced with what
Faghfur had said, and thought: "None shall behold me
Fare in disguise henceforth."

He left the palace, c. 1350

Went to his lodging, and prepared to leave.
The great Faghfur unlocked his treasury;
He grudged not bounty. First he bade make ready
An ivory throne and fifty crowns inlaid
With gems, and load with gold and silver ware
A thousand camels and a thousand more
With silk and satins, with brocade of Chin,
With camphor, aloe, musk, and spicery.
He liveth at his ease who scorneth gold
Of squirrel, ermine, and of sable pelts,
Of rugs, of horse-hides, and of weazel-skins,
The prudent treasurer brought forth and packed
Of every sort two thousand, brought withal
High-mettled steeds caparisoned with gold,
And slave-boys too, three hundred, with gold girdles.
They brought three hundred red-haired camels laden
With many a rarity of Chin Faghfur
Chose from among the elders one of weight,
And sugared speech, and bade him go with greeting
And message to the Shah, and bear to him
The glad news that the chiefs would do him homage
So long as he was in the coasts of Chin.
The envoy set forth with Sikandar. Who
Would think that he was Shah? But when the sailors
Saw him, sprang up, and lightly spread the sails,
And when the viceroy met him with the troops,

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

Reporting what had chanced,¹ while all the soldiers
Praised him and bent their faces to the ground,
The man of Chin perceived "It is the Shah!"
And went to him afoot protesting loudly.
Sikandar said to him: "Make no excuses,
And mention not the matter to Faghfur."

That night he rested and next day at dawn,
When he was set in peace upon his throne,
He gave the envoy gifts, and said "May wisdom
Be ever thine. Go to Faghfur and say —
"With us thou hast great honour. Chin is thine,
If I may say so, and what more thou wilt.
I shall abide at present where I am,
One cannot hurry with so large a host."

Back with the speed of wind the envoy hied,
And told Faghfur what ~~Caesar~~ had replied.

§33

*How Sikandar retured from Chin, made War against
the Sindians, and went to Yaman*

C 1351 The Shah abode a month and when the troops
Were rested led them back. From that green sea²
They fared by wilderness and longsome ways,
Stage after stage, until they reached Chaghwan,
And saw a fortified and prosperous city.
The magnates of the land, those famed and wise,
Came to Sikandar's presence while the chiefs
Set forward from Chaghwan with offerings,
And presents to his gate At once Sikandar
Began to question them "What sights have ye
Of marvel here?"

One said "We know of none,
O king! worth seeing. Beggary and toil

¹ Or "when Sikandar had announced the result of his undertaking

² Or the Green Sea. Cf NAR, p. 40.

Are here, and thou wilt take naught hence but wind."

The Shah, on hearing what the speaker said,
Marched from Chaghwan toward Sind whose cavaliers
Went out to meet him while from Hind came help.
All those heart-stricken on account of Fur,
Their hands all bathed in blood, brought elephants,
And Indian bells. Arose the battlecry,
And clarion's blare. The Sindians⁵ chief was named
Bandawa, an illustrious cavalier,
And puissant. The armies shocked together,
And earth became all mountain-like with slam.
Night came, no Sindian stayed upon that field.
Sikandar led his army in pursuit,
And captured elephants fourscore and five,
As well as golden crowns and scimitars
And treasures Women, children, and old men
Went weeping to the Shah while on his way,
And said "O prudent Shah! restrain thyself,
Burn not our land, slay not our little ones,
For thy day too will pass, and blest is he
That walketh innocently."

He had no ruth,
Not sparing e'en the wounded. They enslaved
A host of women, children, young, and old
He went toward Nimruz by way of Bust,
And purged the world of foes. Thence he proceeded,
World-conquering with his famed host, Yaman-ward,
Whose monarch, hearing, went with chiefs to meet
him,

Selecting native gifts of price and fair, c. 1352
As was most fit—of striped stuff of Yaman
Ten camel-loads and five of gold, ten more
Of drachms (when drachms are had hearts are not sad),
A thousand frails of saffron, with brocade
And raiment past compute. Among his treasures
He had a cup of emerald and pearls

Unpierced, in number seventy-five, besides
A cup of lapis-lazuh containing
Three score of topazes and on the top
Ten ruby signet-rings. These he delivered
To those in waiting with his benisons.
They reached the camp-enclosure of the Shah
With all these gifts and offerings. Sikandar
Saluted and received the monarch well,
And seated him beside the throne, and he—
The monarch of Yaman—blessed him and said —
" Be victor with thy troops. Twill give me joy
If thou wilt sojourn with me for two months
That Shah and host may rest them from the road."

Sikandar blessed him, saying • " May thy mate
Be wisdom ever "

When the morning came
Yaman's king went his way, and all that coast
Resounded with the romage of the host

§ 34

*How Sikandar marched toward Babil and found the
Treasure of Kai Khusrau in a City*

Sikandar led his troops toward Babil,
The air was hidden by their dust. He marched,
He and his host, a month, they saw no rest-place.
At length they reached a mount whose top was
hidden.

A black cloud rested on it, thou hadst said —
" 'Twas near to Saturn." They could find no road,
And Shah and army halted in dismay.
They scaled laboriously the craggy height,
And even light-armed troops were overworn.
When they were all exhausted by the march
A deep sea showed upon the farther side.

The host rejoiced to view sea, plain, and road.
They marched toward that deep sea, and praised the
Maker.

The place was full of beasts, the army lived
On game Far off a savage showed all hairy,
With mighty ears. His body 'neath its fell c 133
Seemed indigo, his ears like elephant's
In breadth On seeing such the soldiers seized
And bore him to Sikandar who beheld
Amazed, invoked o'er him the name of God,
And said "What man art thou? What is thy name?
What get'st thou from the sea? What seekest thou?"

"My father and my mother," he replied,
"Gave me, O Shah' this name of Gush-bistar." ¹
The Shah asked "What is that amid the water
Out yonder toward the using of the sun?"

"O Shah "" he said, "for ever live renowned
There is a city there like Paradise,
And not, thou wouldest say, compact of earth
Thou wilt not look on palace there or house
Whose outside is not made throughout of bones,
And, brighter than the sun, within the halls
Are limned the visage of Afrasiyab,
And that of Kai Khusrau, the combative,
His greatness, manliness, and enterprises
All these are painted on the bones of fish,
Thou wilt see nowhere any dust or earth,
The people In e on fish and naught besides²
Myself I will escort the army thither
If the famed Shah shall bid "

Sikandar said
To him with ears "Go to, fetch me a native
That I may look upon a novelty."

So Gush-bistar set forth at once and made
All speed to go to city and to folk,

¹ I.e. Ear bed Of p 163
VOL. VI

²

See p 69
M

And gave them Caesar's message, saying " The Shah,
That famed one, calleth for you."

Of that city,

When young and old and high and low heard this,
There went across the water seventy men,
Possessed of wisdom or advanced in years,
And clad in silks, and some were young, some old.
The old and famed bare each a golden cup
A-brim with pearls, the young bare each a crown
They came to Caesar, bowed, and revered him ,
They held long talk with him and said "The trea-
sures

Of Kai Khusrau are in our custody,
And would befit a new Shah like thyself "

Thereat Sikandar hurried o'er the water
Toward their city, viewed it all—its marts,
And streets—and visited the treasure-house
The hoard was all of crowns and thrones of gold,
With coronets and necklaces and girdles.
None knew its worth for none could reckon it

C 134 The Shah took all and sped to camp, rejoicing
He stayed that night, but when cock-crow had come
Rose at his gate the sound of kettledrum.

§35

*How Sikandar went to the City of Babil, wrote a Letter to
Arastalis, and received his Answer*

Sikandar marched thence to Babil, the earth
Was hidden by his host He knew that death
Was near and that his day was overcast,
And thought to leave none of the royal race
To lead an army to make war on Rum,
And set his foot upon that prosperous land.
When this thought gat possession of his brain

SIKANDAR

He wrote a letter to Arastalis,
And said " It is my purpose not to leave
One of the royal seed. I have been round
The seven climes and taken many princes.
In sooth my death is nigh, so day hath darkened."

He bade that every one of Karan seed
Should make him ready to appear at court,
Not dreaming of foul play Now when they bare
The letter to the sage his heart was riven.
He answered instantly and, thou hadst said,
Made of the lashes of his eye his pen-point —¹
" The letter of the world's king hath arrived
Thou must withhold thy hand from evil-doing,
Abandon this ill purpose, exprate
The thought by giving alms, restrain thyself,
Commit thyself to God and in the world
Sow only seed of good. We live for death,
For die we must past help None hath borne oft
The kingship with him, but hath gone and left
His greatness to another So be ware,
Shed not the blood of princes else a curse
Will be upon thee till the Resurrection
Again, when tor the Iranian troops no Shah
Shall sit upon the throne hosts will arrive
From Turkistan and Hind, Saklab and Chin,
Arrive from all sides, and 'twill be no marvel
If they that take Iran shall war with Rum.
Not e'en a breath must harm the Kaian-bom
Convoke the Ruman and Iranian chiefs
To merrymake, feast, conference, and banquet.
Appoint to every chief a fitting province,
And start a new roll with the names of Ruman
And of Iranian chiefs at whose expense
Thou hast obtained the world, but give to none

¹ *I.e.* either "with the tears miming down his pen" or
great subtlety "

The lordship o'er another and withal
Call none of them the Shah, and let these Karans
Serve as the shields of thine own land if thou
Wouldst have not Rum invaded "

When Sikandar
Received this answer he made haste to change
His purpose and bade summon to his court
The Ruman and Iranian notables
That were possessed of valour, ranked them duly
And drew the patents so that none should seek
The least addition to the share assigned him
To these renowned and independent princes
They gave the name of " Tribal Kings "

The night
Whereon Sikandar reached Babil, and saw
The chiefs right glad to look on him again,
A woman bare a child that filled beholders
With wonderment It had a lion's head
With hoofs for feet, an ox's tail, the breast
And shoulders of a man The monster died !
At birth but, though such things are best forgotten.
They bare it to the Shah forthwith who gazed
Thereon with horror, held it ominous,
And said " Let this be hidden by the dust "

He summoned many readers of the stars,
And held discourse at large of that dead child.
In great dismay they veiled their views thereon
From that fair-fortuned Shah who raged, and said —
" If aught be hid forthwith I will behead you,
And naught but lions' maws shall be your shroud !"

The Shah being wroth, they told him " Famous king
That thou wast born beneath the Sign of Leo
Was patent both to archmage and to chief
Thou seest the lion-like head on this dead child,
So will the head of thine own empire droop
All thine astrologers have said as much

SIKANDAR

Already and adduced the signs "

Sikandar,

On hearing this, was grieved, his wits and counsel
Failed, and he said " Death is past cure. My heart
Is not concerned thereat No longer life
Is mine Our period waxeth not not waneth "

He sickened at Babil that very day,
Knew that calamity was near and called
A veteran scribe before him to impart
The dispositions that he had at heart

§36

Sikandar Letter to his Mother

He bade to write a letter to his mother,
And said to her " One cannot blink Death's presage
In this world I have had the appointed share,
And waned life waxeth not Grieve not at all
About my death, for death is no new thing
Royal or base whoe'er is born must die.
I will instruct the Ruman chiefs that when
They quit this land they must consult thy pleasure
In all things and obey thee loyally.
On every prince among the Iranians,
That might have caused calamity to Rumans
I have bestowed a province. Now when each
Of these hath entered on his government,
Good sooth, he will have no desire for Rum ,
Our marches and our land will rest from foes
Embalm me dead upon the soil of Misr,
And spill no word of mine. Of my dinars
Bestow one hundred thousand every year
Upon the husbandmen, and should a son
Be born to Rushanak his father's name
In truth will live, and Rum must have no king

Save him, for he will renovate that land,
 But in her travail if she bear a daughter
 Espouse her to the son of Farlalus,
 Call him my son, not son-in-law, and keep
 Within the world through him my memory green
 Send back too scathless to her sire in state
 Raid's daughter with her own devoted slaves,
 And purses. Furnish litters for the journey,
 Send too the crowns and gems, the gold and silver
 Brought by her from her sire, to Hindustan
 Whene'er she would depart I have achieved
 All that I purposed here and now perforce
 Must think of death. List to my last requests,
 And add not thereunto. First fashion me
 A golden coffin Let my shroud be made
 In worthy fashion of gold cloth of Chin,
 And saturate with ambergris, and let
 No pains be spared for me, but seal my coffin
 With pitch and camphor, musk and spicery
 First pour in honey, let it be above,
 And let there be brocade of Chin below,
 C. 1357 Then let my corpse be laid inside the coffin,
 And, when ye veil my visage, there an end
 O my wise mother' keep in mind my counsel
 While life endieth All that I have gathered
 From Hind, Turan, Makran, Iran, and Chin,
 Keep thou, but give thy superfluities,
 What thou canst not enjoy thyself, away
 'Tis my desire for thee, my loving mother!
 That thou be watchful and serene of soul,
 And not too toilful, for none tameth here
For ever Surely when thy day is done
 Our souls will meet again. 'Tis nobler far
 To suffer than to love, and 'tis the mean
 That yield to passion. Since my body once
 Was all thy care for months and years, now pray

SIKANDAR

To God for my pure soul and help me thus,
For prayer is all in all Behold and see
If there be any in earth's round whose soul
Is stricken not at death."

He sealed and closed
The letter, and bade men on speedy steeds
Convey these tidings from Babil to Rum —
"The Grace of king of kingship is bedimmed !"

Now when the army was aware thereof
The world was darkened to the chiefs, who set
Their faces toward the throne of majesty,
And all the world was full of hue and cry

§ 37

*How Sikander's Lite ended and how they carried
his Coffin to Iskandariya*

On hearing how the army was bestead
And knowing that his time was near, Sikandar
Bade carry from the palace to the field
His throne. The troops bewailed his malady
When they beheld the Shahs pale face The plain
Was one great cry, they seethed as on quick fire
All said "What misadventure for the Rumans
To lose their king' Ill fortune is upon us,
And field and fell henceforth are desolate,
Our foes have won their wish and gained their goal
The world becometh bitter to us now,
In public and in private we shall wail"

With failing voice said Caesar "Be devout,
Wise, modest, and heed all my last requests,
If ye would prosper both in soul and body
When I have gone the work is left for you,
And fortune is not dealing ill with me."

He spake, his life departed, and that Shah

So famous, that host-shatterer, passed away.
A cry went up from all the host and split
The ears of heaven The soldiers all strewed dust
Upon their heads and strained their hearts' blood
through

The lashes of their eyes They tired his palace,
And docked a thousand steeds, reversing all
Their saddles Thou hadst said "The earth lamenteth"
They bore the golden bier out to the plain,
And wailing pierced the sky A prelate laved
The corpse with clear rose-water, and besprinkled
Thereon pure camphor Of gold-woven brocade
They made his winding-sheet, while all bewailed him,
And, having shrouded thus that noble form
Beneath brocade of Chin, they covered it
With honey to the feet and then sealed down
The lid of that strait coffin passed away
That Tree so fruitful and so shadowing !
Thou bidest not within this Hostel Why
Toy then with crown or cling to treasury ?

Now when they raised the coffin from the plain,
And passed it on from hand to hand, two voices—
A Ruman and a Persian—rose, and all
The talk was of the coffin All the Persians
Said thus " He should be buried in Iran
Where are the ashes of the kings of kings
Why should ye speed the coffin round the world ?"

One of the Ruman counsellors replied •—
" It is not fitting here to bury him.
If ye will hear my rede aright Sikandar
Should pass back to the soil wherefrom he sprang "

A Persian said withal: " Howe'er ye talk
This will reach no fair ending I will show you
A field commemorating Shahs of old.
Wise ancients call it Khurm. It hath a lake
And forest, and in answer to thy questions

A voice, which every one may hear, will speak
 Out of the mountain Thither bear some ancient
 In his decrepitude, and there too stay
 The coffin Let him ask. Then if the mountain
 Reply 'twill rede you well"

Like mountain-sheep
 They hurried to the wood that he called Khurm,
 They asked their question and this answer came —
 " Why long delay the coffin of the Shah '
 Iskandariya, which he built in life,
 Is destined to contain Sikandar's dust "

The soldiers heard the voice and bare away
 The coffin from the wood without delay

§ 38

How the Sages and other Folk lamented Sikandar

Now when they brought him to Iskandariya c 1359
 Another dispensation ruled the world.
 They set his coffin on the plain, all earth
 Was full of hue and cry. Men, women, children,
 Above a hundred thousand had one reckoned,
 Flocked to Iskandariya to the coffin
 The wise Arastalis stood forth, a world,
 With eyes all tears of blood, was watching him
 He laid his hand on that strait coffin, saying —
 " God-fearing Shah ! where are thy prudence, knowledge,
 And rede that this strait coffin should become
 Thy home ? In youth's day, after these few years,
 Why hast thou chosen the dust for pillowing ?"

The Ruman sages all assembled there
 One said " O brazen-bodied Elephant!
 Who overthrew thee ? Who desired thy place ?
 Where now are all thy shrewdness and wise counsel ?"

Another said: "Thou laidest up much gold:
Why now is gold embracing thus thy body?"

Another said "No man escaped thy hand,
But why, O Shah' didst thou rub hands with Death?"

Another "Thou hast rest from pain and toil
As well as from the quest of rule and treasure"

Another "When thou goest before thy Judge
That which thou sowed'st thou shalt reap withal"

Another "Impotent is he that used
To shed the blood of kings"

Another said —
"Soon shall we be as thou art, thou that wast
An uncut gem"

Another said "The Master,
On seeing thee, will teach thee things forgotten"

Another said "Since he hath been death-smitten
We should not clutch at self-aggrandisement"

Another said "O higher than moon and sun'
Why hidest thou from all thy goodly face?"

Another said "A man of many parts
Is fain to cover him face-deep in gold,
But now, O man of such accomplishment,
And brave' the yellow gold hath whelmed thee"

Another said "Thou hast put on brocade,
And veiled to us therewith thy lovely looks
Now lift thy head therefrom, for crown and armlet,
And ivory throne, of thee are all in quest."

"Thou hast been severed from thy moon-faced
youths,"

Another said, "and thralls of Chin and Rum,
And huggest gold to thee Oh! deal not thus,
'Tis not kings' usage, with brocade and gold"

c 1360 Another said "What well advised reply
Will come to thee now that the Questioner
Will question thee, and say 'Why didst thou shed
The blood of great men, and with so much stress

Didst struggle after treasure ? Didst not see
 How many of the great have died and borne
 Naught from the world with them except the fame
 Of their good deeds ? " "

Another said "Thy day
 Is over-passed, thy tongue hath ceased to parle
 Now wilt thou see a mighty Court—a world
 Wherein the sheep is parted from the wolf¹
 The observer of thy throne and crown should turn
 His reins from greatness for, as 'tis with thee,
 It will abide with none The tree of greatness
 Should not be planted "'

Said another "Thy deeds
 Are turned to wind, the chiefs' heads quit of thee "

Another said "Why in this Wayside Inn
 Laboriously didst thou employ thyself,
 Since this is all that thou hast gained by toil?
 A narrow coffin is thme only wealth
 Thou seekest not the trumpet-call but choosest
 The bondage of a bier?"

Another said —
 "What time thy troops depart thou wilt remain
 All by thyself on this wide waste, good sooth^T
 With longing eyes pursue them as they go,
 And mourn thme own lost life with boundless woe "

§ 39

How the Mother and Wife of Sikandar lamented him

Then came Sikandar's mother hurrying,
 And long while pressed her visage over him
 She said "O thou illustrious king of kings,
 Lord of the world, star-favoured and devout'

¹ Reading with P

Near as thou art, thou art yet far from me,
 Far from thy host, thy kingdom, and thy people.
 May my soul wait on thine, and be their hearts
 Plucked out that joy hereat"

Then Rushanak
 Came full of anguish, saying " Noble Shah '
 Where are Dara, son of Darab, the master
 And up-stay of the world,¹ and all the kings
 Whose head the blast sent dustward on the day
 Of battle?[?] Like a fierce cloud charged with hail
 Wast thou and safe, I would have said, from death.
 With so much warfare, combating, and bloodshed
 In single action and in stricken field,
 I would have said that fate had given thee
 Safe conduct, and thou keepest from thy men
 The secret, yet hast thou, when thou hadst voided
 The world of chiefs, cast off the imperial crown,
 c 1361 And when the tree which thou hadst planted bore
 I see thee with the dust to comrade thee ""

Now when the Crown of heaven had set, and when
 The mighty men had had their fill of talk,
 They hid Sikandar's coffin in the dust.

To do such things the world is not afraid,
 It merely giveth back what it conveyed
 From wind at first, and this I hold to be
 Not clearly justice yet not tyranny
 To thee the how and why are hidden things,
 And past the reach of subjects and of kings.
 Yet beauty, kindness, generosity,
 With good and joyance, still are left to thee;
 And, be thou chief or subject, with such store
 I see not aught that thou canst wish for more,
 But if thou leavest here a name for vice
 Thoult lose God's grace and jocund Paradise.²

The ancient Hostel's wont is still the same,

¹ Couplet omitted

² Reading with P.

SIKANDAR

Sikandar went, but left behind him fame.
Though able six and thirty kings to slay
Where is his portion in the world to-day?
Ten cities were erected 'neath his sway,
All splendid, but ten thorn-brakes now are they.
He sought what no man ever sought before,
And wide-spread fame is left him but no more,
Yet fame is good for fame will not decay
Like some old dwelling weather-worn away
The barrier of Sikandar we have past,
May all be well and of auspicious cast,
And may the monarch of the world¹ be still
Of joyous heart and free from every ill.

§ 40

Fudausi's Complaint of the Sky and Appeal to God

High-springing arch of heaven^f Oh ' why dost thou,
When eld is on me, keep me thus forlorn'
Thou madest much of me in youth but now
Thou passest my decrepitude with scorn
The pampered blossoms take a sallow hue,
The pictured silk is cheapened by much stress
The dainty cypress-tree is bent in two
Within the garth, the bright lamp lustreless,
The mountain-top once black is capped with snow,
The soldiers mark the Shah's deficiencies
Thou wast a mother to me long ago,
Who needs shed blood-drops at thy tyrannies
I find no wisdom or good faith in thee,
Thy dark proceedings aggravate my lot
Oh¹ would that thou hadst never nurtured me,
Or, having nurtured, persecuted not'

¹ Mahmud

Whene'er I quit this gloom I will arraign
 This tyranny of thine before the Just,
 Of thee before the All Holy One complain
 With clamounngs and head bestrewn with dust
 C 1362 Time saw how eld increased my misery,
 But laid the more part of the blame on me,
 And thus to me high heaven made reply —
 " O thou that art not wronged and yet dost cry'
 Why lookest thou to me for good and ill?¹
 Do such complaints as thine become the sage?²
 In everything thou betterest me still,
 And canst the famine of thy soul assuage
 With knowledge Food sleep, choice of home are thme,
 To good and ill 'tis thme to seek the path,
 All that thou chargest is no fault of mine,
 For neither sun nor moon such knowledge hath.
 Ask Him that made them to be Guide to thee,
 Made day and night, religion, law, who saith —
 ' Be,' and all is as He would have it be
 A fool is he that knoweth other Faith
 In His creation T am but a thrall,
 A servant unto Him who fashioned me,
 To do His bidding is mine all in all
 I never swerve from His authority.
 Turn then to God, to Him for succour fly,
 Imploring no unconscionable boon,
 And own that none is master of the sky
 Save He that kindled Venus, Sun, and Moon
 His blessing on Muhammad's spirit be,
 And on his comrades all increasingly "¹

¹ See p 196

III

THE ASHKANIAN DYNASTY

XXI

THE ASHKANIANS

THEY REIGNED TWO HUNDRED YEARS

ARGUMENT

THE poet praises Sultan Mahmud and then, having no subject-matter in connexion with this dynasty, proceeds to narrate the story of the rise of the race of Sasan in the person of Ardshir Papakan and of his triumph over Ardawan, the last of the Ashkanians. He then goes on to tell of Ardshir's campaign against the Kurds, and of the strange case of Haftwad and the Worm.

NOTE

The abridgment of the epoch of the Ashkanians to 200 years is more drastic even than that of other Oriental writers. Mas'udi's curious explanation of this matter will be found later on.¹

In one respect at least the *Shahnama* presents a remarkable analogy to the land of its origin: the central portion of both is a barren waste. Of the five centuries and more that intervened between the day of the death of Sikandar (Alexander the Great) and that on which Ardshir Papakan (Artaxerxes I) was acclaimed King of kings by his victorious troops on the battle-field of Hurmuzdagan,² that is to say between June 13th B.C. 323 and September 26th A.D. 226, Firdausi knew absolutely nothing save a few names and the semi-mythical circumstances attendant on the coming into being of the second Persian or Sasanian Empire. Consequently, for convenience sake, the period covered by the Ashkanian dynasty has come to be regarded merely as a single reign—the twenty-first in the long series of the fifty Shahs. After all, however, this dearth of subject-matter in the core of the poem is not so complete as it seems. Firdausi took his

¹ See p. 251.

² *Id.* p. 199.

authorities as he found them, and long before his days Iranian tradition already had assigned all of heroic or noteworthy that had remained in memory of Ashkanian times to the mythical epochs of the Pishdadian and Kaianian dynasties. He spoke of the ancient tongue (Pahlavi) and of the paladins (Pahlavans), he told at large the gests of Karan, Gudarz, Giv, Bizhan, and others, but had no notion that he was dealing with words, names, personalities, and subject-matter, that had originated in a period dismissed by him in a few couplets as a legendary blank *. Again, apart from those heroes of secondary importance, there can be little doubt but that to the invasion of the Sacae, which took place in Parthian times,² we owe the Personification of that warrior-race, Rustam himself, the great paladin of paladins. The importance of the Ashkanian dynasty in the provenance of the subject-matter of the Shahnama therefore is much greater than superficially is apparent, and if all the legendary material of the poem could be replaced in its proper setting there would be no longer such discrepancies in length and interest between this and the two preceding dynasties. Historically of course it synchronises with one of the most important periods in the world's history, that of the successors of Alexander the Great, of the Parthian dynasty, and of the dominance of Rome. No one, least of all a translator, would wish that the Shahnama were longer, but one may regret that the misplaced material, which &o inordinately prolongs the Karanian dynasty, was not kept in its proper connexion in the Ashkanian. As things stand the latter is a mere prelude to the Sasanian dynasty, and is concerned with the rise to power of Ardshir Papakan, its founder, between which and that of Cyrus the Great there is a remarkable resemblance. In both cases there had been a previous incursion of nomads which had resulted in the establishment of their supremacy in western Iran. In the first case it was the Manda who, being confounded with the Mada or true Medes,³ brought about the establishment of the so-called Median Empire under which the dynasty of the Achremenids occupied a subordinate position in Elam and Pars till the successful rebellion of Cyrus, king of Elam, against his over-lord Astyages, and his other conquests, reduced all western Asia underneath his rule. In the second case it was the Parthians, also nomads, who established a like empire over the same regions, and under whom the rulers of the house of Papak or Sasan similarly occupied a subordinate position in Pars. As in the case of Cyrus, so Ardshir, the son of Papak, successfully rebelled against his over-lord, and founded a great

¹ Cf Vol iii p 8 seq² See Vol 1. p. 19.³ *Id* 17.

Persian empire Again, the rise to power of Cyrus and Ardshir was embellished in each case by legend In that of Cyrus two distinct accounts have come down to us, from Herodotus and Ctesias respectively The former is that given, *mutatis mutandis*, by Firdausi in his story of the early years of Kai Khusrau,¹ the latter was transferred in Iranian legend from Cyrus to Ardshir as Gutschmid pointed out, who says, speaking of the fable that forms the kernel of the story — "The hero is a Persian shepherd's son, from dreams shared by his parents the dream-interpreters predicted his future greatness, in his youth he came to the Median Court and there, through a strange fatality, has to do hard service, the crisis comes at last, and with it the flight of the hero to his home in Persis Directly he has fled the astrologers declare that unless he be brought back in a given time he certainly will gain the kingdom, which comes to pass This in a short sketch is the story of Aidshir, it is, however, exactly that of Cyrus, translated by Median hands but founded on Persian national sagas as given by Ctesias The resemblance extends even to trifles, horn the stable, where he has to do the most menial work, Ardshir starts on the flight which is to end in his gaining the sovereignty, at the moment when Cyrus resolves to break with Astyages he is met by a Persian slave, Horbaras, carrying horse's dung in a basket, and that is interpreted as a good omen, horse's dung signifying riches and might (Nicolaus of Damascus, fr. 66, by Muller, iii. p. 400). So great a similarity certainly is not accidental, rather we recognise in it an old national saga transferred from the founder of the old Persian kingdom to the founder of the new"²

The Iranian version of this legend, as applied to Ardshir, is extant in the Shahnama and in a Pahlavi text very similar in provenance and character to the Yatkari-i-Zariran with which we were concerned in the previous volume of this translation.³ The work in question begins, after an invocation to Urmuzd, thus — "In the history of Ardshir, son of Papak, the following is written " The word for " history " in the original is " karnamak," which is used now as the title of the extant work, and not of the one, now lost, from which it was taken Our extant Karnamak appears to date from the seventh century A.D., and is separable

¹ See Vol. II p

190

² GKS, III. 133.

³ See Vol. V. p. 24. The reader may be referred to the remarks there made as to the position of such works as the above as contributones to the main stream of Iranian legend.

into portions 'each of which once, in all probability, formed an independent legend' Thus we have

- 1 The adapted Cyrus legend.
- 2 Ardshir's war with the Kurds
- 3 The story of the Worm
- 4 The two stories of Shapur

These are strung loosely together as illustrations, each in its degree, of the process that led to the restoration of Iranian unity at the hands of Ardshir Papakan and his immediate successors. The subject-matter of the *Karnamak* corresponds with §§ 3-16 of the *Ashkanians*, and with §§ 1-6 of Ardshir Papakan, but, like the *Yatkar-i-Zariran* in *Dakiki's* case, it is not the actual authority followed by the poet but a collateral one. This is clear from the fact that it omits a very important passage given by *Firdausi*,¹ while it contains a somewhat touching episode which is not in the *Shahnama*, though it seems incredible that the poet should have made no use of it had he known it.² The episodes of the self-mutilation of Ardshir's minister,³ and of the game of polo, whereby the Shah recognised his son, also are lacking in the *Karnamak*, though the polo-episode is found there in another connexion.⁴ Other differences are due to *Firdausi's* more poetical and artistic way of looking at things, and to the toning down of the somewhat pronounced Zoroastrianism that appears in the *Pahlavi* original, but he may have found this already done in the version that he followed, which was, in all probability, that contained in the modern Persian tenth century prose *Shahnama*.⁵ The compilers of that work seem, however, on the whole to have preferred, or at all events for the most part to have followed, the Arabic versions, and this preference is reflected in the poem.

Wherever in the following notes a comparison is instituted between the *Karnamak* and *Firdausi* the former will be referred to as K and the latter as F

§ 1. In the text of C this forms the concluding portion of § 40 of the previous reign. We follow the arrangement in P.

For *Nasr*, who is referred to again under the title of *Abu'l Muzatfar* just below, see Vol 1 p 100

At first sight there seems to be a chance here of our being able to determine at what date this passage was written, owing to *Firdausi's* reference to some occasion on which *Mahmud* remitted a year's land-tax, but the fatality which attends all matters of date in the poem is operative even here, and there appears to be no account of this remission elsewhere.⁶

¹ See p 205 ² *Id.* p. 255 ³ *Id.* p. 261 seq. ⁴ *Id.* pp. 257, 271 seq.

⁵ See Vol. 1. p 67 seq ⁶ *Id.* 24, and *NIN*, p. 50, note.

§ 2 As to who the thane (*dihkan*) of Chach was nothing more seems to be known.

It is the fashion of Iranian legend to connect the dynasties by means of fictitious genealogies. Accordingly the Ashkanians are represented as being descended from Kai Arash, the second son of Kai Kubad, the words *Ashk* and *Arash* being sufficiently alike to have suggested the connexion. *Ashk* is a word expressive of kingly virtues such as "wise," "pure," "holy." In the West it took the form of *Arsaces*. In the Oriental lists of the kings of the Ashkanian dynasty the other names here mentioned by *Firdausi* occur, sometimes more than once. There are two *Ashks*, one *Shapur*, several of the name of *Gudarz*, one or two *Bizhans*, two or three *Narsis*, one or two of the name of *Urmuzd* or *Hirmuz*, no *Arash*, who perhaps is inserted in the *Shahnama* to keep up the nominal connexion with the second son of Kai Kubad, and three or four *Ardawans*.¹ The one here mentioned by *Firdausi* is the last of that name, and the poet, it appears, considered that his real name was *Bahrain*, but in the lists there is only one so called, and he is placed much earlier. Some account of *Bahram*, *Gudarz*, and *Bizhan*, in this connexion, has been given already.²

In the last reign we had *Firdausi's* story of the establishment by *Sikandar* of the system of Part or Tubal Kings and his motives in so doing.³ Though *Sikandar's* share in the matter is of course wholly unhistorical, the view taken in Iranian legend of the political system that obtained after his death is, broadly speaking, fairly correct. Iran never again was organised under one supreme head, as it had been in the days of the first Persian empire, till the establishment of the second empire five and a half centuries later. The death of Alexander was followed by long wars due to the rival ambitions of his generals and their descendants. Later on came wars with Rome and the rise of the Parthian power, which remained for centuries the great bulwark of the East against Roman aggression. The system of Parthian rule, however, was a nomad one. It originated in the victories of a nomad tribe, and it was to the nomads that the Parthian kings turned for succour in their hours of need. They called themselves indeed by the title of King of kings, as the Achæmenids did before them, and some of them at all events professed the same religion, but national Iranian tradition never recognised their right to use the ancient Persian title of supreme ruler though, in a sense, it was more applicable to them than to their pre-

¹ See the lists in GKS, 111. 24,

² See Vol. 111. p. 9 *seq.*

³ See p. 178 *seq.*

decessors With the Achæmenids it was a claim to universal sovereignty, with the Arsacids a claim to the suzerainty of Iran. The geographical extent of the lands ruled by themselves, or by their governors on their behalf, was not very great, and the remainder of their empire consisted of kingdoms that retained at least a semi-independence under native rulers Such, for instance, were the kingdoms of Osroene, Gordyene, and Atropatane (Azarbaijan) in the north, Elymars (Elarn) and Pars in the south, and Sistan and Bactria in the east Further, in the case of Pais, as we learn from Taban, and, we may presume, elsewhere also, these Part or Tubal Kings had under them small local kings or princes In the days of Firdausi's Aidawan, the last Parthian Great King, there seem to have been four such rulers in Pars, one of whom was Papak, under his immediate over-lord, the Part or Tribal King who ruled at Istakhi Thus in Parthian times Iran was split into two great divisions, one under the Parthian Great King and organised into eighteen provinces administered by satraps directly responsible to him, the other under semi-independent potentates who held the same position with reference to then regal underlings as he held towards them According to the Karnamak there were in all 240 kings, according to Arab authorities there were 90, so the Parthian over-lord was entitled to describe himself as King of kings

§§ 3—9. Tabari's account of the use of the Sasanian dynasty is briefly as follows —Ardshir was the son of Papak, king of Khir, and was born at a village named Tirudih in the same neighbourhood His grandfather, Sasan, was the superintendent of a Fire-temple in Istakhi His grandmother, Sasan's wife, was of the royal house of the Bazrangi, and was named Rambihisht. Papak succeeded his father, and to him was born Ardshir The king of Istakhr at that time was of the race of the Bazrangi, and his name was Guzihi He had a eunuch called Tiri whom he made commandant of Darabgird When Ardshir was seven years old his father Papak took him to see Guzihr, who lived at Baida,² and asked him to allow Tiri to bring up Ardshir, who ultimately was to succeed Tiri at Darabgird Guzihi assented, and Ardshir in course of time succeeded Tiri as had been arranged For a while he remained free from ambition till it was roused on him by the predictions of astrologers and the

¹ NK, p. 36, and *note*

² *Ie* "The White"—an Arabic translation of the Persian name of the hill-fort (now Bardi ?) of which a description will be found in Vol. 1. p. 236, *note*, but Professor Noldeke places it only six German miles north of Shirdz NT, p. 5, *note*

announcement to him by an angel¹ in a dream, that he was destined to rule Iran. Thereupon he began to assert himself by attacking and slaying three local kings in Pars, and setting up adherents of his own in their stead. He then wrote to his father Papak, urging him to rise against Guzihr at Barda. Papak did so, slew Guzihr, and took his crown. Then Papak wrote to Ardaw.in for permission to crown his (Papak's) son, Shapui, with the crown of Guzihr. Ardawan replied that Papak and Ardshir had acted as rebels. Papak died, his son Shapur became king and summoned his brother Ardshir to court. Ardshir refused to come, Shapur marched against him, but on the way to Darabgird was killed by the fall of part of one of the buildings of Humai². On this Ardshir went to Istakhi and, with the assent of his other brothers, became king. However, on the pretext, or in consequence, of a conspiracy on their part against him, he put many of them to death later on. He then reduced Darabgird, where the people had taken the opportunity of his absence to rebel against him. Next he conquered the king of Kuman, and annexed that district, of which he made one of his own sons governor. After this he slew Astawadh, a king on the coast of the Persian sea. Next he conquered Mihiak, a king in the district of Ardshir-Khurra, where he founded the town of GUT, and, while thus engaged, received a hostile letter from Ardaw.in, which he answered in a similar tone, and returned to Istakhi. After this he made three distinct expeditions horn Pars. In the first he subdued Ispahan, Ahwaz, a. district on the small Tigris,³ and other places. In the second he went to Ahwaz by way of Girih and Kazirun and on to Marshan where he built the town of Karakh-Marshan. In the third he encountered Ardawan at Hurmuzdag.in, slew him, and the same day was hailed King of kings. The date of this battle seems to have been September 26th, A D 226, but the actual site, according to Professor Noldeke, is unknown, and he is of the opinion that the three expeditions of Ardshir from Pars, mentioned above, correspond with the three battles that, according to Western writers, took place before Ardawan was disposed of for good and all.⁴ The plain of Ram Hurmuz, south of Shushtar, has been suggested as the probable scene of the decisive battle.⁵

§ 3 In the *Shahnama* the Sasaman dynasty is connected with the Karanian by a double genealogy, one already given under

¹ No doubt, as Professor Noldeke suggests, Surush in the original Pahlavi NT, 6, and *note*

² See Vol. v. p. 293

³ The Karun.

* NT, pp. 1-15, and *notes* Cf. RSM, 35 seq ⁶ *Id.*

the reign of Bahman,¹ the other here. Both are fictitious, Tabari's account making it clear with regard to the latter that Ardshir was the son, not the grandson on the female side only, of Papak.² In Tabari also two genealogies are given, both of which serve to connect the line of Papak with the Karamans. They run as follow —³

	II
Kai Manush (Minuchihr ?)	Luhrasp
Kai Ugi (?)	Gushtasp
Luhritsp	Asfandiyar
GushUsp	Bahman
	Sasan
Asfandiyar	
	Bihafrihd
Bahman	Zarar
	Papak
Sasan	Sasan
	Papak
Mihrmās	Ardshir
Papak	
Sasan	
Papak	
Sasan	

Two similar genealogies, tracing back the line of Ardshir to Papak, are given by Mas'udi.⁴ Neither he nor Tabari credits the legends, found in the Karnamak and in the Shahnama, that Sasan was a shepherd in the employment of Papak, who adopted him and gave him a daughter in marriage. In Firdausi Papak is called the son of Rudyab, but as the poet makes that name a rhyme word it is open to suspicion apart from the fact that it does not appear in any of the above-mentioned genealogies. The same reason, probably, led Firdausi (F) to put the visit of the master of the herds (ramah) to Papak in the winter-season (damah)—a touch not found in the Karnamak (K). In K Papak has three dreams. The first of them, in which he sees the sun

¹ See Vol v p 290.

³ NT, p 1

² See p 198.

⁴ MM, II 151.

illuminating the whole world from the head of Sasan, is not in F. In K too the three Fires are Fruba, representing the priestly class, Gushasp, the warrior-class, and Mihr Barzin, the agricultural.¹ The sending of Sasan to the bath, doubtlessly a very necessary preliminary, is not in the more primitive K

§ 4 Ardawan, the Artabanus III or IV. of Western writers, the last ruler of the Parthian dynasty, was legarded in Persian historical tradition as being himself the chief Tribal or Part King, the *primus inter pares*, not as the general suzerain, and as having Media Magna as his territory Hence F assigns him Rai as his capital²

K adds chess to the accomplishments learnt by Ardshir at Court, but F tells us further on, under the reign of Nushirwan, the story of its introduction into Persia

The present of money that accompanied Papak's reply to Ardshir is not mentioned in K

§ 5 The details of the slave-girl's descent by means of a lasso in order to visit Ardshir, and her name, are not in K, which omits too the mention of Papak's death and Ardawan's appointment of a successor, and makes Ardawan the Part King over Ispahan, Pars, and the neighbouring lands, and Papak himself the prince of Pars³

The account of the astrologers working out their calculations in the house of the slave girl, and her over-hearing them, is lacking in K, which gives no reason for her knowledge in the matter On the other hand the pronouncements of the astrologers are more elaborate and technical in K, where also they state that the servant who escapes from his master in the course of the next three days will supplant him⁴

§ 6 In K the fugitives arrive at a village, where they are afraid to stop, and are met by two women who tell Ardshir to fear not, and to hasten to the sea where he will be safe In F the fugitives reach a pool where they want to drink and rest, but are warned by two young men to hasten on In K Ardawan thrice in the course of his pursuit inquires of those whom he meets as to how far the fugitives are ahead On the third occasion it is a caravan that he comes upon F omits the caravan passage

For the mountain-sheep see Vol. I p. 374

§ 7 F is more detailed here In K the corresponding passage runs thus —" Then he (Ardawan) sent an equipped army to Pars,

¹ See Vol. 1. pp. 7, 130, 132

³ NK, p. 36.

² NT, p 7, note

NK, 1 42. Cf p. 195.

under his own son, to take Ardshir prisoner¹ In the meanwhile Ardshir went his way to the coast. As he proceeded, some of the men of Pars, who were hostile to Ardawan, handed over to him goods and chattels and their own persons, and promised him fealty and obedience "²

The city founded by Ardshir was called Riv-Ardshir³

§ 8. In K we have Banak of Ispahan with six sons for the Tabak of Jahram with seven sons of F The Persian for "seven" comes in handily as a rhyme-word, hence the change In K it is stated that Ardshir called the district where he first met Banak "Ramishn-i-Ardshir," i.e. "Joy of Ardshir," and founded a city there of the same name and also known as "Ram Ardshir," i.e. "Happy Aidshir "⁴ It was natural that he should, or be thought to, have founded a Fire-temple there, and this may be the origin of F's Ram in that connexion

The account of Ardshir's battle with Bahman, son of Ardawan, is not in K.

§ 9 Firdausi's description of this battle is in his usual style The corresponding passage in K may be read to indicate three battles or campaigns⁵ It runs as follows—"Then he (Ardshir) began war with Ardawan, slaughtered his whole army, and took from him his goods and chattels, houses, and property Then he settled in Istakhr, and assembled from Kirman, Makran, Ispahan, and the different regions of Pars, a very great host Then he began another war with Ardawan For four months there were daily much fighting and slaughter Ardawan collected from various regions—Rai, Damawand, Dilaman,⁶ and Patash-waigar⁷—armies and horses, but as the Majesty of the Karanians had descended on Ardshir he was successful, killed Ardawan, and all his possessions came into Aidshir's hands He took Ardawan's daughter to wife and went back to Pars "⁸

§§ 10, 11 Here we have the account of an "unfortunate incident," and shall meet, later on, with others that befell Ardshir after his triumph over Ardawan He still had to fight hard to make good the title of "King of kings" conferred on him by his troops on the field of Hurmuzdagan⁹ Naturally this would be so. A dynasty that had endured for centuries could not fail to have many adherents and dependants; Ardawan had left sons; Chosroes, the king of Armenia, was either his brother or at

¹ According to F Ardawan's eldest son, Bahman, was established already as ruler in Pars See p 218

² NK, p. 46. ³ NT, p 19, and *note*. ⁴ NK, p. 46.

⁵ Cf. p 199 ⁶ Gitan.

⁷ Tabaristan or Mazandaran

⁸ NK, p. 47, and *notes*

⁹ See p 199.

all events had been set on the throne by him, the Part Kings too had everything to lose by Ardshir's success, for it was manifest that he had no intention of leaving them in the semi-independent position that they had enjoyed under Parthian suzerainty, his view with regard to them was, as we have seen already, that "stone dead hath no fellow" ¹ Ardshir followed up his success over Ardawan by striking at the heart of that king's power which, according to Iranian tradition, lay in Media, and here is recorded for us in the account of his expedition against the Kuids, by whom the people of Media are meant, for in K the name of the Kurd king is Madik, which simply means "the Mede" ² These, so far as Media Magna was concerned, Ardshir seems to have conquered, but Tabari's statement that he subdued Azarbaijan and Armenia appears to be an exaggeration. The case of Azarbaijan is doubtful, but Armenia, whither some of the Arsacid princes had fled for refuge, succeeded with the help of Rome in maintaining its independence ⁶

§§ 12-16 To the exegesis of this strange story, as Firdausi calls it, three great authorities—Mohl, Darmesteter, and Noldeke—have contributed. The two latter see reason to connect it with other more ancient Indo-European myths of dragons, such as Indra with Vritra, Apollo with the Python, &c, and Darmesteter quotes an interesting Scandinavian parallel which he considers more primitive and unaffected by industrialism—"Le comte Herraudr a donné à sa fille, la belle Thora, un serpent qu'il a trouvé dans un œuf de vautour. Le serpent plaît à Thora qui lui fait un lit d'or dans un coffret. Le serpent grandit, l'or grandit avec lui, le collie devient trop trop pour lui, et même la maison de la jeune fille qu'il enveloppe de son corps. Il est si méchant et malicieux, nul n'osait l'approcher que l'homme qui lui apportait chaque jour sa nourriture, consistant en un bœuf entré. Le comte promet sa fille et l'or à qui tuera le dragon. Ragnai, âgé de quinze ans, se fait un vêtement garni de poix (pour se garder du poison du serpent), surprend le monstre et le tue de la pointe de son épée qu'il lui laisse dans la gueule. Il se retire sans dire son nom et plus tard se fait reconnaître publiquement au manche de son épée. Il reçoit Thora en mariage" ⁴

Still more to the point are Mohl's explanation and illustration, which are as follows—"Je suis disposé à croire que ce conte est un vague souvenir de l'introduction du ver à soie en Perse et de la prospérité que cette nouvelle Industrie devait avoir répandue. On me permettra peut-être de citer à l'appui de cette supposition

¹ See p. 199.

² NK, p. 48, and note

⁸ NT, p. 15, and note. Cf RSM, p. 37 seq. ⁴ DEI, 11 83

un conte analogue et presque aussi et range, qui date de nos jours. Je me rappelle avoir vu, il y a une trentaine d'annees, au ministere du commerce, un rapport du' prefet d'un des dc'partements de la Bretagne au sujet de la detresse que rc'pandait dans la campagne l'introduction du fil de lin produit par les machines, et de la difficulte que les fileuses a la main trouvaient a lutter contre cette concurrence. Le prefet raconte, a cette occasion, que ces pauvres femmes avaient fini par composei une legende, selon laquelle il y avait une f'e, appelee *Machine*, qui avait sept doigts d'acier et pouvait ainsi filer plus et plus vite qu'elles ne pouvaient le faire avec leurs cinq doigts humams " ¹

The full process of silk manufacture from the worm (*Bomby mori*) to the finished fabric was known in China from time immemorial, and the secret was guarded very carefully. Long before the Christian era the raw silk had begun to be imported into Europe, and a famous manufactory for weaving it was established in the island of Cos in the AEgean Sea. The secret of the method of the production of the raw material itself was kept till much later times, sufficiently, at all events, for the maintenance of the Chinese monopoly, though Aristotle in his *History of Animals*, Bk V, ch xvii, sec 6, ed Schnerder, speaks of a certain great worm with horns, as it were, which produces bombycina or cocoons which the women use in weaving. Aristotle's knowledge probably came to him as one of the results of Alexander's expedition to the East. The silk-worm itself, of which the secret had spread during the fourth century A.D. through India to Iran and the West, was brought for the first time into Europe by two Persian monks, at the special request of the Emperor Justinian, 111 AD 550. They smuggled the eggs from China in the hollow of a bamboo, and thus founded the Western silk industry. Justinian's object was to break the monopoly of the silk-trade then, by land and sea alike, in Persian hands²

Two reasons may be suggested why the scene of our story was laid on the shores of the Persian sea. One is that a Part King of that legion, e.g. of Hurmuz (Ormuz), may have grown rapidly rich in the latter days of the Parthian dynasty by means of the silk or cotton trade of the Persian Gulf, and suffered for his prosperity at the hands of Ardashir Papakan. The other is to be found in the popular etymology of the word Kirman—a region

¹ P, Vol. v, Preface

² See GDF, v. 56 seq., *Ency Brd*, nth ed s.i. "Silk", and SP, pp. 179. 263

more famous for its date (khurma) than for its silk. In Persian, however, it so happens that "kirm" means "worm," and in fact is the same word. Kirman was supposed to mean "The Land of the Worm," and thus to be a suitable scene for some ancient Dragon-myth,¹ or a story may have been invented to account for the name. Both in K and F, it should be noted, Ardshir, after killing the Worm, proceeds to conquer Kirman, so that we have the romantic and historic accounts of the same event put side by side, the former given at large and the latter very shortly. In Tabari too we have the historic version and two brief rationalised versions of the romantic side of the story. He informs us that Ardshir subdued Kirman, slew its king Balash (Vologeses, an Arsacid), and made his own son ruler. This is represented as taking place before the war with Ardawan. Then (here begins one of the romantic versions) he went against a king named Astawadh, who lived on the coast of the Persian sea, and to whom divine honours were paid, killed him, cut him in two with his sword, slew also his retinue, and brought out from his treasure-house, and earned oft, much treasure that was stored there.² Astawadh, Professor Noldeke notes, is a corruption by misreading of the Pahlavi name,³ which becomes Haftwad in the Shahnama. According to the other account there was in Alar, a village in the province of Kujaran, which belonged to the coast-land of Ardshii-Khurra (Gur), a queen who enjoyed divine honours and possessed great wealth and many soldiers. Ardshir, toward the end of his reign, killed the queen and captured much gold and treasure which she had.⁴

In these accounts divine honours are transferred, in the first, from the dragon to Haftwad and, in the second, to his daughter.

§ 12 This passage is not found elsewhere, but there is no reason to assume that the poet invented, though very likely he embellished, it. From what we can gather of Firdausi's literary methods, he would not have introduced such a string of incidents without authority for so doing. When "gravelled for lack of matter," he does not "take occasion to" invent, but passes on as we see in the case of the present dynasty, where he had an unequalled opportunity for the exercise of his imagination had he been disposed to avail himself of it. The absence of the passage in the Karnamak and in the Arabic may be accounted for easily. In the former, Haftwad (Haftanbukht) is introduced quite abruptly,⁵ and the story of his rise to power was omitted not

¹ DEI, II 81. ² NT, p 10 ³ See p 206. ⁴ NT, p 19

⁵ "But the army of Haftsinbukht, the lord of the Worm, attacked him (Ardshir)," &c ; NK, p 49

because it was well known or unknown, but because it was foreign to the purpose in hand, which was to show by what steps Ardashir rose to supreme power, effected the unification of Iran, and founded a new dynasty. From this point of view the destruction of Haftwad and the Worm was of importance, but not their genesis. In the latter we have a much more drastic system of lopping in the interests, apparently, of rationalism. In the second *pi* Tabari's versions we get a hint that it was the one which, in its unrationalised state, Firdausi followed. The queen there is the daughter here.

The name of Ardashir's opponent in K—Haftanbukht, which does not scan—becomes Haftwad in F, as it may be so read in the Pahlavi if the central letters are omitted. Haftanbukht, according to Professor Noldeke, means "The Seven have redeemed" with reference to the seven planets which, as creations of Ahriman¹ might be expected, from the orthodox Zoroastrian point of view, to watch over the fortunes of Haftanbukht and the Worm. In Professor Darmesteter's opinion, however, Firdausi's etymology is correct, though based on a misapprehension. The word "wad" was due to a misreading of the Pahlavi, but the word "bukht" does mean "son," and the seven sons are the sevenfold coils, or the seven heads, of the dragon. Both agree that in the original form of the story Haftanbukht was the dragon.²

According to K, Haftanbukht's seat was at Gular in Kujaran. In Tabari, Haftanbukht becomes Astawadh, and Gular, in the version which substitutes a queen for a king, becomes Alar.³ The situation of Kujaran is unknown.

In K the food of the dragon is the blood of sheep and bullocks,⁴ not rice, milk, and honey, as in F.

§ 13 In K the army of Haftanbukht is represented as the aggressor. The forces of Ardashir, who is not present, are attacked after his return from his victory over the Kurds. This preliminary engagement is omitted by F. Haftwad's son crossed over from Arabia to help his father.⁵ The water behind Ardashir was probably the sea, but the Persian word is a vague one.

§ 14 In K the older form Mithrak is preserved. According to Tabari, who places Ardashir's war with him before the defeat of Ardawan, he lived in a district of Ardashir-Khurra.⁶

§ 15 In K Ardashir, after his defeat by Haftanbukht, reaches the shore of the sea quite alone and almost abandoned by the

¹ See Vol. 1 p. 52 ² Cf NK, pp 29, 49, and note, DEI, 11 82.

³ NK, p 50, NT, pp 10, 19 ⁴ NK, p 56 ⁵ *Id* 49-52, and notes.

⁶ NT, p 11

divine Grace, but then it stood in front of him and led him out of danger to the village where the two brothers, named Burjak and Burjatur, dwelt¹

In K Ardshir gets admitted into the castle with the two young men of the village only. In F he takes seven men with him. Seven is a favourite number in Persian story, and if, as we have seen above, one of the legends told of Cyrus the Great could be transferred to Ardshir, there seems no reason why a fragment of the legend of the Seven, who made the famous expedition against the stronghold of the mage Gaumata—the false Smerdis—in the days of Darius Hystaspis, should not be transferred here in like manner.² In K Ardshir appoints, for some reason not clear to us, the 27th day of the month as the one for decisive action, and Haftanbukht appears to have perished in the fight, not afterwards by formal execution as in F.⁸

§ 1

The Praise of Mahmud

Now be the monarch of the world our theme
 As one in feast and fight and lore supreme—
 The great Mahmud ; much prosperous rede hath he
 And doth uphold the fame of majesty,
 A king, Abu'l Kasim' most sage and wise
 Beyond e'en wisdom in his policies.
 Glad be his heart for evermore and free
 From toil and trouble King of kings is he
 Both of Iran and of Zabuhstan,
 And from Kannuj⁴ up to Kabuhstan.
 On him, upon the troops of his command,
 On his allies, his kindred, and his land,
 On that world-lord and chief, Nasr the amir,
 A source of joyance to time's circling sphere,
 Be praise, while o'er the moon the army's head
 Ascendeth by Abu'l Muzaffar led,

¹ NK, p 53

² Cf Vol 1 p 58, DHA, vi. 201 seq

³ NK, p 56, and note.

⁴ Cf. Vol 1. p 99.

By fortune and by name victorious he,
Whose arrows in their flight out-top the tree.
Oh¹ may the Shah live scathless evermore,
And be his seat upon his treasury's store,
And may his general be happy too,
In heart illumed, in treasure well to do.
Thus while revolving heaven maintain its place
Ne'er may its love be severed from this race,
But be it ever a victorious one,
And crowned from sire to sire and son to son
Upon this day, the fourteenth of Shawwal,
May benediction on our sovereign fall
c 1363 For this good news about the tax—that he,
The Shah with Grace and crown, hath made decree
To claim no contribution for a year
From men of ardent Faith and godly fear.
The age of Nushirwan hath come anew,
And all hath been transfigured to our view.
When on this wise no little time hath sped,
And when the robe of right shall be outspread,
Thou'lt see him (such his justice and his love¹)
Receive the robe of honour from above—
One that upon him ne'er will wear away,
While on his head the imperial crown will stay
May his head flourish, harm approach not near,
His magnanimity transcend heaven's sphere.
One telling o'er the years and months that I
Have lived will not despise my prophecy.
Look well, because this book a flag will be
O'er sages' heads to all eternity,
And, in original, will seem to spring
From Gaiumart whose praise all people sing.
Thus Nushirwan, son of Kubad, once said —
" When any monarch turn from right his head
Heaven will black out the patent of his reign,
The stars acclaim him not as king again.

Injustice is the notice to depart
To kings that vex the blameless to the heart "¹
For ever may this family, endued
With worth, with wisdom, and with rectitude,
Continue Lasting foothold here hath none,
But his good name will last when he is gone
Where now are Faridun, Zakhak, Jamshid,
The chiefs of Arab and of Persian breed?²
Where are the great of the Sasamans,
Those of Bahrain's race, and the Ashkanians?
Zakhak the Shah was most reviled, for he
Was all injustice and impurity,
While glorious Faridun approval won,
He died, and his renown still liveth on.
In this world fame is our memorial—
A better thing than gems imperial'
The man unjust, whose joyance was in throne
And treasure, never hath made praise his own,
His reputation in the world is naught,
And none is fain to pleasure him in aught.
Because of our foe-quelling king's decree
May he still throne it in felicity.
Forth from their homes the people plain-ward hied,
With praise transcending heaven, and thus they cried .—
" Aye may he live, the crowned head of our state,
And may time's course to him prove fortunate,
Here may he look on naught save what doth please,
His name be graven on the palaces,
And may our benisons withal embrace
His kin, host, land, his royal form, and face."

¹ Similar sentiments were attributed to Ardshir Papakan. See p. 283

§ 2

The Tribal Kings

- C. 1364 O thou that singest in extreme old age'
 Now let the Ashkamans' times thy thoughts engage.
 What hath the author of the history /
 Still left to tell us from the legendry?
 What mighty chieftains hath he to enthrone
 Upon the world, Sikandar being gone?
 The thane of Chach, mine author, saith that none
 Thenceforward had the throne and crown, but princes,
 Brave, headstrong, proud, and scions of Arash,
 Each in his corner made himself a realm
 Out of some portion of the provinces,
 And when they sat rejoicing on their thrones
 Folk called them "Tribal Kings." Two centuries
 passed,
 And thou hadst said "There is no Shal ." These
 princes
 Kegarded not each other, and earth rested,
 Sikandar having ordered matters thus,
 To guard the land of Rum. The first was As hk,
 Sprung from Kubad, while others were Shapi ir,
 A royal warrior, Gudarz the Ashkaman,
 Bizhan of Karan lineage, Narsi,
 The great Urmuzd, Arash a warrior famed,
 And after him the noble Ardawan,
 Wise, prudent, and of ardent soul, for when
 Bahram, the Ashkaman, sat upon the throne
 He lavished treasure on the poor, but folk
 Were wont to call him Ardawan¹ the Great
 Because he kept the wolfs claws from the sh reep.
 He governed in Shiraz and Ispahan,

¹ *Ie arta*=great, and *wjin or brin*=a guardi an.

Which scholars call the " Marches of the princes."
 He set up in Istakhr Papak¹ as ruler,
 Whose thumb-stall used to make the monsters² yell.
 How all these princes perished, root and branch,
 Their time-worn chronicle narrateth not.
 Naught have I heard of them except the name,
 And in the Book of Kings seen but the same.

§3

*How Papak saw Sasan in a Dream and gave him a
 Daughter in Marriage*

Now when Dara had perished in the war, C 135
 And all his family had had their day,
 He left one son behind—a potent prince,
 A wise and valiant man by name Sasan,
 Who, when he saw his father slam, and fortune
 Averse from the Iranians, fled before
 The host of Rum and 'scaped the net of bale.
 He died in wretched plight in Hindustan,
 And left a little boy. Thus every sire
 Throughout four generations gave his son
 The name Sasan. They all were camel-drivers,
 Or shepherds, and hard workers all their years.
 The youngest of the race came to Papak,
 Beheld his master-shepherd on the plain,
 And said " Hast thou employment for a hireling,
 Whose life is being spent in sore distress ?"

The master-shepherd took that luckless one,
 And worked him day and night. His industry

¹ In the text the Arabic form of the word "Babak" is used, but the proper Persian form is Papak, which we have adopted throughout

² The word is the same as that used in the previous reign to describe the monsters on which Yajuj and Majuj fattened in the spring. See p. 164.

Found favour, and he rose to be chief shepherd.

Papak, son of Rudyab, one night thus dreamed •—
 He saw upon a mighty elephant
 Sasan and in his hand a Indian sword,
 While all that came to him saluted him,
 And did him homage, he addressed them kindly,
 And purged their gloomy hearts of grief. Next night,
 When sleeping much perturbed, he dreamed about
 Fire-worshippers who bore three blazing Fires,
 Such as Azargashasp, Kharrad, and Mihr,¹
 Bright as Sol, Mars, and Venus, all blazed up
 Before Sasan, their fuel aloë-wood.

Papak awoke, his soul and heart possessed
 By care Those skilled in dreams and in that lore
 Puissant, magnates, sages, counsellors,
 Assembled in the palace of Papak,
 And as he set forth what had chanced, and told
 His dreams to them at large, the adviser mused,
 The interpreter gave ear, and in the end
 Said "O exalted king¹ this must be scanned,
 C. 1366 For one whom thou beheldest thus in sleep
 Will raise his head above the sun as Shah,
 Or, if the dream be not of him, his son
 Will have the world."

Papak rejoiced on hearing,
 Rewarded each according to his rank,
 Then bade his master-shepherd to forsake
 The flock and come. It was a winter's day
 Wrapped in his cloak, its wool was thick with snow,
 His heart with fears, he came in haste. Papak
 Dismissed all strangers, slave and counsellor
 Went, and he graciously received Sasan,
 Assigning him a seat beside his lord,
 And asked him of his quality and birth.
 The herd, through terror of him, answered not,

¹ The names of Fire-temples

But said at last: " O prince¹ if thou wilt give
 A promise to respect thy shepherd's life
 I will inform thee of my quality
 When thou shalt grasp my hand and pledge thyself
 To harm me not in public or in private "

Papak, on hearing this, loosed his own tongue,
 Invoked the Giver of all good, and said •—
 " I will not harm but make thee glad and honoured,"

Then spake the youth " I am, O paladin¹
 Son of Sasan and sprung from Shah Ardshir,
 Whom chroniclers call by the name Bahman,
 The great son of the brave Asfandiyar,
 Who was Gushtasp's memorial."

Papak

Wept from those shrewd eyes that had seen the dream,
 Then brought the raiment of a paladin,
 And steed with royal trappings, saying thus —
 " Go to the bath what while they fetch fresh raiment "

He raised Sasan o'er that chief shepherdship,
 Prepared for him a noble residence,
 And, having lodged him there, provided slaves,
 Both boys and girls, to wait on him, bestowed
 Addition by all means, set him past need
 Of wealth, then gave the Crown on his own brows—
 A daughter well beloved—to him as spouse.

§4

*How Ardshir Papakan was born, and of his Case with
 Ardauan*

When nine months had elapsed the beauteous dame
 Brought forth an infant like the radiant sun,
 The image of illustrious Ardshir,
 A growing, glorious, heart-delighting child.
 His sire withal, who joyed to gaze upon him,

c.

Named him Ardshir and fostered him through all
His years of need. A long while thus elapsed
(The learned now call him Papakan Ardshir ¹)
They taught him all accomplishment, wherein
He bettered e'en the promise of his birth.
He was so wise and goodly that the sky,
Thou wouldst have said, was luminous through him.
News of the youth's intelligence and knowledge
Reached Ardawan " He is a savage Lion
In fight," it ran, " and like Nahid in feast "

The king wrote to that famous paladin,
Papak, and said " O counsellor of mine,
Wise, trusty, eloquent, and good ' thy son,
Ardshir, is, I have heard, a cavalier
Of eloquence and heed. On reading this
Be pleased to send him unto us forthwith.
I will supply his every want, advance him
Among the chiefs and, when he is associate
With mine own sons, deny him not my kinship "

Papak, on reading this, wept tears of blood ,
He bade a writer, and that rising youth,
Ardshir, attend, and said " Peruse this letter
Of Ardawan's and let thy clear mind scan it,
Behold, I write an answer to the king,
And send it by some friend to this effect —
' Lo i I have sent to thee a gallant youth,
One much approved, who is my heart and eyes,
And whom I have advised When he shall come
To thy high court treat him right royally,
And suffer not the blast to blow upon him.'"

Then swift as wind he oped the treasury-doors,
And gratified the youth with various gifts
Of golden harness, swords, and iron maces,
There was not aught that he refused the boy.

¹ He is generally known as Ardshir Pdpakdn, *i e.* Ardshir of the family of Papak.

The treasurer brought forth brocade, dinars,
Steeds, slaves, with stuffs of Chin and cloth of gold,
Such as kings wear, and gave them to the youth
What time he went to wait on Ardawan.
The favoured youth, departing from his grandsire,
Went to the court of Ardawan at Rai,
Who, hearing of his coming, graciously
Received him, spake at large about Papak,
Assigned Ardshir a place beside the throne, c 1368
Lodged him near by, fed, clothed, and furnished him
Now when the sun sat on its throne, and when
The world became fair as a Ruman's face,
Ardshir called for a servant and therewith
The gifts of obligation, and dispatched
The envoy of Papak, the paladin,
To Ardawan, the king, who viewed the gifts,
They pleased him, and the young man profited
Thereby the monarch held him as a son
A while passed well with him. The twain consorted
In revel, feast, and at the chase

One day

It happened that the escort of the king,
And his own sons, were scattered in the chase.
Ardshir himself attended Ardawan,
Who found that gallant youth acceptable
Now Ardawan had four sons of his own,
Each king-like Onager had come in sight,
And that great company was all astir.
They urged their wind-foot steeds and mixed the dust
With sweat. Ardshir pressed on in front and, nearing
The quarry, placed an arrow on his bow,
And struck an onager upon the haunch.
The arrow-point and feather went right through.
Anon came Ardawan who, when he saw
The strength of that young archer, cried " May he
That shot possess a soul to match his hand."

Ardshir replied: " I shot the onager."
 A son said " It was I that brought it down,
 And I am looking out for one to match it."

Ardshir retorted " Well the plain is broad,
 And there are onagers and arrows too
 By that same token slay another such
 It is a sin for noble men to lie "

Now Ardawan was angry with Ardshir
 Thereat and roared at him " Mine is the blame,
 Because this bringing up is all mine own.
 Why should I have thee in my company,
 Both in the banquet and the hunting-field,
 In order that thou mayst surpass my sons,
 And show off thine address and excellence?
 Begone. See to mine Arab steeds and choose

C 1369 A handy residence. Be stable-master,
 And keep all companies.¹

Ardshir in tears
 Went to be keeper of the Arab steeds,
 And in his wretchedness and discontent
 Wrote to his grandsire thus " In what a way
 Hath Ardawan dealt with us! Anguish take
 His body, care his soul."

He told the matter,
 And why king Ardawan was wroth with him.
 Papak was troubled when the letter came,
 But held his peace, and from his treasury
 Dispatched ten thousand to his son in gold
 By camel and by cavalier, commanded
 A scribe to come, and wrote " O foolish boy !
 When thou wast hunting game with Ardawan
 Why didst thou pass his sons although thou art
 His servant, not his kin ? He wronged thee not
 In malice, 'twas thine own insensate deed.
 Now strive to make him pleased and satisfied,
 And do his will in all. I have dispatched thee

Gold and this letter of advice withal
 When thou hast spent the money ask for more
 Until the times shall change."

The dromedary

Sped with the ancient veteran to Ardashir,
 Who when he read the letter was content,
 And plotted and dissembled, chose a lodging
 Near to his steeds, though one not worthy of him,
 Provided it with carpets, food, and raiment,
 And spent his days and nights in revelry,
 Companioning with wine and minstrelsy¹

§5

*How Ardaman's Slave-qal fell in Love with Ardashir and
 how he fled with her to Pars*

Now Ardawan possessed a lofty palace,
 Wherein there dwelt a favourite slave of his.
 She was a Moon-face hight Gulnar²—a picture
 All jewelry and colour and perfume
 She ministered to Ardawan and kept
 His treasury He loved her more than life,
 And joyed and smiled to look on her³ One day,
 When she had mounted to the palace-roof,
 And gladdened at that mirth,⁴ she saw Ardashir,
 His lips were smiling, and he won her heart.
 She waited till the eve or rather night,
 Then tied a lasso to the battlements
 With many a knot She proved it with her hand,⁵
 And then, invoking Him who giveth good,
 Descended boldly. When in all her gems,

¹ Following the division of the text in P.

² I.e. Pomegranate bloom

³ In C the section ends here.

⁴ See above.

⁵ " la lanca avec sa mam " (Mohl)

And savouring musk and other spicery,
 She reached Ardshir she raised his head, which lay
 Upon the pillow of brocade, and clasped him,
 When he was wakened, tightly to her breast.
 The young man marked that lovely one, her face,
 Her hair, and scented bravery, and said —
 " Whence hast thou sprung to grace my troubled heart ?"

" A slave am I and love thee, heart and soul,"
 She answered. " I am Ardawan's beloved,
 His treasurer, his darling, and delight,
 But, if thou wilt accept me, thy slave now
 To live but in thy sight and visit thee,
 Whene'er thou wilt, and brighten thy dark days."

A while passed thus and then mishap befell
 Ardshir's inspirer. Veteran, shrewd Papak
 Died and resigned this ancient home to others.
 When news reached Ardawan he sorrowed much,
 His soul grew dark The chiefs all asked for Pars,
 But he bestowed it on his eldest son,¹
 Bade bring the drums and march forth to the waste.
 As for Ardshir the world gloomed to his heart
 For his protector's sake, old, shrewd Papak.
 He loathed his service under Ardawan,
 And, when those tidings came, formed new designs,
 For he was rash through grief and fain to flee

Anon king Ardawan brought to his court
 Some shrewd men of the readers of the stars
 To learn his future, to direct his course,
 And find whom fortune would inspire thereafter

c 1371 He sent them to the mansion of Gulnar
 To make their observations of the stars.
 They worked for three days at his horoscope,
 The treasurers could hear the talk thereon
 And other secrets, and spent all the days
 And three-fourths of the night in listening

¹ Bahman, as we learn later on, pp. 225 seq , 259

With longing heart and sighs upon her lips,
But very mindful of each word that passed.
Upon the fourth day these shrewd men set out
To tell the secrets to king Ardawan,
And with their magic tablets at their breasts
Went to him from the damsel's dwelling-place.
They told the secrets of the lofty sky,
To whom it turned, the time, and the degree:—
" A thing will happen at no distant date—
A matter that will wring the monarch's heart.
The least among his magnates will take flight,
A chieftain of high birth, a warrior,
And afterward become a mighty king,
A world-lord fortunate and fortune-giving "

The heart of that renowned and prosperous prince
Was in great dudgeon at their words.

The damsel,

When all was black as pitch, went to Ardshir.
That youth was troubled like the sea and could not
Rest for one day because of Ardawan
She told him what those shrewd men had apprised
The famous king, whereat Ardshir grew calm
And silent yet his heart was moved thereat.
He thought of flight and asked " If I quit Rai
And seek Iran, the country of the brave,
Consider whether thou wilt go with me,
Or tarry with the king If thou wilt go
Thou shalt be great, the Crown of all the realm."

She said with many a sigh and bitter tears :—
" Thy slave am I, and death alone shall part us "

Ardshir replied " We must escape to-morrow,"
And she went back resolved to risk her all.

As soon as earth was gilded by the sun,
And dark night had been taken in the noose,
She oped the treasury and made her choice
Among the royal gems, took what dinars

c. 1372 She needed, went back to her home, and there
 Secured the jewels, waited till the night
 Rose o'er the hills, till Ardawan was sleeping,
 The coast all clear, then quitting arrow-like
 The palace, took the jewels to Ardshir.
 She found the atehng with cup in hand,
 And all the equeries in drunken sleep.
 He had picked out two noble steeds, and these
 Were feeding ready saddled in their stalls.
 When he beheld Gulnar, the gold, and rubies,
 He laid the cup aside and forthwith bridled
 The Arab steeds, put on his armour, mounted,
 And grasped a watered sword The lady rode
 The other steed, and so they fled together
 Toward Pars with gladsome hearts.

Now Ardawan

Was never happy either day or night
 Without the fair Gulnar and would not quit
 His couch unless in her auspicious presence.
 When it was time to rise and have the throne
 Draped with brocade, and still the damsel came not,
 He was both angry and aggrieved at her.

The guards were posted at the gate without,
 Throne, crown, and palace were in readiness
 While from the court-gate rose the chamberlain,
 Approached the famous king, and said " There wait
 The chief men of the kingdom at the gate."

§ 6

*How Ardawan heard of the Flight of Ardshir with the Damsel
 and punned them*

The monarch asked the slaves • " Why doth Gulnar
 Neglect the rule and come not to my pillow?
 Is she offended with me ?"

Thereupon

The chief scribe entered, saying • " Yesternight
Ardshfr went off incontinent and took
A grey steed and a black steed from the stables—
The riding horses of the illustrious king—
Companioned by thy well-loved treasures."

The warrior-king much moved bestrode his bay,
Escorted by a host of gallant horsemen •
Thou wouldst have said " He goeth over fire."

Upon the road he saw a place of note
With many men and cattle, and inquired —
" Did any hear the sound of hoofs ere day?
Did two pass on a grey steed and a black?"

C 1373

One said " Two passed on two steeds desertward,
And at their heels a goodly mountain-sheep,
Which kicked the dust up horse-like "

Ardawan

Said to his minister " Why ever went
The mountain-sheep with them ?"

He made reply •—

" It is his Grace—the wings that will exalt him
To kingship through the favour of the stars.
If this sheep followeth him our task is lengthened."

There Ardawan dismounted, ate, and rested,
Then hurried on. They followed up Ardshir,
And Ardawan m person led the way
With his wazir. Swift as a blast the youth
Rode with the damsel with no moment's pause,
But he who hath high heaven for his ally
Will take no harm from any enemy.

Ardshir at length, exhausted by the ride,
Beheld a pool of water from the height,
And as he rode said to Gulnar " Since we
Have wedded toil, dismount we by this pool,
For steed and rider are alike fordome.

Repose we here and drink and start refreshed."

Now when the twain had drawn anigh the water

Their visages as yellow as the sun,
 And when Ardashir was fain to light him down,
 He saw beside the watering-place two youths,
 Who called out quickly: " There is need to ply
 The reins and stirrup still for thou hast 'scaped
 Thus far the breath and gullet of the Dragon,
 And to drink water now will cost thee dear,
 Yea even thy life."

Ardshir, on hearing this,
 Said to Gulnar " Attend to what they say."
 He pressed his stirrups, gave his steed the reins,
 And laid his glittering spear upon his shoulder.
 Behind them Ardawan like rushing wind
 Continued the pursuit with soul all gloom.
 When half the day had passed, and while the
 orb—

The lustre of the world—still paced the sky,
 He saw a city—one in goodly case—
 Whence many flocked to meet him, and he asked
 The archimages "When passed two on horse-
 back?"

Their leader said " O prosperous, prudent king!
 Just as the sun was growing pale, and night
 Spread out the cloak of lapis-lazuh,

C 1374 Two hurried through the city, soiled with dust
 And parched with thirst, while after one of them
 There came a mountain-sheep, and I have seen
 None like it pictured in the palaces!"

Said the wazir to Ardawan, " Stop here,
 Unless thou wilt return and get thee ready
 Both soldiers and the implements of war,
 Because the fashion of this strife hath changed
 In that his fortune backeth him; to follow
 Is but to grasp the wind. Write to thy son,
 And tell him all. Perchance he may discover
 Trace of Ardashir whom we must suffer not

To milk this mountain-sheep."¹

Now Ardawan,
On hearing this, knew that it was too late,
And so alighting at that city prayed
To God—the Giver of all good—for aid.

§7

How Ardawan wrote to Bahman, his Son, to take Ardshir

At-dawn the monarch bade the host return,
And pale as reeds re-entered Rai by night
He wrote a letter to his son and said —
Deceit hath taken action, and Ardshir
Hath left me quicker than the shaft the bow,
And gone to Pars Seek for him privily,
But say no word to any "

For his part
Ardshir approached the water and thus prayed:—
" O Thou who art our Helper' Thou hast saved
Me from my foeman never may he prosper.'

Now when he had reposed he called a boatman,
And spake much of the past. The shrewd, old sailor
Observed Ardshir's high stature, mien, and breast,
Knew " He can be but of the Karan stock,"
Rejoicing in his Grace and Majesty,
Then hasting to the water sent his boats
To every part. At news of famed Ardshir
A host assembled by the water-side,
While in Istakhr the kindred of Papak
All gloried at those tidings of the Shah,
While those too of Dara, who dwelt resigned
About the realm, exulted and grew young
Of heart though old, while troop on troop the folk

¹ Or, reading with P, " We must not let this mountain-sheep turn lion."

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

C. 1375 Flocked to the youth from mountain and from sea,
And from each city counsellors and sages
Assembled round that claimant of the world.
The young Ardshir loosed tongue and said " Ye chiefs
Of ardent soul! of all this noble throng
There is no sage or counsellor but knoweth
What shame the infamous Sikandar¹ wrought
Upon the world, slew all mine ancestors,
And laid his hand on it unrighteously.
Now I am one sprung from Asfandiyar,
Yet Ardawan is king' We may not speak
Or think of this as just If ye will help me
I will not yield the crown and lofty throne
To any. What have ye to say hereto ?
Give me a fair reply."

Then all the assembly,
Both warriors and counsellors, stood up,
And, speaking from their hearts, made answer thus- —
'All we that are the kindred of Papak
Rejoice to see thy face, and we that are
Descendants of Sasan will gird ourselves
For vengeance. We are thine both soul and body,
Our joys and griefs, our less and more, are thine.
Thy quality from father and from mother
Surpasseth ours, the sovereignty and sway
Are thine of right, and we at thy command
Will turn the hills to plains, and with our swords
Make streams run blood."

Ardshir's head, when he heard
That answer, rose o'er Mercury and Venus,
He blessed the chiefs and mused upon revenge,
He founded by the water-side a city
To be his seat of power. An archimage
Said: " Well-starred Shah who winneth over hearts !
Thou fram'st anew the head of sovereignty,

¹ Observe the Sasaman view of Sikandar. Cf. p. 15

But must clear Pars of Weeds and afterward
Make war on Ardawan, whilst thou and fortune
Are young, because in treasure he surpasseth
The other Tribal Kings, 'twill tax thy strength
To fight with him, but when thou hast cast down
His throne none else will hold his own with thee "

Whenas the illustrious Ardshir heard this
The words approved themselves and pleased his heart,
And when the sun rose from the mountain-tops
He set forth from the water toward Istakhr.
News reached Bahman, the son of Ardawan,
And filled him, heart and soul, with grief and gloom.
He tarried not upon the throne of might,
But gathered troops and weapons for the fight.

§3

*How Tabak helped Ardshir, fought with Bahman, and
conquered him*

There was a noble hight Tabak, possessed
Of arms, of soldiery, and prudent counsels,
The ruler of the city of Jahiam,
A veteran sage and one whose word was law.
He had seven noble sons, and at the news
About Ardshir went from Jahram to him,
With tymbals and a host, prepared for battle,
Abandoning Bahman. When he beheld
Ardshir he lighted as the custom was,
Ran to him, kissed his feet, and spake at large
Of the Sasanians. The atheling
Showed him much favour, setting store upon
That speedy coming, yet suspected somewhat,
And dreaded that old man and watched him well
U pon the march because his force was great.
The veteran was shrewd, knew what Ardshir

Thought, and came with the Zandavasta, saying :—
 " May God cut off Tabak's all worthless life
 If in my heart be aught but honesty.
 As soon as I heard news of Shah Ardshir,
 How he had reached the water with his host,
 I loathed king Ardawan as young men loathe
 An aged spouse. Know that I am thy slave
 To love and prosper thee, to serve thee well,
 And keep thy secrets "

Thereupon Ardshfr
 Began to estimate him differently,
 And treat him like a sire, appointing him
 Chief of the men of name, ceased to suspect,
 Went to the temples of Kharrad and Earn,
 And prayed to God to guide him to all good,
 To give him all success and make his tree
 Of majesty bear fruit, then sought his tent
 Where both the counsellors and muster-master
 Appeared before him, and he numbered all
 The host, both horse and foot, and ascertained
 Who were the leaders and the warriors,
 Became acquaint with each, inquired his name,
 And was rejoiced at such a mighty host.
 c 1377 He gave his soldiers pay, accoutred them,
 Called on the just Bestower of all good
 And, when the host was like a fierce pard, went
 To fight Bahman, the son of Ardawan.
 The armies met, the heroes sought the fray,
 The troops drew up, lance, sword, and dart in hand.

Whenas the Azure was unveiled the host
 Led by Tabak advanced, like warrior-lions
 Closed with the foe, and poured blood streamlike. Thus
 Dust filled the air, and men the earth, till sunset.
 Arose a blast with pitchy clouds of dust,
 And from the army's centre came Ardshfr.
 Whereat Bahman, the son of Ardawan,

Fled pierced with arrows and his soul all gloom,
While Shah Ardshir was instant in pursuit,
With blaring trumpets and with arrow-ram,
Until they reached the city of Istakhr,
Seat of the fame and glory of Bahman

The Shah's fame filled the world, and countless troops
Flocked to him. He was shown the many hoards
Of treasure that Papak had toiled to gather
Ardshir gave them in largess. When at length
He marched from Pars it was with growing strength.

§9

*How Ardawan led forth his Host for Battle with Ardshir
and was slain*

When news reached Ardawan fear filled his heart,
And gloom his mind. He said "A lord of counsel
Told me this secret of the lofty sky,¹
But can one 'scape by pains unthought of ills?²
I did not fancy that Ardshir would prove
To be ambitious and a lion-taker "

He oped his treasury, gave rations out,
Bound on the baggage, and led forth the host,
Contingents came from Gil and from Dilam
The army's dust rose moon-ward while the Shah²
Led forth a host that barred the wind Two bow-shots
Divided power from power, snakes found no rest,
Such was the din of drum and clarion,
The clangour of the gongs and Indian bells.
The armies shouted and the banners waved,
While blue steel falchions scattered heads around.

The battle lasted thus for forty days,
The world was straitened to the common folk

¹ See p. 219.

² I e Ardshir.

C. 1378 The plain grew mountain-like with all the slain,
 The wounded were aweary of their life.
 At last there rose a mighty, sable cloud,
 And men could strive no more. A frightful storm
 Succeeded, and the warnors lost all heart.
 The mountains echoed and the plain was rent
 While air reverberated Then the troops
 Of Ardawan were frayed and all exclaimed
 With one consent " This storm hath come from God
 On Ardawan, this host will need our tears"

So all the wise one day, when fight was fiercest,
 Asked quarter, and Ardshfr charged from the centre,
 Arose a clashing while the arrows showered.
 Amidmost of the mellay Ardawan
 Was ta'en, and for his crown gave up sweet life
 The hand of one Kharrad seized on his bridle,
 And bare him captive to the atheling.
 Ardshir saw him from far King Ardawan
 Lit from his steed, his body arrow-pierced,
 His soul all gloom, and Shah Ardshir commanded
 The deathsman " Go, seize on the great king's foe,
 Cleave him asunder with thy sword, and make
 Our evil-wishers quail."

So did the deathsman
 That famous monarch vanished from the world.

Such is the usage of the ancient sky '
 The lot of Ardawan Ardshfr too found,
 Him whom it raiseth to the stars on high
 It giveth likewise to the sorry ground '

Two sons of him by whom Arash's seed
 Thus had been brought to shame were taken too.
 The noble Shah Ardshir imprisoned them
 With fetters on their feet. Two elder sons
 Succeeded in escaping from the fight,
 And were not taken in the net of bale.
 They went in tears to Hindustan, and thou

Mayst well narrate a tale concerning them.¹

The battle-field was full of reins and girdles,
The weapons of the host, and gold and silver,
Which were collected by the Shah's command,
And given to the troops. Among the chiefs
Tabak was most concerned to cleanse the corpse
Of Ardawan from blood, lamenting while
He washed away the dust of fight, and built
A charnel as the loyal custom was.

He robed the wounded bosom in biocade,
He placed a crown of camphor on the head,
And none of all the troops that went to Rai
Might tread the palace-dust of Ardawan.²

Tabak thereafter came before Ardshir,
And said "O Shah who seekest after wisdom !
Demand the child of Ardawan to wife,
For she hath Grace and beauty, crown and throne
Then will this diadem and all the treasures
That he collected with such toil be thine "

c. 1379

He listened to the words of wise advice,
And asked the daughter foi his spouse forthwith,
Then stayed a month or twain within the palace,
A mighty leader with a mighty host.

From Rai the aspirant went toward Pars and rested
From travail and dispute. He built a city,
All palaces and gardens, and therein
Were fountain, plain, and dale, and to this day
The noble, ancient thane³ doth speak thereof
As Khurra-i-Ardshir.⁴ Within, a spring

¹ Firdausi does so later on See p 259

² As a rule the belongings of a fallen king or minister were given up to spoil, and this is implied in C, but the context seems to show that the reading of P, followed in the translation, is correct. Cf. Vol. iv. p 212 seq. Tabari's account, however, favours C. See p 255.

³ The thane of Chach mentioned above, p 210

⁴ Khuria-i-Ardshir, "The Grace of Ardshir," was the name given by him to the district and city of Gur, not Zui as in the text, now Firuzdbdd. See NT, p. 11 and note.

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

That never failed gave water for canals
Beside it he set up a Fane of Fire,
Revived the feasts of Sada¹ and Mihrgan,²
And round it splendid edifices raised,
With pleasancess and parks and palaces.
(When that wise Shah of Grace and might was dead
The border-chieftain named the city Zur)
He founded villages all round about,
And there he settled folk when all was ready.
He saw within one quarter a deep lake,
But needs must pierce a height that intervened
They brought picks and artificers, and clove
The mountain with a hundred water-ways
He led them thence to Zur. It was a seat
Abounding both in dwellings and in neat.

§ 10

How Ardshir fought with the Kurds and was defeated

Then Shah Ardshir led from Istakhr a host
Innumerable to war against the Kurds,
Who, when he came anear, encountered him
In numbers numberless What seemed a trifle
Became of moment, for the country round
All sided with the Kurds who both outnumbered
And hemmed the Shah's host in. All day till night
The fight raged, then the world-lord's forces fled,
The field was straitened by the killed and wounded.
No man of name survived except the Shah,
And some few troops whose tongues were cracked with
thirst
Through blazing sunshine and the clouds of dust.
When night had reared its flag, and ended strife
And stir, the Shah marked on a mountain-side

¹ See Vol 1 p. 123

² *Id.* 175 and note.

A fire, and went toward it with his men
He found there hinds in charge of sheep and goats. c.1380
He and his men alighted with their mouths
Filled with the dust of fight. He asked in haste
For water which they brought and curdled milk
He rested, ate of what he found, took off
His breastplate, used it as his fittest couch,
And made his royal helmet serve as pillow
When dawn rose from the deep, and he awoke,
The chief hind visited his couch and said —
" Be evil far from thee both day and night
What ill hath caused thy journey hitherward,
And made thee make a couch of thy cuirass?"

The Shah then questioned him about the way :—
" Where can I shelter next ?"

The chief herd said:—

" Thou wilt not find a habitable place,
Without a guide, but wilt, with one to lead thee,
Discover such, four leagues away, and thence
The villages, each with a well-known chief,
Are frequent."

So he took old herds as guides.
When he arrived the head man of the village
Came out at once to meet him He sent horsemen,
Both young and old, to Khurra-i-Ardshir,
The host at news of him set forth rejoicing
He sent men also to spy out the Kurds
These men went forth, returned, and said " They all
Are boasting of their deeds and making merry,
None recketh of the Shah, regarding him
As out-worn in Istakhr with ageing fortune."

The Shah rejoiced and deemed the past mere wind
Chose from his famous host three thousand horsemen
With scimitars, and took in company
A thousand archers with artillery

*How Ardshir attacked the Kurds by Night and
overthrew them*

- c. 1381 He led the host forth as the sun grew pale,
 Left all the unfit behind, and in the dark
 And dead of night came on the Kurds, and saw
 Earth strewn with sleepers while his own troops raged
 The chieftain reached the pillow of the Kurds,
 He gave his fleet steed rem, unsheathed, and charged.
 He crowned the grass with blood. The plain was all
 The heads and hands of Kurds who strewed earth's face
 By scores, and countless of them were made captive
 Their truculence and folly were brought low.
 He gave their lands to spoil, to all his troops
 Both crowns and purses, and from that time forth
 If some old man had borne upon his head
 A tray of gold across those deserts, none
 Would e'en have glanced thereon, such was the fortune
 And justice of the Shah¹ He tarried not
 To celebrate his victory but marched
 Back to Istakhr and issued these commands —
 "Repose your steeds, repair your arms, and cheer
 Yourselves with feasts, for ye may have to think
 Of war ere long."

The warriors fell to eating,
 But when their waists had rested from their girdles
 Ardshir devised new warfare. Mind it well,
 This tale, when thou shalt hear, of what befell.

§ 12

The Story of Haftuad and the Gate of the Worm

Now mark this strange, eventful history
 Of Kujaran, a city on the sea

THE ASHKANIANS

Of Pars, told by a rustic bard for he
Hath dealt at large with Persian legendry.

There was a city strait but full of men,
Who all must work to eat, and many girls
Therein were poor and earned their bread withal.
On one side was a mountain near at hand
Whereto the damsels all were wont to fare,
Each with her distaff-case of poplar-wood,
And with her weighed-out stint of unspun cotton.
They used to gather at the city-gate
Before they started and to club whatever
They brought of provand, but their talk ne'er ran
On resting or on eating, their concern
Was cotton which at night they brought back spun.

There dwelt within that city, one Haftwad,
Who was so named because he had seven sons,¹
A man of cheerful turn but indigent.
He had too one dear daughter and no more,
But daughters he esteemed of no account.

One day it happened that the troop of girls
Sat at their spinning on the mountain-side
They clubbed together all the food they had,
And during meal-time laid their distaffs by.
'Twas then it happened that this lucky girl
Beheld a windfall lying on the path,
An apple which she picked up hastily.
Now list to this strange tale When that fair maid
Had bitten the fruit she saw a worm inside.
She picked it from the apple and then gently
Transferred it to her distaff-case, and said,
As she resumed her spinning. " In the name
Of God who hath no partner and no peer,
I'll show you wondrous spinning done to-day
All through the good luck of an apple-worm!"

The girls grew merry and began to laugh,

¹ See p 206.

Grew blithe of blee and showed their silver teeth.
 That day she spun a double quantity,
 And marked the sum thereof upon the ground,
 Then hurried home like smoke and showed her mother
 The yarn. Her mother praised her fondly, saying —
 "Thou hast done well, thou Moon with sunlike face!"

Next morning, having measured off the twist,
 She took a double stmt, and all agog,
 Heart, soul, and body, on her spinning, joined
 That busy band and told those lair-famed girls —
 "Ye moon-faced and well favoured by the stars'
 By this worm's fortune I have spun so much
 That never I shall want t"

She spun that stmt,

And might have dealt with more. She carried home
 What she had spun, whereat her mother's heart
 Became like jocund Paradise Each morning
 The pretty damsel gave the worm some apple,
 And spun off all the cotton howsoever
 The tale might be increased, the little witch'

One day the parents asked their worthy daughter —
 "Hast thou obtained a fairy for thy sister
 That thou dost spin so much, thou goodly one?"

Forthwith the fair maid told her mother all
 About the apple with the little worm
 Concealed therein, and showed the glorious creature
 To both her parents who rejoiced the more
 Haftwad, who took it for an augury,
 Gave up his work, he talked of nothing save
 The luck of the Worm His fortune which had aged
 Grew young. Thus time passed and his prospects
 brightened.

They did not slight the Worm but fed it well.
 It grew in size and strength, its head and back
 Were beautifully hued, and it outgrew
 The distaff-case Its coat, which turned as dark

As musk, had saffron spots throughout. Haftwad
Prepared a goodly, sable cabinet,
And lodged the creature there. It came to pass
That in that city everybody looked
For counsel and for justice to Haftwad,
Who grew in honour, consequence, and wealth,
And all his seven sons were rich as well.
The city had a governor—a man
With rank, renown, and soldiery—who sought
Occasion to deprive Haftwad, the base-born,
Of his dinars, but many of the nobles
Took sides with him and his seven warlike sons.
The trumpet-call was heard in Kujaran
They marched out with their spears, and swords, and
arrows,

Led by Haftwad who played the man in fight,
Seized on the city, slew the governor,
And captured all his jewels and his treasures

A crowd of folk assembled round Haftwad.
He went from Kujaran toward the mountain,
Upon whose top he built a hold whereto
The citizens migrated in a mass.
He fitted up the hold with iron gates,
'Twas serviceable both in peace and war.
Upon the mountain-top there was a spring,
Which by good fortune rose amidst the hold,
Around he built a wall of viewless height.

Now when the Worm outgrew its cabinet
They made a tank of masonry¹ and, when
The air had dried it, tenderly disposed
The Worm within. Each day at dawn its keeper
Would hurry from Haftwad to dress its food—
A cauldronful of rice. The growing Worm
Consumed it all. Years passed, its neck and limbs
Grew large as elephant's, and then

Haftwad

c. 1384

¹ Reading with P

Surnamed the hold Kirman,¹ his own bright daughter
 Became the guardian of the Worm, and he
 The leader of its troops. Wazir and scribe
 Attended it, it fed on rice, milk, honey,
 While at its door Haftwad, the chieftain, stood
 To answer for it both in bad and good²

§ 13

How Ardshir fought with Haftwad and was worsted

Now when Ardshir heard of Haftwad the news
 Displeased him, and he sent against that chief
 A host of valiant, high-starred warriors.
 Haftwad, on hearing of them, took it lightly.
 He set an ambush in a mountain-coign,
 And went himself to combat with his troops
 Now when the battle raged, and while the soldiers
 Plied mace and battle-ax, the force in ambush
 Advanced, earth gloomed to those Iranians,
 For none knew head from foot, and thou hadst said —
 " Earth manacled their hands " Such were the slain
 On desert, dale, and mountain that the victors
 Tired of the slaughter The survivors sped
 Back to the Shah. Now when renowned Ardshir
 Heard of the fight, the slaughter, and the plunder,
 He sorrowed, summoned to him all his host,
 And basted to distribute arms and pay.
 He set forth wrathfully against Haftwad,
 The head of that base-born one rose to heaven,
 He brought forth arms and treasure from the hold,
 Misprizing both that army and the war.
 Now when his eldest son, then far away,
 Heard that his father was engaged in strife
 He left ease, feasting, and repose, and crossed

¹ See p. 204,

² Six couplets omitted

The water in a boat. That atheling,
 An ill-conditioned youth, was named Shahwi. C 135
 He thus rejoined Haftwad who joyed but kept
 The right wing and the chief command himself.
 Both hosts were goodly, furnished, well equipped,
 And combative. The young Shah's heart grew old
 With trouble at the sight. They ranged their ranks,
 The scimitars flashed out, the reek went up,
 And when the drums beat on the elephants
 Folk deafened two miles off. The trumpets blared,
 The world re-echoed with the brazen cymbals,
 While earth reeled 'neath the horse-shoes and the
 nails,
 The air was tulip-hued with flags of chiefs,
 The crash of axes on the crests of helms,
 Reverberated from heaven while the rush
 Of wind-foot chargers rent the ground asunder,
 And pass and plain were full of headless corpses.
 Such was Haftwad's host that thou wouldst have said •—
 "The sea is wind-tossed" Ant and fly were cramped
 For room, those armies so fulfilled the plain.
 Thus was it till day waned and night outspread
 Its cloak of lapis-lazuli. Ardshir
 Drew in his troops Behind him was the sea.
 Now when eve's rusty livery grew dark,
 And when the scouts went out from both the hosts,
 The soldiers of the Shah became the prey
 Of hunger for his foeman barred the way.

§ 14

How Mihrah of Jaham sacked the Palace of Ardshir

Lived at Jahram a man of low degree¹—
 Mihrak son of Niishzad—who, when he heard

¹ Of Karan race, according to P.

About the expedition of Ardshir,
 His tarrying by the sea, and how his host
 Was starving, with communications barred,
 Marched on the palace of the Shah, assembled
 Troops past all count, and sacked it, lavishing
 No stnt of crowns and purses on his soldiers.
 The Shah received the tidings by the sea,
 And said in grief " Why did I leave my home
 Defenceless and attack an alien foe ?"
 Called all the chiefs, spake of Mihrak at large,
 c 1386 And said " what think ye, leaders of the host !
 Of such an impasse ? I have tasted much
 Of fortune's bitterness, but reckoned not
 On trouble from Mihrak 1"

They cried " O Shah'
 Ne'er may thine eyes behold ill-luck. Why take
 Things ill because Mihrak hath proved thy foe
 In secret ? Thou hast greatness, and the world
 Is thine. Thy slaves are we, 'tis thine to bid."

He gave command to have the tables set,
 They called for wine and cups and minstrelsy.
 They served up divers lambs¹ upon the board,
 And all the guests disposed themselves to eat,
 But when Ardshir himself took bread there came
 A pointed shaft and deeply lodged itself
 Within the dainty plumpness of a lamb,
 Whereat those brave, wise chiefs forbore to eat.
 All sorely grieved. One drew the arrow forth.
 They saw that there was wilting on the shaft,
 Those that were clerkly of the magnates read it,
 The writing on the arrow was old Persian,
 And thus it ran " If thou wilt hear, wise Shah'
 This issued from the hold's top which is safe
 Through the luck of the Worm. Had I directed it

¹ Lambs are still served up whole at feasts in Persia. C J Wills, *Land of the Lion and the Sun*, p. 91.

Against Ardshir the feathers would have pierced him.
 No monarch, such as he is, in our days
 Can overthrow the Worm."

Then to the archmages

The Shah read out the script on that sharp arrow.
 The hold was two leagues off! The nobles' hearts
 Were straitened, but they all evoked upon
 The Glory of earth's king God's benison.

§ 15

*How Ardshir heard about the Worm and made
 Shift to day it*

The Shah mused much that night about the Worm
 And, when the sun displaced the moon, set forth
 With all his army from the sea and hurried
 Toward Pars The foe pursued him, seized the roads,
 And slaughtered all the chieftains, but the Shah
 Escaped with his own memy while behind him
 The foe cried " May the Worm's luck light its throne."

All said, "A marvel—one for all to ponder" C 1387
 Now as he fled in fear o'er hill and plain
 He saw a spacious city, and they urged
 Like wolves their steeds As he approached he saw
 A house and at the door two stranger youths.
 There halted he and his The honest pair
 Asked him " Whence come ye so unseasonably,
 So dusty from the road, and travel-worn?"

He said. " Ardshri hath come this way, and we
 Lagged on the route He fleeth from the Worm,
 Haftwad, and that base man's ignoble crew."

The youths had ruth upon him, they grew sad
 And dark of soul, made him dismount and greeted
 His nobles well, prepared him pleasant quarters,
 And furnished food that was acceptable.

THE SHAHNAME OF FIRDAUSI

The mighty men sat with the Shah at meat
While those two youths began to entertain him,
And said aloud " Exalted one' no grief
Or joy will last. Mark what Zahhak, the tyrant,
Brought on the throne of kingship, how kings' hearts
Ached through malevolent Afrasiyab,
And how Sikandar, in these latter days,
Slew all the monarchs of the world, all these¹
Have passed away, have left an evil name,
And not attained to jocund Paradise
'Twill be thus with Haftwad, that miscreant
Will writhe at last."

The Shah's heart at their words
Became as fresh as roses in the spring.
The speech of those two gracious ones consoled him,
He told his secret, and, declared himself.
" I am," he said, " Ardshir, son of Sasan,
And am in need of comforting advice
How deal we with this Worm and with Haftwad?
May both his name and lineage cease on earth "

Thereat the two young men did homage, saying •—
" All hail' Be ill's hand ever far from thee
Be we thy bond-slaves both in soul and body,
And thou confirmed in spirit evermore
As for the matter that thou askest us
We will advise thee well that thou mayst use
Craft from the first In battle with the Worm,
And with Haftwad, thou wilt not be approved
Unless thou shalt adopt the proper course
They have their seat upon the mountain-peak,
Within it are the Worm, the troops, and treasure,
C 1388 Before it is the city and behind
The sea, the hold is on the mountain-top,
And access difficult. The Worm withal
Denveth from the brain of Ahnman—

¹ *Ie*, Zahhrik, Afrasiyab, and Sikandar. Cf pp 15, 224 and *note*, and
VOL. I. p 59

The foeman of the Maker of the world.
Thou callest it a Worm, but in its skin
There is a combative, blood-thirsty div¹."

Ardshir, on hearing this, which won his love
And pleased his heart, replied: " So be it then,
And ye shall have the credit or the blame."

The young men's answer pleased his prudent heart —
" We stand before thee ever as thy slaves,
And guides to good."

Made happy by their words
He fared triumphant and with heart all justice,
And, when he left, the youths companioned him.
He went with ardent heart and full of heed,
With head held high to Khurra-i-Ardshir.
Troops, magnates, men of lore, and counsellors
Flocked to the Shah, who rested for a while,
Gave out supplies, then marched against Mihrak,
Son of Nushzad, to whom the world grew dark
And strait because he dared not fight, that traitor
Hid when the great king drew anear Jahram.
The great king's heart was wrathful. He abode
Until Mihrak was taken, then smote through
His neck with Indian scimitar, consigned
The headless body to the flames, and put
All captives of his kindred to the sword.
Howbeit one daughter was concealed despite
The hue and cry for her throughout the city.

Thence he departed to attack the Worm,
As all his host desired, and took with him
Twelve thousand horsemen proved and veteran.
When he had concentrated all his troops
He led them to a spot between two mountains.
A prudent man, Shahrgir by name, commanded
The host of Shah Ardshir, who said to him:—
" Remain here on the watch with outposts, set
Both day and night, shrewd cavaliers and guides,

By favour of the Worm and now have come
Rejoicing to its seat. It blesseth me,
And, if I may but serve it, all is well.'

Thereat the servants of the Worm flung back
The castle-gate. When they had brought the loads
Inside, the noble Shah took charge, undid
A pack forthwith, and made the needful gifts.
He spread before the attendants of the Worm
The leathern table of the traveller,
And stood as slaves are wont, unlocked the chests,
Brought and filled cups with wine, but those whose
turn

It was to feed the Worm with milk and rice
Refused to drink, their duty kept them sober
Now as they sat Ardshir sprang up and said —
" Abundance both of rice and milk have I
And, if the Worm's chief servitor permitteth,
Will gladly feed it for three days myself,
Fame may ensue, and I shall share its luck.
For three days then be merry and drink wine,
At sun-rise on the fourth I will erect
A spacious warehouse higher than the walls,
For as a chapman seeking purchasers
I fain would curry favour with the Worm "

C. 1390

This gained his end. They said " Do thou provide."
So that ass-driver undertook the toil,
While sat the servitors with wine in hand,
And feasted and grew drunk, and came to be
The servitors of wine, not of the Worm
Now when the wine-cup had bemused their minds
The master of the world came with his hosts,¹
Brought forth the metal and the brazen pot,
And lit a fire by daylight. When 'twas time
To feed the Worm its food was of boiling lead.
He bore the molten metal to the tank,

¹ *I e*, his former entertainers—the two youths See p 239.

Whence that tame creature raised its head They saw
 Its tongue thrust out, just like an Arab cymbal,
 As when it used to eat the rice The youths
 Poured down the molten stuff and quelled the Worm.
 There came a rumble from its maw and shook
 The tank and ground. Came like the wind Ardshir
 With those two youths; they plied sword, mace, and
 shaft,

And none among those drunken servitors
 Escaped their hands with life. Ardshir sent up
 A black smoke from the castle-roof to tell
 The exploit to the captain of the host,
 To whom the look-out hurried to announce —
 " Ardshir hath won "

Shahrgir made no delay,
 But marched to meet the Shah with his array

§ 16

Hon Ardshi sleu Haftwad

Now when Haftwad was ware thereof his heart
 Grew full of anguish and his head of sighs.
 He came to repossess the hold. The king
 Ascended to the walls in haste. Haftwad
 Strove but to small result, for on the ramparts
 There was a Lion's foot.¹ The Iranian host
 Came mountain-like, but halted seared and sore.-
 Then Shah Ardshir cried from the battlements *—
 " O valiant lion-catcher '³ fall upon them,
 For if Haftwad escapeth from our midst

¹ Persian etymology denves Ardshir from " ard," anger, and " shir," a lion The true is " arta," great, and " khshathra," king

² Their previous experiences with Haftwad had been unfortunate, Cf. p. 236 seq

³ The name of Ardshir's general was Shahrgir—i e. City-taker. Ardshir addresses him as Shirgir, i e. Lion-taker

Thou wilt have naught in hand but toil and wind.
 I have given the molten metal to the Worm,
 Gone is its luck, its fierce career abated "

The troops all heard the Shah's words, donned their
 helms

C. 1391

And, grieved at past discomfiture, took heart,
 And girt their loins for vengeance Then the wind
 Turned on the Worm's troops Soon Haftwad was taken,
 As was that knave Shahwi—his eldest son
 And general. Ardshir descended quickly,
 Shahrgir met him afoot. They brought a steed
 With golden trappings, and the famed king mounted ,
 Then ordered to set up beside the sea
 Two lofty gibbets and suspended thence
 His two opponents living and woke up
 The heart of all his foes. As for the twain,
 He came forth from the centre of the host,
 And put them both to death with showers of arrows.
 He gave the wealth to spoil and thus enriched
 His troops The servants brought down from the hold
 All that there was Such of the wealth as pleased him
 He hurried off to Khurra-i-Ardshir.
 The Shah set up a Fire-fane on the mountain,
 Restored Mihrgan and Sada, and bestowed
 Upon his lucky hosts¹ crown, throne, and province,
 And thence departing, triumphing and glad,
 Spread justice over Pars. When man and beast
 Had rested he led on his host to Zur,
 Sent to Kirman an army, and a man
 Fit for the crown and throne, proceeded thence
 To Taisafun and brought his foe's throne down.

Of this our whirling world it is the way
 To keep concealed from thee its mystery.
 Conform to it, 'twill not conform to thee,
 Because its favour changeth every day.

¹ Cf P. 243. note.

IV

THE SASANIAN DYNASTY

IV THE SASANIAN DYNASTY

ARGUMENT

The poet, in this the concluding dynasty of the Shahnama, tells of the use, progress, and fall of the Sasaman empire from the days of its founder, Ardshi Papakan, to those of Yazdagnd, the last Shah of the dynasty. He commemorates the reigns of its twenty-nine Shahs, for the most part very briefly, but in some instances at great length, as in the cases of Bahram Gur, Nushirwan, and Khusiau Parwiz. He records, so far as Iranian tradition kept such things in memory, the foreign relations of the empire with other kings, races, and peoples, its internal administration and domestic concerns, the adventures that befell and the wisdom that was uttered, the invention of chess and the coming of the Gipsies. He then describes the conquest of Irtan by the Aiabs and ends with a short passage of personal reminiscence.

NOTE

Having passed, as Fndausi sa's₅ " Sikandar's barrier "¹ and the great historic void of five centuries and more, peopled for us in the Shahnama by a few shades of names only, we alight at length on the authentic but unstable soil of the Sasaman dynasty, for even here the information presented to us is by no means consonant with modern Western canons of accuracy. The names are historic, and so are many of the events recorded, but there are no dates, and often what is historic is misplaced chronologically and attributed to the wrong actors and the wrong causes, sometimes very trivial ones—those, for instance, assigned by the street story-teller. Of many of the Shahs only the facts of their accession, the length, often wrongly given, of their reigns, their inaugural speeches, and deaths are recorded. The occurrence, more than once, of a whole series of such reigns has a somewhat depressing effect on the reader and gives an appearance of truth

to Atkinson's view that the interest of the Shahnama ends with the reign of Sikandar¹ From this it might be thought that the poet, weary with his long labours and soured by hope deferred, had hurried over or scamped the concluding portion of his vast undertaking. It might be thought that even in the places where material is abundant his version of it had not the technique and attractiveness found in the earlier dynasties. In the opinion of the present writer such views are not justified by the facts of the case. It is true that here the visions of the childhood of the world fade into the light of common day, and the superhuman gives place to the human, but there is a measure of compensation in that very fact, and the study of the history of a whole epoch as it was conceived, interpreted, and handed down by popular tradition, cannot fail of interest and instruction. It must be remembered too that no other great poet ever imposed such strict limitations on himself, or so sternly adhered to them, as did Firdausi. He puts himself at the mercy of his authorities, and where they fail him, as they do sometimes in this portion of the Shahnama, he makes no attempt to invent incidents, but leaves a blank and passes on. This is a proceeding for which the poet should be praised rather than blamed. He was engaged in a high task, no doubt believed in the tales that he retold, just as his countrymen believe in them still, and he refused to add to the sacred story of his race as he found it in tradition. In cases, however, where his authorities offered him an opportunity he shows no falling off in vigour, as the reign of Bahram Gur, which will be found in the next volume, is in itself sufficient to prove. In it we seem to discern the soil and the seed whence sprang in after ages the well-beloved Nights called Arabian, but certainly of Persian origin, for we have the Shah roaming disguised, or at least unrecognised, among his subjects of all classes, the freaks of despotic power, the humorous exaggerations, the Rabelaisian tale, and the clash of the cymbals of the Brides of the Treasure. Finally, in the story of Bahram Chubina, which Macan admired so much,² the Sasanian dynasty possesses a historical romance both admirable in itself and admirably set forth by the poet. It remains to call attention to a few other points in connexion with this dynasty.

Ardshir Papakan laid it down as a fundamental principle of government, if Iranian tradition may be credited, that the Throne and the Faith were interdependent. The Faith could not exist without the Throne, nor the Throne without the Faith. The two

¹ AS, p. 510

² C, Vol. i. p. xxxvii

were brothers, they wore one cloak, they were two pieces of brocade interwoven, the slanderer of the Throne and the persecutor of the Faith were alike impious.¹ Whether Ardshir really spoke to this effect or not matters little. If he did not say so in word his deeds said it for him, and most of his successors followed his example. Later ages, noting this marked feature of the dynasty—the close union between the Throne and the Faith—naturally may have attributed corresponding sentiments to its founder. Accordingly the religion of Zoroaster, as represented by its official priesthood and supported by the throne, obtained during Sasaman times a position of influence and dignity such as it never previously had enjoyed, at all events since the semi-mythical epoch of Gushtasp and of Asfandiyar. Even with all its official advantages, however, the priesthood had much ado to maintain itself, amid the religious ferment of those centuries, alike against the antagonism of rival Faiths without and heresy within.² Orthodox Zoroastrianism was more than once almost in the position of an *Athanasius contra mundum*³ The Sasaman Shahs, for the most part, seem to have done their best to support the priesthood, and the latter showed its gratitude by a deep and loyal devotion to the House of Sasan. This loyalty to the throne, coupled with aversion from all that was heterodox or unorthodox, was reflected in the national tradition as handed down by the chroniclers of the time, who for the most part were Zoroastrian priests themselves. Consequently in this part of the *Shahnama* the reader will find a strong legitimist feeling, expressed by occasional remarks or asides, running like a thread through the poem. This feeling takes the form of devotion to the House of Sasan as a whole, with the exception of Yazdagird, son of Shapur, "The Wicked," and to the interests of the supposed rightful Shah or heir for the time being as against usurpers or other claimants of the throne. These little outbursts certainly are not expressions of the poet's own personal views on such matters, he found them in his authorities and reproduced them. This remark also applies to passages of religious polemics. The poet's own views on such matters probably may be found in the parable of the kerchief.⁴ These polemics represent the devotion of the Zoroastrian priesthood to orthodoxy, as they understood it, just as their legitimist outbursts expressed their loyalty to the throne, provided that it was occupied by rightful and orthodox Shahs of the House of Sasan.

A curious instance of this close union between Church and State

¹ See p. 286

² Cy. Vol. v p. 16, note

³ Cf. pp. 327, 358

⁴ See pp. 92, 95

in Sasaman times is given by Mas'udi in his "Book of Indication and Revision," but a few words may be said by way of preface. According to Zoroastrianism there are to be twelve millennia, at the expiration of the last of which—the present one—will come the Restoration of all things. Now the tenth millennium began on the day when the Revelation came to Zarduhsht,¹ and in the Dinkard we find a prophecy, after the event, that the last two centuries of that particular millennium would be periods of great misery and wretchedness.² The Dinkard was compiled during the ninth century A D, and Mas'udi flourished during the first half of the tenth. This is what he tells us—"There is a great difference between the opinion of the Persians and that of other people with reference to the epoch of Alexander, which most folk have not noticed. It is one of the secrets of the religion and royal policy of the Persians and is known only to the most erudite among the priests, as we have seen for our selves in the province of Pars, Kuman, and other countries where the Persians rule. It is not found in any of the books on Persian history or in any chronicle or annals. It is this Zoroaster . . . in the Avasta—the book revealed to him—announces that in three centimes the empire of the Persians will experience a great revolution, without destitution to the religion, but that at the end of a thousand years, starting from the same epoch, that of Zoroaster, the empire and the religion will perish together. Now between Zoroaster and Alexander there is about three hundred years, for Zoroaster appeared in the time of Gushtasp. Ardshir, son of Papak, possessed himself of the empire . . . about five hundred years after Alexander. We see then that there remained not more than two hundred years or thereabouts before the completion of the thousand years of the prophecy. Ardshir wished to augment by two hundred years this space of time . . . because he feared that when a hundred years should have elapsed after him men would refuse aid to the king, and to repulse his enemies, owing to their belief in the truth of the tradition relating to the future ruin of the empire. To obviate this he retrenched about half the time that had elapsed between Alexander and himself, and accordingly only made mention of a certain number of the Part Kings, who had occupied this period, and suppressed the remainder. Then he took pains to disseminate in his empire that he had made his appearance and possessed himself of the rule two hundred and sixty years after Alexander. Consequently this period was recognised and spread among men. For this reason there is a

¹ See Vol. v. p. 16

² WPT, v. 94 seq

difference between the Persians and other nations with respect to the era of Alexander, and this is why confusion has been imported into the annals of the Part Kings"¹ Whatever we may think with regard to the historical value of this explanation the fact remains that the duration of the epoch between Alexander the Great and Ardshir Papakan is reduced by Oriental historians generally Its standard length may be put, as given by them, at 266 years The above account makes Ardshir strike out 288 years of the actual historical number of 548 years

In the notes to the various reigns of this dynasty no attempt will be made to present a complete historical sketch of the Persian history of the period by adding details and filling up the frequent *lacunae* from other sources. Such history as the poem offers will be dealt with, but such as it ignores, *e.g.* many of the wars with the Eastern Roman empire, will be passed over in silence save where reference to some omitted historical event is needed for the better understanding of what has been included but misrepresented Readers that desire to supplement the Shahnama will find ample material in the late Professor Rawlinson's "Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy," and in the Bibliography appended thereto, especially if they add Professor Noldeke's "Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit des Sasaniden," which was published three years later and is invaluable

The form of the names of the various Shahs, taken from Professor Rawhnson, and the duration of their respective reigns, as calculated by Professor Noldeke, are given between brackets

A genealogical table of the Sasamans, according to the Shahnama, will be found at the beginning of the volume.

¹ MM, ix. 327

XXII

ARDSHIR PAPAN

HE REIGNED FORTY YEARS AND TWO MONTHS

ARGUMENT

Ardshir, having become King of kings, marries the daughter of Ardawan, who attempts to poison him and is saved by Ardshir's minister Shapur is born and recognised by his father Ardshir. Ardshir consults Kaid about the future Kaid's reply The adventure of Shapur with the daughter of Mihrak The birth of Urmuzd, who is acknowledged by Ardshir as his grandson. Account of Ardshir's administration He counsels Shapur and dies The poet ends the reign with praises of Mahmud

NOTE

§ 1 The forty years and two months assigned by Firdausi to the reign of Ardshir (Artaxerxes I, AD 226-241) is much too long Tabari makes it, from the fall of Ardawan, fourteen years or, according to some of his authorities, ten months longer ¹ No doubt Ardshir was a king, with his seat of government at Pars, from soon after the death of his father Papan ² Probably he served, and won his spurs, in Ardawan's war against the Romans which was ended by the peace of Nisibis in A D 217 Nine eventful years followed and he became King of kings in A D 226 Firdausi, according to the text of C, makes him seventy-eight, according to the text of P sixty-eight, at the time of his death ³

There had been a city of Baghdad in Babylonian times, but the Arab city of that name was not founded till the days of the Khalifa Al Mansur in AD 762 The city here meant is Bih-Ardshir, the Seleucia newly founded by Ardshir. ⁴

We have two accounts of the assumption of the title " King of kings " by Ardshir For the other see p 273 From Firdausi's

¹ NT, p. 21

² See p 199

³ *Id* p 286

⁴ NT, p 16, and *note*,

wording it might be held that the former was the popular, the latter the official, ascription of the title For its import in connexion with Ardashir see p 197 Cf too p 199

§§ 2, 3 Firdausi's account agrees partly with the Karnamak and partly with the Arabic versions, showing clearly that the former was not his direct authority. According to K two of Ardawan's sons had fled to Kabul and thence incited Ardawan's daughter, whose name is given as Zijcinak. to poison Ardashir, her husband One day accordingly, on his return from the chase, she presents to him a cup of roast meal and milk with which she has mingled the poison As he was about to drink, the sacred Fire, Fruba, descended on the cup and it fell from his hand A cat and dog ate the spilt food and died on the spot Ardashir at once ordered the high priest (the chief mubid) to have Zijanak put to death. Instead of so doing, however, he concealed her in his own house, where she gave birth to a son whom she called Shapur, i.e son of the king, and brought him up till he was seven years old The story of the self-mutilation by the high priest is omitted¹ One day Ardashir went to the chase and followed a female onager, whereupon the male came towards Ardashir and exposed himself to death in her stead Ardashir spared him and rode after the colt, whereat the female onager came up and offered herself to be slain in her young one's place Ardashir, reflecting on his own conduct to his wife, whom he knew to have been with child at the time when he ordered her to execution, wept The high priest seized the opportunity to tell Ardashir the real state of the case, and Shapur is presented to him Ardashir in great joy bounteously rewards the high priest and founds the city of Ras-Shapur and a sacred Fire in commemoration of the occasion² According to Tabari, when Ardashir had obtained the sovereignty he destroyed utterly, in accordance to an oath sworn by his grandsire, the elder Sasan, the loyal lace of the Arsacids³ with the exception of one girl, Ardawan's daughter, whom he found in the royal palace She was very beautiful, and, as she gave herself out to be merely the handmaid of one of Ardawan's wives, he married her Later on, thinking herself secure, as she was with child by him, she told him who she was On this he ordered his minister, an

¹ A similar story is told by Lucian III his treatise on "The Synan Goddess" of Seleucus Nicator, his queen Stratonice, and one of his favourites—a handsome youth named Combabus—and by Hiuen Tsiang of the younger brother of a king of K'lu-chi who was left in charge of the government while the king himself went on pilgrimage BBR, I 22

² NK, pp 57 seq. ³ Historically this is incorrect See p 202

aged man, to put her to death,¹ and then follows the rest of the story as told in the *Shahnama*. All these accounts make Shapur much too young. According to Tabari he was present at the battle of Hurmuzdagan and slew with his own hand Ardawan's secretary.² Tabari thus appears to contradict himself, but the reader should bear in mind that it is the custom of Oriental historians to give several versions, derived from different sources, of the same event or person, not to digest such versions, as a Western writer would do, into a single narrative.

A similar account of the rewards bestowed by the grateful Ardshir on his faithful minister is given by Dinawari and in some versions of the Persian translation of Tabari, but there is no evidence that the statement that Ardshir had his ministers' heads engraved and stamped on the coinage is historically correct. It is true that another head besides Ardshir's appears on his earliest and some of his latest coins, but the heads are those of Papak and of Shapur respectively.³

The Jund-i-Shapur of F appears to be the equivalent of the Ris-Shapui of K.⁴

§§ 4-6 This is both in K and in the Arabic versions. In F the wise Indian king of the days of Sikandar—Kaid, the Kait of K—reappears, takes the place held by the astrologers in Tabari, and, in K, declares that only two races can hold sway in Iran—that of Ardshir and that of Mihrak.⁵ F more poetically puts it that the Shah can only find peace by the *union* of his family with that of Mihrak. On this Ardshir, aware that one daughter of Mihrak had escaped the previous massacre, tries in vain to find her. It seems worth suggesting that, in the primitive form of the legend, Ardawan, Mihrak, and Mahdik were one and the same personality. Mihrak is Mithrak in K, a very Parthian name, and Madik or Mahdik is the king of the Kurds. Mahdik merely means "the Mede" and thus symbolises the Parthian power which, according to Iranian tradition, had its headquarters in Media Magna. In this view Ardshir's expeditions against the Kurds and Mihrak would be mere variants of his advance into, and conquest of, Media after the decisive battle of Hurmuzdagan when doubtlessly he put to death all that he could find of his late rival's family. That he wittingly spared any of them, male or female, is most unlikely, and a legend given in Tabari⁶ had to be invented to explain how it came about that he married Ardawan's daughter, the story of this marriage being a later device, as here in Shapur's

¹ NT, pp. 25 *seq.* ² *Id.* 14. ³ *Id.* 30 *note*, and RSM, pp. 65 *seq.*

⁴ NK, p. 63

⁵ NT, p. 43, NK, p. 64. ⁶ See p. 255

case, to connect the Sasanians with their predecessors. It is worth noting too that in the Arabic historian Hamza the daughter of Mihrak is called Kurdzad, i.e. "the child of the Kurds".¹ This explains the words of Kait's prophecy in K and, what is hard to understand otherwise, why such great importance should be attached to Mihrak and his family in the various versions of the legends unless we regard them as all originating from a single historical incident in Ardshir Papakan's career. F's insight in varying the form of Kaid's prophecy brings out the historical truth that Iran could be restored to internal peace only by the voluntary union of the old and new political dispensations.

The scene at the well between Shapur and the daughter of Mihrak is not found in the Arabic versions. In Tabari the girl takes refuge with shepherds and provides Shapur with water one day when he is hunting. He falls in love with her and takes her in marriage, after which she tells him of her parentage. The Arabic versions, both in this case and that of Ardshir, represent the marriage into the enemy's family as having been made through ignorance.²

The recognition scene on the polo-ground, which we have had already in connexion with Shapur,³ here occurs, as in K, in its proper place. F adds the touch of Ardshir's unexpected return from the chase and consequent discovery. In Tabari it is brought about by a sudden visit paid to his son's palace by Ardshir who thus encounters Urmuzd.⁴

At this point K, after giving a brief and exaggerated account of the reign of Urmuzd, comes to an end.

§§ 7, 8, 10. In addition to K there was once in existence a Pahlavi work known as the "Ahdnamak" or "Andarznamak" i.e. "Book of the Exhortations" sc of Ardshir. In all probability its contents much resembled the subject-matter found in these sections.⁵

Tabari states that Ardshir himself crowned his son Shapur,⁶ and the incident seems to be recorded in a bas-relief of Ardshir's at Takht-i-Bustan and in some of his later coins.⁷ Mas'udi says that Ardshir became a religious recluse.⁸

The duration of the Sasanian dynasty was 425 years—AD 226-651. Cf. with Ardshir's prophecy the account of Mas'udi on p. 251, and for the length of his reign p. 254. Tabari⁹ credits him with the foundation of eight cities.

¹ NK, p. 65, note,

⁴ NT, p. 44

⁷ RSM, pp. 64 seq

VOL. VI.

² NT, pp. 26, 44

⁵ NK, pp. 26, 27

⁸ MM, 11 159

³ p. 263

⁶ NT, p. 19

⁹ Id

R

§ 1

*How Ardshir Papakan sat upon the Throne
in Baghdad*

Now at Baghdad Ardshir assumed his seat
 Upon the ivory throne and donned the crown
 That maketh glad the heart, with girdle girt,
 The sceptre of the Shahs in hand, the palace
 Prepared. Thenceforth folk called him "King of
 kings,"¹

And no one knew him from Gushtasp. Whenas
 C 132 He donned the crown of majesty he spake,
 Victorious and glad, upon the throne
 Thus. "Justice is my treasure in this world,
 Which is reviving 'neath my busy hands,
 A treasure this that none can take from me ,
 Ill-doing 'tis that bringeth ill on men
 All-holy God, if I find favour with Him,
 Will not begrudge to me this sombre earth.
 The world is wholly under my protection,
 My policy is to approve of justice.
 None—friend or foe—must slumbei with his heart
 All care through act of any officer,
 Or chief, or warrior-cavalier of mine
 This court is free to all, both foe and friend."

The whole assembly blessed him and exclaimed —
 ' Oh' may thy justice make earth prosperous"

Where there were hostile chiefs he sent forth
 troops
 To bring them to submission or make known
 The usage of the scimitar and throne.

¹ ty. pp. 193, 197, 199, 254, 273

§ 2

The Case of Ardshir and the Daughter of Ardawan

Now when the Shah slew Ardawan, thus winning
The world, he took to wife the slam king's daughter
To tell him where her father's hoards were hidden.
There were two sons of Ardawan in Hind,
Companions in distress, and two in ward
With full hearts and with weeping eyes. The eldest
Of these—Bahman—who was in Hindustan,
Perceiving that the realm was lost to him,
Chose a discreet and prudent messenger,
A youth who was possessed of ears to hear,
Gave him some poison secretly, and said —
" Go to my sister, tell her ' Seek not thou
Our foe's affections, for in Hindustan
Thou hast two brothers, exiles both, and two
Bound in the prison-house of Shah Ardshir.
Our sire is slam, his sons are pierced, by arrows,
And thou, as it would seem, hast ceased to love us'
How can the Maker of the sky commend it ?
As thou wouldst queen it in Iran, and win
In this world the approval of the brave,
Take thou this mortal Indian bane and use it
Forthwith upon Ardshir."

The envoy came

At eve and gave the noble girl that message.
Her soul and heart burned for her brother's sake,
Her heart was all a-flame. She took the bane
To do his will. Now Shah Ardshir one day
Went forth to hunt and shoot the onager,
Returned at noon and visited the daughter
Of Ardawan That moon-faced lady ran,
And proffered to the Shah a topaz cup
Full of cold water, sugar, and fine meal,

c 1393

And mixed therewith the bane to please Bahman.
 As Shah Ardshir received the cup it fell
 Out of his hand and shivered on the ground.
 The queen shook with affright, her heart was riven.
 Her agitation made the Shah suspect,
 Who, doubting what the turning sky would bring,
 Enjoined a slave to fetch four fowls. They thought
 That his surmise was false, but when the birds
 Were put down to the meal they ate and died¹
 Thus certified the pious monarch summoned
 An archimage—his minister—and said —
 " If thou shouldst seat a foe upon thy throne,
 Who by thy kindness groweth so bemused
 As rashly to lay hand upon thy life,
 What is the punishment for one so raised,
 How shall we remedy our own default ?"

The archimage replied " If any subject
 Attempt the world-lord's life thou must behead
 The guilty and accept no other counsel."

Thereat the Shah commanded " Make the daughter
 Of Ardawan a corpse "

The archimage
 Went out behind the queen, who quaked convicted,
 But said " O sage' my day and thine will pass
 I cannot say thee nay if thou wilt slay me,
 But—I am now with child, and by Ardshir,
 So if 'tis right to cause my blood to flow,
 And gibbet me on high, wait till my babe
 Be born, then carry out the Shah's behest"

The shrewd archimage returned and told his master,
 But he made answer " Hearken not to her,
 But do my bidding."

"Tis an evil day,"

The archimage reflected, " when such orders
 Come from the Shah ' We all, both young and old,
 Must die, and he is sonless¹ Though he live

To count unnumbered years yet when he dieth
 A foe will have his throne. Well may I dare
 To substitute high policy for such
 A feckless action. I will save her life.
 I may induce him to repent or else
 Can do his bidding when her child is born "

He got apartments ready in his palace
 That he might tend her as his soul and body,
 And told his wife " I would not have a breath
 Of air behold her "

Then " I have," he thought,
 " Foes and to spare, and doubts for good or ill
 Attach to every one, so I will take
 Such order that no slanderer shall foul
 My stream "

He went his way and gelt himself,
 Used cautery and drugs and bandages,
 Then put his genitals in salt forthwith,
 As swift as smoke enclosed them in a casket,
 And sealed it up. With pallid face and groaning
 He came before the lofty throne, laid down
 The casket closed and sealed, and said " Now let
 The Shah entrust this to his treasurer
 With an inscription thereupon to state
 The matters appertaining and the date "

§ 3

*How Shapur was born to Ardashir by the Daughter of Ardawan,
 and how after seven Years Ardashir heard of his Son and
 acknowledged him*

Now, when the time of birth drew near, the archmage
 Told not the secret e'en to the air. The daughter
 Of Ardawan brought forth a son—one ardent
 And with the royal mien. The minister

Excluded all folk, named the babe Shapur,¹
 And hid him seven years till he became
 A king in looks, in mien, and Grace. It chanced
 One day that the wazir drew near, perceived
 Tears on Ardshir's face, and addressed him thus —
 "O Shah¹ successful art thou yet thy soul
 Is fed on care' In this world thou hast gained
 Thy full desire and cast thy foeman's head
 Down from the throne. Now is the time for mirth
 And quaffing wine, not for solicitude.
 c 1395 Earth's seven climes are 'neath thy sway, and thine
 Are troops and state and policy."

He answered —

"O holy archimage and confidant'
 Our scimitar hath justified the age,
 Grief, travail, and distress have passed away
 My years amount to fifty-one, my hairs
 Once musk are camphor, and my roses gone
 I ought to have a son before me now,
 A joy of heart, a source of strength, a guide.
 A sonless sire is like a sireless son,
 And taken only to a stranger's breast
 A foe succeedeth to my crown and wealth,
 And all my games are travail, pains, and dust"

Then thought that shrewd old man " 'Tis time to
 speak."

He said "O Shah ! who chenshest thy lieges,
 Magnanimous, shrewd-hearted, and supreme'
 If thou wilt promise me to spare my life
 I will remove my lord's distress "

The Shah

Replied "O sage¹ why shouldst thou fear for that?
 Say what thou knowest and enlarge thereon,
 For what is better than a wise man's words ?"

He made reply : " Pure and shrewd-hearted Shah !

¹ *I e*, Shah's son.

I gave a casket to thy treasurer
Now let the Shah vouchsafe to ask for it "

The Shah said to his treasurer • " He asketh
For that which he consigned to thy safe keeping
Restore it that we may examine it,
And haply cease to live a life of care."

The treasurer produced and gave the casket
Back to the minister. The Shah inquired —
" What is there in it under lock and seal ?"

He made reply " The blood of mine affliction,
And parts of shame dissevered by the roots
To me thou gavest Ardawan's own daughter
Until thou shouldst require her corpse of me
I slew her not because she was with child,
And I feared God, but sacrificed my manhood,
When thou didst give that order, and cut off
My parts of shame that none might slander me,
Or plunge me into infamy Thy son
Hath been in keeping of thy minister
Seven years. No other king hath son like him,
And his sole semblance is the moon in heaven
In love I gave to him the name Shapur,
And may his fortune jubilate the sky
His mother too is with him, educating
The prince her son "

The world's king marvelled at him,
Began to muse upon that child, then said —

" O shrewd of heart and well advised' much toil
Hast thou endured ¹ I will not let it age
With thee. Select a hundred of his years,
Like him in face and stature, breast and limb,
And all in like garb, neither worse nor better.
Send them to play at polo on the ground,
And furnish balls. When those fair youths are there
My soul will yearn for love upon my child,
My heart will be a witness to the truth,

C 1396

And make me know my son."

At break of day

The minister arrived and brought the boys
In dress, in stature, and in mien so like
As not to be distinguished Thou hadst said —
" A holiday is toward in the park,
And prince Shapur is in the thick of it,"
For when the youth began to play he bore
The ball off from the rest so that Ardshir,
On coming to the ground, accompanied
By young and old, and looking at the boys,
Could from his bosom heave a deep, cold sigh,
Could point his son out to his minister,
And say " Behold a young Ardshir is yonder !"

The counsellor replied " O Shah [!] thy heart
Hath testified to thine own son, but wait
Till yon fair children drive the ball anear thee."

Then Shah Ardshir bade an attendant " Go,
And drive the ball from them that I may see
Which boy will come forth bravely midst the brave,
As though a lion, and bear off the ball
Before my very eyes, regarding none
Of all this company, for such will be,
Past doubt, my very son in blood and body,
In limbs and race."

The servant did his bidding,
And drove the ball before the cavaliers.
The boys as swift as arrows followed it,
But, when they neared Ardshir, came to a stand,
Albeit unwillingly. Shapur alone,
That Lion, still came on, seized, and bore off
The ball before his sire, and then, withdrawing,
Restored it to the boys. The Shah's heart joyed,
As when an old man groweth young again,
The hoisemen raised the young prince from the ground,
And passed him on from hand to hand until

The king of kings could clasp him to the breast,
 And bless the Judge of all He kissed Shapur
 On head and face and eyes, and said " Such wonders
 Should not be hidden I ne'er dreamed of this, C. 1397
 For I presumed him slain just as God greatedened
 My kingship and increased my monuments
 Within the world¹ Thou canst not shun His bidding
 Though thou shouldst raise thy head above the sun "

He called for gold and many precious stones
 Out of his treasury They poured them forth
 And sifted¹ musk and ambergris withal
 Upon Shapur until his head was hidden
 With gold, and none could see his face for jewels.
 The Shah heaped gems too on his minister,
 Set him upon a seat inlaid with gold,
 And gave him wealth enough to furnish all
 His house and halls The Shah then bade the daughter
 Of Ardawan to go in peace and joy
 Back to the palace, pardoned all her fault,
 And cleansed his Moon of rust He had all men
 Of parts within the city brought to teach
 The boy to write the ancient tongue, to wear
 The mien of loyal haughtiness, to wheel
 His steed in battle, and thus mounted show
 His spear-point to the enemy, to quaff,
 Give largess, entertain at feasts, array
 The host, and all the toil and work of war.
 He had a new die struck for all the coinage
 Both gold and silver, large and small alike ,
 On one side was his own name, on the other
 That of his great wazir—one held in honour
 As an experienced man and counsellor.
 Both names appeared on documents The Shah
 Gave him the ring, the signet, and the rule,
 Bestowed a treasure on the poor that lived

¹ Reading with T.

By labour, chose a site where brambles grew,
 And made thereof a jocund seat, its name
 Jund-i-Shapiir, thus only known to fame.

§ 4

*How Ardshir, to find out the Future of his Reign, sent
 to Kaid of Hind, and Kaid's Reply*

Shapur grew cypress-tall and, since they feared
 The evil eye, was ever with Ardshir,
 Attending like wazir and minister

The Shah had not a day's repose from warfare,
 Or leisure to disport himself, for when
 1398 He had relieved a place of enemies
 They rose elsewhere. He said "I pray the Maker,
 Both publicly and privily, that I
 May hold earth free from foes and then become
 A devotee."

His glorious minister
 Replied "O Shah, whose heart is bright, whose words
 Are true' dispatch we an ambassador
 To Kaid of Hind who is a man of knowledge,
 And good at need, can estimate high heaven,
 And tell the door of joy, the road to rum.
 He will divine, accounting it no toil,
 Nor asking guerdon for his answering
 If thou without a rival wilt possess
 The seven climes."

On hearing this the Shah
 Chose him a high-born youth of ready wit
 To go as envoy to the sage of Hind,
 With many steeds, with gold, and silk of Chin,
 And said to him "Go to the sage and say •—
 'O man of fortune and of truthful speech'

Find from the stars when I shall rest from war,
 And win me full possession of the realm,
 For if I must be evermore in toil
 I will not be so lavish of my treasure."

The envoy came to Kaid with gifts and largess,
 And gave the message of the king of kings,
 Explaining all. Kaid greeted him, grew grave,
 Turned to his arts, brought forth his astrolabe,
 Observed the stars, and placed upon his lap
 An Indian planisphere to ascertain
 High heaven's purpose touching peace, success,
 Woe, and mishap, and then informed the envoy —
 " I have discerned the fortunes of Iran,
 And of the Shah If he will blend with his
 The offspring of Mihrak, son of Nushzad,
 The Shah will sit in peace upon his throne,
 And need not send his armies anywhither,
 His wealth will wax, his travail wane Depart.
 Weigh not these two realms' feud.¹ Iran will prove
 Conformable when this hath been achieved,
 And he will compass all his heart's desire "

He gave the envoy gifts, and said " My sayings
 Must not be hidden. If he shall obey,
 High heaven will give him cause to prize my
 words."

The envoy went back to the Shah and told
 What he had heard from noble Kaid, whereat
 Ardshir was vexed, his visage grew like gall.
 He answered " God forbid that I should see
 Descendants from Mihrak and bring my foe
 Out of the street inside my house to war
 Against my realm! Woe for my lavished treasure,

^c 1399

¹ We must suppose that the troubles of the Shah arose from the fact that two of the sons of Ardawan had taken refuge in Hind which, either directly or indirectly, was assisting them and their adherents in Iran P reads " between these two families," *i.e.* the rival dynasties of Ardshir and Ardawdn.

Mine expeditions sent, and labours borne!¹
Mihrak hath but one daughter left, and none
Hath seen her. I will bid men search for her
In Rum, in Hind, in Chin, and in Taraz,
And when I find her I will have her burned,
And make the dust lament for her with tears "

He sent one skilful in pursuit of foes,
And horsemen also, to Jahram Now when
The daughter of Mihrak heard this she fled,
And lay concealed within a house ten months.
While she was hidden with a village-chieftain,
Who held her in high honour, she grew up
Like some straight cypress and increased in wisdom,
In Grace, and beauty, not a peer had she,
The realm had not so tall a cypress-tree.

§ 5

*The Adventure of Shapur with the Daughter of Mihrak,
and his taking her to Wife*

Within a little while the monarch's fortune
Grew bright He went to hunt at dawn one day
With wise Shapur. The horsemen ranged around,
And cleared the plain of game. A spacious seat
Appeared afar with garth, park, hall, and palace.
Shapur rode on until he reached the village,
And halted at the mansion of the chief
There was a pleasant garth inside the walls,
A verdant spot, and when the youth went in
He saw a maiden like the moon, who plied
A wheel and bucket at a well. Now when
She saw Shapur she came and showered blessings —
" Be happy, smiles and joy be thine, and all
Thy years unscathed ! Thy courser is athirst,

No doubt, and all the water in the village
Is brackish, but in this well cold and sweet.
With thy permission I will water him."

Shapur replied. "What words are these, fair
maid'

I have attendants, they shall draw the water "

The maiden turned her back upon the youth,
She went apart and sat beside a stream
He bade a servant: " Bring a bowl and draw."

The attendant heard and ran, rope, wheel, and
bucket

c 1400

Were there, but when the bucket sank and filled
It rose not though he strove with knitted brows,
So heavy was it. Chidingly Shapur
Came up, and said to him " Why, thou half woman '
Did not a woman work rope, wheel, and bucket?
She pumpeth what she will but thou art pumped,
And askest help'"

He took the rope himself,
But found the work severe. Discovering
The bucket's weight he praised that fair-cheeked
maid,

And said " Good sooth, she is of royal race
To raise a bucket of such weight as this '"

When he had drawn the bucket up the damsel
Came and saluted him most graciously,
And said " Live happily while time endureth.
May wisdom ever be thy monitor.
The virtue of Shapur, son of Ardsbir,
Could doubtless turn the water in the well
To milk'"

He said to that sweet-spoken maid —
" How know'st thou, moon-face' that I am Shapur ?"

She answered him " Full often have I heard
This saying from the lips of truthful men :—
' The brave Shapur is like an elephant

In strength, as bounteous as the river Nile,
 In height a cypress, with a frame of brass,
 And like Bahman in all."¹

He said. "O moon-face 1
 Tell truly what I ask. Declare thy stock,
 Because thy mien is royal"

She replied —

"The daughter of the village-chieftam I,
 From whom I get my comeliness and strength "

"Lies never pass with princes," he rejoined,
 "A tiller of the soil would not possess
 A moon-faced daughter, fair, all scent and hue "
 "O prince," she said, "when life is guaranteed me,
 I will inform thee fully of my birth,
 Safe from the anger of the king of kings."

He said: "Revenge on friends is not a plant
 That groweth in our garden, so say on,
 And fear not me or our just, noble Shah."

"The very truth is that I am," she said,
 "The daughter of Mihrak, son of Nushzad
 A pious person brought me as a child,
 And gave me to this worthy village-chief,
 So now, for fear of the illustrious Shah,
 I draw the water and do other chars."

Shapur took up his lodging there and, when
 The village-chief was waiting on him, said —
 c 1401 "Give me, with Heaven as witness, this fair maid "

The village-chief accorded his desire
 With all the rites of those that worship Fire.

¹ From whom, according to one of the two genealogies in the Shahnama, the House of Sasan was descended See p 199

§ 6

*How Urmuzd was born to Shapur by the Daughter
of Mihrak*

It came to pass that soon that straight-stemmed
Cypress,

Like blossom, came to fruit. Shapur conveyed her
To his own palace from the chieftain's house,
And cherished her like some ripe quince.¹ Now when
Nine months had passed that Moon-face bare a son,
The image of his sire. Thou wouldst have said —
"Asfandiyar hath come again or famed
Ardshir, the cavalier."² The prince, his sire,
Named him Urmuzd, for he was like a cypress
Midst herbs, and after seven years possessed
No equal in the world. His parents hid him,
And never let him go abroad to play

Once when Ardshir went hunting for a week,
As did Shapur withal, Urmuzd escaped
Unnoticed, weary of his tasks, and ran
Forth to the riding-ground of Shah Ardshir,
A lasso in one hand and in the other
Two shafts, with other boys with balls and sticks,
Just as the world-lord with his retinue,
And with his shrewd high priest, came from the chase.
When he was nigh the ground one of the youths
Smote strongly and awry so that the ball
Rolled near the Shah. None followed it, the boys
Stopped short, balked in their game, except Urmuzd
Who, rushing like a blast before the Shah,
Bare off the ball before his grandsire's face,

¹ This sentence is inserted from P

² Probably Shall Bahman is meant Cf. previous note and Vol v
p 282

Amid the soldiers' hue and cry, and shouted,
 So that the conquering Shah was all amazement.—
 " The sticks, the riding-ground, and pluck are mine,
 And mine it is to battle with the brave!"

Thus to the archmage said Ardshir • " Inquire
 About the lineage of this noble youth "

The archmage asked None knew, or would not say.
 " Take up the youth and bring him," said the king.

The archmage went and raised him from the dust,
 Then bare him to the Shah of noble men,
 Who said " Illustrious child ' what is thy stock ?"

He answered in loud tones " My name and race
 C 1402 Should not be hidden thy son's son am I—
 Shapur's—born from the daughter of Mihrak "

The monarch of the world was in amaze
 Thereat, smiled, mused, bade come Shapur, and asked
 Questions past count Shapur, that noble man,
 Was terrified, his heart was sorrowful,
 His cheek was wan. The great Shah smiled on him,
 And said " Hide not thy child, we need a son,
 And whencesoe'er he cometh, it is well,
 Since, so they say, he is a prince's child."

Shapur replied " Be blest and with thy looks
 Sustain the world! He cometh from my loins,
 And he is named Urmuzd, he shineth like
 A tulip midst the grass. I have awhile
 Concealed him from the king until the fruit-tree
 Should bring forth fruit The daughter of Mihrak
 Bare this illustrious child, who is my child
 Beyond all doubt."

Then, while his father listened,
 He told at large what happened at the well.

Ardshfr rejoiced to hear the tale and went
 Back to the palace with his minister,
 Embraced that darling child, then sought his throne.
 He had a golden ante-throne prepared,

And bade bring torque and golden coronet
 Wherewith they decked the young child's head, then
 fetched

Both gold and jewels from the treasury,
 And heaped them till the boy's head disappeared,
 Whereat his grandsire drew him from the heap,
 Bestowed the gold and jewels on the poor,
 And still more splendid presents on the sages,
 Decked with brocade the Fire-fanes and the hall
 Wherein were held Nauruz, and Sada-feast,¹
 Made ready with his lords a banquet-house,
 Placed minstrels everywhere, and then addressed
 The land's wise chieftains " Never should one slight
 The sayings of a learned astrologer,
 For thus said Kaid of Hind ' Ne'er will thy fortune,
 Thy throne, thy realm, thy crown, thy treasure, host,
 Thy royal diadem, thy Grace, and state,
 Be glad and jocund till the families
 Of thee and of Mihrak, son of Nushzad,
 Shall be conjoined in blood' For eight years now
 The sky hath blessed our wishes Ever since
 Urmuzd was added to my peace the world
 Hath granted what I would, earth's seven climes
 All have been ordered, and my heart hath had
 Its will of fortune."

All his underlings
 Gave him thenceforth the style of " King of kings." ²

§7

Of the Wisdom of Ardashir and his Method of administering the Realm

Now hear and learn the wisdom of Ardashir,
 Who toiled, gave virtue vogue, and everywhere

C 1403

¹ See Vol. i, pp. 74,123.
 VOL. VI.

² Cf. p. 254
 S

Spread love and justice As his forces grew
At court he sent his agents to all parts
To say: " Let none of you that hath a son
Allow him to grow up in ignorance,
But teach him horsemanship and how to fight
With mace and bow and shafts of poplar-wood."

A youth, when trained to strength and grown efficient.

Would come up from his province to the court,
The Shah's famed court, and then the muster-master
Would have him registered and give him quarters.
These young recruits, when war broke out, went forth
Commanded by some paladin, some archmage
Among the officials anxious to excel,
One to each thousand youths. He went with them
To note their dispositions—cowardly,
Or too infirm for war—and to report
On all by letter to the king of kings,
Who when he had perused it and received
The messenger, would have a robe of honour
Of what was choicest in the treasury
Prepared for those that showed accomplishment,
But non-effectives carried arms no more.
Thus grew his troops so many that they passed
The purview of the stars, and men of counsel
Received promotion at his hands. A herald
Used to make circuit of the host, proclaiming —
"Ye men of name and warriors of the Shah!
Whoe'er hath sought for favour in his sight,
And washed earth with the blood of valiant men,
Shall have from me a royal gift and leave
His fame as his memorial."

He ordered
The whole world with his troops, a shepherd he
With soldiers for his flock.

He kept a staff

Of experts in his public offices,
 Committing naught to those incompetent.
 They made a point of style and penmanship,
 And when one showed superiority,
 And when his principal reported it, c.1404
 The king of kings increased for him his pay.
 The second-rate served not the Shah himself,
 But gave assistance to his officers,
 He only kept the scribes that were adepts,
 And, when he saw such, he would praise them, saying:—
 " A scribe that filleth up the treasury,
 And by his talent lesseneth toil, availeth
 State, host, and subjects pleading for redress.
 The scribes are as the sinews of my soul,
 And monarchs in disguise."

When governors

Went to their provinces he used to charge them —
 " Hold money vile and sell no man for pelf,
 Because this Hostel bideth not with any,
 But seek for wisdom and all righteousness,
 Let greed and madness be afar from thee,
 And take none of thy kith and kin, the troops
 That I have given thee are friends enough.
 Give largess monthly to the poor, but naught
 To foes. If by thy justice thou shalt make
 Thy province prosper thou wilt prosper too
 And joy in justice, but if any poor
 Sleep there in fear thou sellest thine own soul
 For gold and silver."

All that came to court

On state affairs, or to require redress
 Were met by trusty henchmen of the Shah,
 And asked about the royal governors —
 " Are they just men or covetous? Do any
 Lie wronged by them? What learned men are there?
 Are any faint through want? Would any be

Of service to the Shah as being old
 And veteran, or devout? The king of kings
 Saith 'Let my toils and treasure gladden none
 Except the men of wisdom and of lore,
 For what is better than one wise and aged?
 I seek experienced men and youths approved,
 And patient, for if youths are wise and apt
 To learn they fittingly replace the old''

As often as his host went forth to war
 He acted prudently and cautiously,
 And chose some scribe—a wise, learned, heedful man—
 And charged him with a courteous embassy
 Lest there be unjust strife The envoy used
 To visit the Shah's foe to learn his case,
 And list to him if he were wise and held
 War's sorrows, toils, and ills calamities

- D. 1405 If so he would have presents from the Shah,
 With grant, with patent, and remembrances,
 But if he had a wrathful head, a heart
 Revengeful, and blood boiling in his liver
 The Shah would give the host a donative,
 That no one might be malcontent, appoint
 Some paladin aspiring, watchful, wise,
 And placable, and therewithal a scribe—
 A man of precedent and mastery—
 To keep watch that the soldiers did no wrong,
 Then mounted on an elephant a man,
 Whose voice could reach two miles, thus to proclaim —
 "Ye chieftains of the fray, brave, famed, and bold!
 No harm must come on poor or rich and noble.
 Pay for your provand at each stage and earn
 My subjects' thanks, and let God's worshippers
 Touch not another's goods. Whoe'er shall show
 The foe his back his outlook will be gloomy,
 ' Because his grave will be at hand, or chains
 Will gall his neck and breast, or else his name

Will be struck off the roll, and he himself
Will feed on dust and on dark dust repose "

Then he would charge the captain of the host —

^{li} Be neither slack nor rash to attack, keep always

The elephants in front and push out scouts

Four miles. Be instant, when a fight is toward,

To go among the troops, bid them remember

Both who and what they are, why in the field:—

' They are a hundred horsemen to our one,

And yet their hundred to our one are few¹

For every one of you, both young and old

I shall receive a present from Ardashir'

When cavaliers advance upon both sides

Let not thy warriors, in their eagerness

To fight, press on till they expose the centre,

However large the host. Dispose thy left

Against the foe's right wing that all may have

A chance of fighting and array thy right

Against his left Let all look to their baggage

The centre must stand fast, let no one there

Advance a foot, but if the opposing centre

Advance, advance thine own When thou hast

triumphed

Forbear to shed the blood of foes in flight,

While, if they ask for quarter, grant it them,

And be not vengeful. When thou seest the foe

Retreat, haste not to quit thine own position,

Or deem thyself secure from ambuscade, c. 1406

But, once thou art assured, see that thou heed not

Another's words Bestow the spoil on those

That sought the fray and bravely washed their hearts

Of love of life, and bring withal all captives

Without fail to my court. I will erect them

A city where a thorn-brake stood¹ As thou

Wouldst live unvexed and scathless turn in naught

¹ Reading with P

From these my counsellings, and in thy triumphs
Incline to God because He is past doubt
Thy guide."

Whenever there arrived an envoy
From any part, Rum, Turkistan, or Persia,
The marchlords got to know it, for they held
Such things of moment, lodging was provided,
This was the business of the governors,
With provand, raiment, and no stint of carpets,
Upon the route They would inform themselves
As to the envoy's business with the Shah,
And then a scribe upon a noble beast
Would go to Shah Ardshir that troops might meet
The envoy. Then the conquering Shah would have
His throne made ready and attendants ranked
On either side thereof in cloth of gold,
Would have the envoy summoned to the presence,
Seat him beside the throne, greet him, and learn
His business good or ill, name, and repute,¹
His views of right and wrong, about his land,
About its customs, king, and armaments,
Conduct him to a palace with the state
That was befitting an ambassador,
And furnish what he needed, then invite him
To feast and revel, seat him by the throne,
Would take him out on royal hunting-days,
Escorted by a countless retinue,
Dismiss him with the forms due to an envoy,
And fashion him a monarch's robe of honour.

He sent withal archmagas to all parts—
Men wise and shrewd and kindly—to build cities,
And lavish wealth thereon, that every man
Resourceless, homeless, and estranged from fortune,
Might have a living and a dwelling-place,
And thus increase the number of his subjects

¹ Reading with P.

So his good name is current now as then
 Upon the lips and in the thoughts of men,
 And one sole monarch¹ in the world we find
 That now recalleth lost Ardashir to mind,
 And mine 'tis living glory to bestow
 Upon him.² May his end all goodness know.

c 1407

The Shah had many secrets, for he kept
 His agents everywhere Whene'er the rich
 Grew poor the Shah would help him, if informed,
 And leave him prosperous with fertile lands,
 Home, slaves, and underlings, arranging all
 Without the city's ken, and put his children,
 If they had talent, in the charge of tutors.
 In every quarter of the towns were schools,
 With colleges for worshippers of Fire
 He suffered none to want save such as kept
 The fact a secret, and his custom was
 To go at daybreak to the public ground,
 Where all that sought redress could come, and there
 Judged subject and friend's son impartially.
 His justice made the whole world prosperous,
 And all his subjects' hearts rejoiced in him

When any king to justice is allied,
 In time's despite his footprints will abide.

Observe the policy of this brave chief,
 Who, thou wouldst say, engrossed all excellence.
 His agents, wise and watchful officers,
 Went through the world Where any land lay waste,
 Or streams ran low, he took the taxes off,
 No holding was too mean for his regard
 If any thane was poor, and losing all,
 The Shah supplied both implements and cattle
 And let him not be ousted from his home.

Now hear, O king ! the sayings of this sage
 And make the world as bright as in his age,

1

Mahmud.

2 Reading with P

As thou untroubled and unvexed wouldst be,
And pile up wealth not gained injuriously,
Seek that thy subjects may be unvexed too,
And have from all the praises justly due.

In Rum and Chin, in Turkistan and Hind,
The world grew as 'twere Ruman silk to him,
Both toll and tax came in continually
From all lands, none opposing him. He summoned
The nobles of Iran and set those worthy
Upon the royal throne, then rose and made
Oration to them well and graciously —

C 1408 " O chieftains of the state, ye that are wise
And prudent¹ know that swiftly turning heaven
Assaileth not through justice nor embraceth
Through love, but setteth whom it will on high,
And then consigneth him to sorry dust,
His name alone surviveth, all his toils
Go with him to oblivion, one whose aims
Are good may leave a good name, naught besides
Now as for thee, Urmuzd² thy lot will be
As holy God approveth Turn and open
Thyself to Him who is the Lord of all,
And multiplieth good From every ill
Take shelter with the Ruler of the world,
For ill and good are in His power, and He
Will make all hardship easy to thee, give
A bright heart to thee, and victorious fortune.
Judge first by mine experience and perpend
Mine own past good and evil while still fresh.
When I took refuge with the Lord of all
My heart was gladdened by the crown and throne.
I rule the seven climes for so seemed good
To His authority. From Ruin and Hind
I take a tribute, and the world hath grown
Like Ruman silk to me. Thanks be to God,
Who gave me strength, exalted star, and favour

From Sol and Saturn; yet who knoweth how
 To praise Him worthily or give Him worship
 Proportioned to His work so that He may
 Be mindful of my service and set forth
 His greatness and omnipotence⁷ And now
 What from our sense of justice—our delight—
 We purpose we will tell. Although one tenth
 From all communities is due to me,
 As thane and archimage will testify,
 I ask it not, I give it back to you—
 The tithe on land and impost on the flocks—
 Except the tithe on increase which the agent
 Will pay into our treasury¹ The tithe,
 That erst I took, and impost less or more,
 I have employed on useful works and kept
 A countless host at court I sought your good,
 Your safety, and the abatement of the Faith
 Of Ahriman. Clasp, all' your hands to God,
 Be diligent and break not His behest
 Who is the Lord and Giver of all things,
 The Artist of, the sky above, the Helper
 Of the oppressed, but glory not o'er others
 By reason of His favour, nor thereby
 Deceive thy heart, for pride will have a fall
 Where are the men whose crowns erst frayed the
 clouds?

Where those whose quarry was the mighty lion ?
 They, all of them, are couched on dust and brick,
 And he is blest that sowed but seed of good.

List, all of you that are within my realm '

To these my final counsels. Now will I

Point out to you five courses that will profit

c.

1409

Far more than throne and treasury, so list,

Ye young and old ! the words of famed Ardschi'r,

¹ " esperant que vos chefs apporteront dans mon tresor ce que vous aurez de superflu" (Mohl).

The man who knoweth that the Just One is
Will worship holy God and Him alone.
Again, misprize not knowledge, whether thou
Be liege or lord, and, thirdly, be assured
That wise men ne'er forget, and, fourthly, know
That fear of doing wrong availeth more
Than gibbet, bonds, and dungeon Fifthly, none
Approveth of a slanderer's words To these
I add one counsel more, a counsel better
Than eyes and life and goods. blest is the man
That maketh this world prosper, is the same
In public and in private, and moreover
Soft-spoken, modest, wise, and cordial.
Spend not thy money for the sake of show,
Or waste it foolishly on vanities,
Else there will be no profit, none will praise,
Nor holy men approve, but choose the mean,
Maintain it, and the wise will call thee prudent
Again, there are five ways of making bright
Thy Faith and conduct, and of furthering
Thy comfort and thy joy, for in their honey
There is no bane to harm thee. First of all,
Seek not to pass by greed or pains the lot
Assigned to thee by God, the man content
Is rich, for each spring's blooms have borne him fruit
Next, break the neck of greed, and tell no secret
Before the women Thirdly, court not war
And strife, for they bring toil and anguish Fourthly,
Seclude thy heart from grief and be not troubled
O'er ills not come, and, fifthly, meddle not
With things irrelevant, for know that they
Are not thy quarry. Hear ye all! my counsel,
My profitable speech, 'twill be right dear
To all men's hearts, for they will get thereby
Security from loss. Pause not from learning
If thou wouldst fire thy mind. If thou hast children

Have them instructed and cut short their play.
 Heed, all ! my words and pains on your behalf
 Let all the just and shrewd of heart break not
 Their mutual intercourse, and compass ye
 Heart's peace in four ways good and profitable
 First, fear, respect, and reverence holy God C 1410
 That He may be thy Helper and thy Guide,
 Next, rule thyself and look to thine own skirt,
 Take God's commands to heart and tender them
 Like thine own body ; thirdly, make the right
 Plain and ban fraud and falsehood, fourthly, swerve
 not

In thought or action from the Shah's behest,
 But love him like thyself so that thy face
 May clear at his command Confine thy heart
 To loyalty to him, let not thy soul
 Swerve from his bidding, love him as thy life,
 Perceiving that his justice guardeth thee
 The cares of royalty are with the Shah,
 He seeketh the world's gam and not its loss.
 If, knowing that his marchlords and his troops
 Afflict his realm, he interveneth not
 He is no world-lord, and the crown of kingship
 Befitteth him not, he hath blacked out his patent
 As king of kings, his Grace is gone.¹ Know this
 An unjust monarch is a ravening lion
 Upon the pasture-land , so is the subject
 That heedeth not with diligence and pains
 The Shah's command, his life will be all grief
 And toil, and never will he reach old age
 Within this Hostelry. If thou hast need
 Of goodness and of greatness thou wilt win them
 Not by thine avarice and arrogance.
 May all my subjects' hearts be glad, and may
 The world too prosper 'neath my righteous sway."

¹ Cf- p. 208 and note

§ 8

How Kharrad praised Ardshir

When Shah Ardshir resumed his seat, an elder,
 By name Kharrad, one just in word and thought,
 Advanced before the throne, thus saying " O king '¹
 Be blest while time endureth, ever glad,
 And of victorious fortune. May realm, crown,
 And throne rejoice in thee Thou hast attained
 To such an eminence that bird and beast
 Rank at thy throne, before it and behind.
 Exalted over all that wear the crown
 Art thou—the greatest man in all the world
 Who can describe thy justice ? Thou art based
 On justice and on greatness More and more
 We offer up our praise and thanks to God

- C. 1411 That we live in thy days and are thy lieges
 In all things, eager to behold thy face,
 And yearning for thy gracious words and love.
 Mayst thou be safe as we are safe through thee,
 And ne'er may we break fealty Thou hast barred
 To us and to our peers the foe's approach
 From Hind and Chin, and rapine, war, and tumult
 Have passed away, the shouts of enemies
 Reach not our ears. Remain for ever happy,
 And let archmages bear the toils of state
 No king is wise as thou, no thought transcendeth
 Thy counsel, and thou so hast founded justice
 Within Iran that it will glad our sons.
 Thy words have grown so potent that thy counsels
 Make old men young, and all the nobles here
 Joy in thee and thy justice. Thou increasest
 The stock of wisdom by thy deeds, the world
 Hath been illumed by sight of thee. Thou art
 A robe of honour God-bestowed on fortune,

On girdle, crown, and throne. Still may the Shah
 Continue loved and just, the world hath not
 A king like thee in mind. The world is safe
 By reason of thy might and Grace, and blest
 Are they beneath the shadow of thy wings.
 For ever be thy seat upon the throne,
 The world beneath thy word and will alone."

§ 9

On the Faithlessness of Fortune

Thou, who the marrow of the tale wouldst win'
 Divorce thy heart from this old Wayside Inn,
 Which hath seen many like to thee and me
 But with none resteth, whatso'er thou be—
 King or attendant—it will outstay thee,
 For be thou drudge, or lord of crown and throne,
 Thou hast to pack thy baggage and be gone.
 The sky will melt thee, though of iron mould,
 And favour thee no more when thou art old,
 So when the charming Cypress bendeth low,
 And when the dark Narcissi overflow,
 When cheeks of cercis take a saffron hue,
 And he is grave anon that erst was gay,
 Then, since souls slumber not as bodies do,
 Bide not alone, thy mates are on their way
 Be thou a monarch or of subject birth
 Thou'lt have no dwelling-place save darksome earth
 Where are the chieftains with their crowns and thrones,
 The cavaliers of fortune ever bright ?
 Where are the sages and the warlike ones, c 1412
 The princes and the leaders in the fight ?
 On pillows made of bricks and dust they rest,
 And he that sowed but seed of good is blest.
 A great exemplary is king Ardashir,
 So bear in mind my tale when thou shalt hear.

§ 10

How Ardshir charged Shapur and died

Aged eight and seventy years¹ the watchful world-lord
Grew sick, he knew that death was drawing nigh,
That his green leaf would wither, so he summoned
Shapur, addressed him counsel past compute,
And said. " Be mindful of my charge, but hold
The words of evil speakers merely wind.
When thou hast heard my sayings practise them,
Discerning haply worth from worthlessness.
I with the scimitar of justice righted
The world and honoured men of noble birth
That done, the earth waxed but mine own life waned
When I had toiled and sweated much, and treasures
Had multiplied to me. So now I leave
The travail and the pleasure all to thee.
We are in turn exalted and abased,
Such is the process of the circling sky,
Which whiles afflicteth, whiles affecteth, us'
Now fortune is a vicious steed, and scath
Will wreck thee in prosperity, anon
A horse well trained whose neck is arched for thee
In all good will Know, son ! that this false Hostel
Hath terrors every for the happy man.
Be heedful of thine own and wisdom's case
If thou wouldst 'scape ill days When monarchs honour
The Faith then it and royalty are brothers,
For they are mingled so that thou wouldst say —
' They wear one cloak.' The Faith endureth not
Without the throne nor can the kingship stand
Without the Faith, two pieces of brocade
Are they all interwoven and set up

¹ Cf. p 254.

Before the wise. The Faith doth need the Shah,
The Shah, were Faith to seek, would not be praised.
Each needeth other, and we see the pair
Uniting in beneficence. The man
Of Faith will carry off both worlds when he
Shall prove a lord of counsel and of wisdom.
Whenas the great king watcheth o'er the Faith,
Call it and kingship brothers, when he vexeth
The pious, call him impious. Disallow
In Faith the slanderer of pious kings.
What said the man approved and eloquent ?
¹ The Faith, if thou considerest, is the brain
Of Justice.¹

c 1413

Three things vex the royal throne:
The first one is the unjust sovereign,
The second, the exalter of the worthless
Above the worthy, and the third is he
That weddeth treasure and is instant still
For more. Be thine aim bounty, Faith, and wisdom,
And let no he pass current for it darkeneth
A man's face, ne'er will he be great and famous
See that thou heed not treasure, for dinars
Involve mankind in toil. If greed of treasure
Possess the great king he will vex his subjects,
For where the thane's wealth is there is the Shah's
Who, whatsoe'er the toil and pam may be,
Should guard it for him and should bring to fruit
His travail's bough. Strive to put wrath away,
And boldly blink the faults of other men.
If thou art wroth thou wilt repent withal,
So, when they make excuse, seek how to salve them.
Whene'er the Shah is wroth the good misprize him,
And since he is to blame in seeking ill
He should adorn his heart with good. If once
Thou sufferest fear to come within thy heart

¹ Cf p 250.

The counsels of thy foes' hearts will prevail.
Be boundless too in bounty, if thou canst,
My son¹ esteem not wealth. He should be king
The limit of whose bounty is the sky
Whenever trouble is a monarch's lot
Let him hold counsel with his archmages,
Let him inquire too of the right and wrong
Thereof, and lay the matter up at heart.

" On days when thou art purposing to hunt,
And use the binding hawk, mix not thy pleasures,
As wine and feast with open air and chase ,
Wine maketh heavy as all leaders know
Abandon such pursuits when foes appear,
Spend money freely, edge the swords, and summon
The troops of all the realm. Defer not thou
The day's work to the morrow and seat not
An evil counsellor beside the throne

- C. 1414 Search not the hearts of common folk for truth,
For from such questing loss will come to thee,
And if they bring ill tidings hearken not,
Nor grieve, they worship neither God nor king,
And clutching at their feet thou hast their heads
Such are the common people, but mayst thou
Be ever wise. Fear those that compass ill
In secret, for this straiteneth the world.
Tell naught to confidants for they have theirs,
And thou wilt meet thy sayings in the fosse,
Or find them spread abroad, and when thy secrets
Are common talk the sages will lose patience,
Thou wilt be wroth, the sage that calmeth thee
Will call thee light of head Seek not for faults
In others, that will manifest thine own,
While if thy wisdom be o'er swayed by passion
The sage will count thee not a man at all.
The Shah and worldlord should be wise that he
May be benevolent to every one.

ARDSHIR PAPAKAN

1 any man is rash and insolent,
Prone to accuse and to calumniate,¹
Let such have no place near to thee although
One of thy counsellors. When thou art Shah
Lay down revenge and wrath if thou wouldst have
The praises of the pious. He that sitteth
Upon the throne of state should be a wise,
God-fearing man. Be not a chatterer,
Nor make a show of sanctimoniousness
'n others' eyes. Hear what men say, lay up
he best, and note what pleaseth thee, weigh well
ry words to sages, being complaisant
id bright to all, scorn not the poor that beg,
'at not an adversary on a throne,
orgive the penitent, requiring not
avenge for what is passed, be just to all,
id cherish all, the bounteous, patient man
blest. What time the foe doth flatter thee
rough fear, array the host, bind on the tymbals,
go forth to the fight while he is shrinking,
weak of hand, but if he seeketh peace
d right, and harboureth, as thou perceivest,
) mischief in his heart, take tribute from him,
ek not revenge, and save his face. Adorn
y heart with knowledge, that hath worth,
know
d practise. Thou wilt be beloved if bounteous,
d famed if wise and just Keep thy sire's charg
mind and leave a like one to thy son.
have given my son his heritage,
injure none thereby, do ye transmit it,
e not the spirit of my words amiss.
w when five hundred years have passed away,
' dynasty will end, for thy descendants,
1 others of thy kin, will turn aside

¹ Reading with P

From this my charge, depart from rede and knowledge
 Not heeding the monitions of the wise,
 But, faithlessly neglectful of my charge,
 Be unjust, harsh, and tyrannous, oppress
 Their subjects, scorn the pious, don the robe
 Of wickedness, and grow up in the Faith
 Of Ahriman Then will be loosed what we
 Have bound, this Faith that we have fulled be fouled,
 This rede and charge of mine will come to naught,
 My country seem all desolate. I pray
 The Maker of the world, who knoweth both
 The hidden and the manifest, to guard you
 From every evil and that all your deeds
 May win fair fame God's blessing and our own
 Shall be upon the man whose warp is wisdom,
 Whose woof is justice, who in these regards
 Attempteth not to break my charge or striveth
 To turn my honey into colocynth
 Two score years and two months have passed since I
 Assumed the crown of kingship. I possess
 Six cities, all in pleasurable climes,
 And all of them well-watered I have named
 One Khurra-i-Ardshir,¹ its airs are all
 Musk-perfumed and its streams run milk, the second
 Is titled Ram Ardshir,² thence reached I Pars,
 The third Urmuzd Ardshir,³ whose airs would make
 An old man young—the lustre of the province
 Of Khuzistan,⁴ it hath folk, trade, and water.
 Another one is Birka-i-Ardshir,⁵
 Well stocked with gardens, pools, and rosaries,
 And two are in the district of Baghdad
 And the Farat, and rich in cattle, springs,
 And grass—foundations both, as thou mayst say,

¹ The Glory of Ardbhir.² See p 202.³ Cf. p. 302, *note*.⁴

Reading with P and T.

⁵ The Cistern of Ardshir

Of Shah Ardashir.¹ Bear them in mind when thou
Hear'st aught concerning me.

I have prepared

My baggage for the charnel-house. Bestow
My bier and take my seat. In this world I
Have borne great toils in public and in private.
Bejoice my soul with justice and be glad,
And conquering, on the throne."

He spake, and fortune

Grew dark. Woe for his head and throne and crown'
The fashion of this jocund world is thus c1416
It will not make its secrets known to us
Blest is the man who greatness ne'er hath known,
And hath no need to vanish from the throne.
Thou strivest, winning wealth in every way,
But man and wealth abide not in one stay,
Dust in the end is wedded to us all,
Our cheeks must be enshrouded by a pall.
Come bear we all a hand good to fulfil,
And tread not this unstable world for ill.
Oh well is he that taketh cups of wine
To toast the Shahs—those men of Faith divine—
For, as his cup of wine is slowly drained,
He droppeth off with ecstasy attained.

§ 11

*Thanksgiving to the Maker and Praise of Mahmud,
the great King*

To Him who made it let all praise ascend,
The Maker of space, time, and earth is He,
From Him are the beginning and the end,
From Him are passion and tranquillity

¹ These may be Bih-Ardshir built to replace Seleucia, destroyed by Avidius Cassius in A.D. 164, and Karakh-Marshan on the lower Tigris, They are given in Tabari's list of Ardashir's foundations NT, p. 19

He made the starry heavens, earth, and time
The great and little of the world are His,
From worthless stubble to the throne sublime
All things bear witness to us that He is.

Call none but Him the Author of the whole,
Whose ken naught open or concealed can shun,
Who showered blessings on Muhammad's soul,
And on his comrades also, every one.

They all were holy men and continent,
None can compute the words which erst they said,
Now by us too let countless words be spent
In thanking Him by whom the world was made

Praise we the crown too of the king of kings,
Whose throne doth cause the moon itself to shine,
World-lord Mahmud, the source whence largessings
And bounties spring, and who hath Grace divine.

Brave, bounteous, dowered with Grace, and just is he.
The age hath grown all joyful 'neath his sway—
The lord of peace, of crown, and treasury,
The lord of scimitar, of ax, and fray.

Our gracious world-lord, conscious what is meant
By merit, thanketh God through whom his hold
Is on the crown. Wise, fair, and eloquent
Is he, in years a youth, in wisdom old.

His Grace compelleth rain from Jupiter,
We sport beneath the shadow of his wings,
In fight he maketh heaven his echoer,
He scattereth jewels at his banquetings.

ARDSHIR PAPAKAN

When he is wroth the mountains melt away,
The welkin quaketh o'er the dust below;
His sires were Shahs and monarchs ere his day,
And sun and moon toy with him as they go.

May his renown last ever, may he see
Till his last day increasing happiness.
I head my story with his eulogy,
His majesty, his conduct, and address.

Throughout the world I witness his renown,
Until the end may good attend him still,
His mien hath given lustre to the crown,
And fortune been his breastplate 'gainst all ill.

Throughout the world all men of Faith divine,
And all the kings, rejoice in him alone,
Whose glorious fortune maketh heaven to shine,
For earth but baseth his illustrious throne.

He is a mighty Elephant of bale
In fight and at the feast a faithful sky,¹
For there, since his bright projects never fail,
Each billow of his ocean runneth high.

Earth's monarchs are his quarry in the chace,
Wild beasts and cattle in his peace abide,
In battle-days the whizzing of his mace
Dissundereth lion's heart and leopard's hide.

May his head flourish, justice fill his heart,
And with the world his head and crown ne'er part.

¹A sky that fulfils its promise of Iain.

XXIII

SHAPUR, SON OF ARDSHIR

HE REIGNED THIRTY YEARS AND TWO
MONTHS

ARGUMENT

Shapur ascends the throne and addresses the chiefs. He wars with success against Rum, appoints Urmuzd his successor, and dies.

NOTE

This reign affords a good illustration of the inaccurate way in which events are recorded even in the most historical of the four dynasties of the Shahnama. Shapur, son of Ardashir (Sapor I, A D 241-272), is confused with Shapur, son of Urmuzd (Sapor II, A D 309-379). Important historical events are transferred from the former's reign to the latter's where, to save repetition, they will be dealt with. Again, Shapur son of Ardashir's two wars with Rome, which historically are parted by a considerable interval of time, are rolled into one. The first war ended in A D. 244, and the second did not begin till some fourteen or more years later. The latter is the one chiefly commemorated in the Shahnama. In the course of it the Roman Emperor Valerian, the Bazaniish of Firdausi, was defeated and taken prisoner in Mesopotamia owing to the treachery of Macnarus, his Prætonan prefect, and died in captivity. Shapur then made a raid into Cilicia and Cappadocia—names which appear as Kaidafa and Palawina in the poem¹. Subsequently he withdrew his forces, and during his retreat was handled very roughly by Odenathus, prince of Palmyra, who later on made himself master of Mesopotamia and ruled from the Tigris to the Mediterranean till his assassination in A D 267. A trace of Shapur's mishap seems to survive, but

¹ NT, p 32, and *note*,
294

the tale is told in connexion with Shapur, son of Urmuzd. The triumph over Valerian was commemorated in many memorials by his conqueror.¹ The name of the city built for the Roman captives was Gund-i-Shapur, probably the Shapur Gird of Firdausi as both cities are described as being in Susiana. It was between Susa and Shushtar, and its situation is indicated by the ruins of Shahabad.² The great dam in connexion with the river Karun is still in existence. It is very likely that Shapur's Roman prisoners helped to make it. It is known as the "Band-i-Kaisar."³

*How Shapur sat upon the Throne and delivered a Charge
to the Chieftains*

To tell the kingship of Shapur be thine,
And hold discourse on festival and wine

Whenas Shapur sat on the throne of justice,
And donned the heart-illuming crown, the sages,
Wise magnates, and archmages, met before him.
He thus harangued the noble gathering—
The great and understanding counsellors —
"I am the lawful son of Shah Ardashir,
The utterer and layer up of knowledge.
Heed, all of you' my bidding and be loyal,
Scan what I say and blame it if 'tis crude.
In mine experience as to good and ill
Two dispensations are conspicuous.
One is the Shah, the warden of the world,
And guardian of the wealth of high and low.
If he is just and fortunate 'tis clear
That wisdom watcheth over, helpeth, him,
And o'er the dark clouds will exalt his head.
His whole quest is for justice, and for knowledge
That maketh music in his soul. The other
Is whosoever manfully essayeth
To compass wisdom and is wise in knowing

c. 1418

¹ See the illustrations in RSM, pp 82, 91. ² NT, 41, note.

³ Cf. *Ency. Brit.*, 11th ed., s "Shushter."

That it is God to whom his thanks are due.
 Blest is the sage that knoweth God, the wise
 Is worthy of the kingship, gold is worthless
 In wisdom's stead. The man that is content
 Is well to do j the avaricious heart
 Is but a house of smoke. The more the greed
 The more the care, so strive to shun its fruits.
 Incline to peace and things of good report,
 And flee the ill-disposed, for little wits
 Will grasp at others' goods I love you more
 Than there are stars to glitter in the sky,
 The customs of the exalted Shah Ardshir
 Assuredly will I confirm to you,
 And take a thirtieth only from the thanes
 To pay my soldiers somewhat I have weal,
 An ample treasure, courage, manliness,
 And constancy. We covet no man's goods,
 For they turn friends to foes. The way is open
 For you to us. We love the suppliant.
 We will send agents everywhere, search shrewdly
 The world's affairs, and ne'er ask other blessings
 Than those which men invoke from God on me."

Rose high and low, prepared their tongues to make
 A fair reply, called praises down on him,
 And scattered emeralds on his crown. The customs
 Of Shah Ardshir revived withal, and then
 Both young and old joyed in that regimen.

§ 2

*How Shapur fought with the Rumans, how Bazanush, their
 General, was taken Prisoner, and how Cæsar made
 Peace with Shapur*

Then tidings spread . " The throne of king of kings
 Is occupied no more, wise Shah Ardshir
 Hath died and left Shapur the throne and crown."

The battle-cry went up in all the coasts,
 And hubbub from Kaidafa¹ unto Rum.
 When news reached Shah Shapur he made him ready
 Troops, flags, and drums, and led toward Palawina
 A flying column with no baggage-train.
 An army that bedimmed the sun with dust
 Marched from Kaidafa, and a host withal c 1419
 From Palawina 'neath a paladin
 Hight Bazanush, a noble cavalier
 Of ardent soul, a chief and lasso-thrower
 Prized by the Cæsars. When from those two hosts
 Rose tymbal-din came from the Ruman centre
 An eager warrior, from the Iranian
 A famous chieftain hight Garshasp the Lion,
 What man or lusty elephant could match
 That valiant cavalier in battle-tide?²

These two engaged and strewed the stars with dust,
 Used all their skill, but neither could prevail.
 Then clashed the hosts together mountain-like,
 Rose their drum-roll and shoutings. Bold Shapur
 Bestirred him at the centre At the dm
 Of trump and Indian bell thou wouldst have said
 That heaven shook, the earth rocked, and the air
 Was full of dust, the war-spears gleamed like fire,
 And all the men of wisdom called on God.
 Amid the central host brave Bazanush,
 All sorrowful of heart, was taken captive,
 While of his Rumans were ten thousand slain
 At Palawina in the ranks of war,
 And twice eight hundred taken prisoners,
 Those warriors' hearts were full of sore distress.
 Then Cæsar sent a well-instructed envoy
 To ask Shapur, the son of Shah Ardashir:—
 "How much blood wilt thou pour out for dinars?
 What wilt thou say to our just Judge and Guide

¹ See p 294

When questioned at the Day of Reckoning ?
 How make excuse to Him who giveth all ?
 Add not to our distress for I will pay
 The wonted tribute, will submit, dispatch
 Abundant hostages of mine own kin,
 And, if thou wilt withdraw from Palawina,
 Will send thee in addition what thou wilt."

Shapur remained till Cæsar sent to him
 The tribute in ten ox-hides of dinars
 Of Cassar's coinage with much wealth besides—
 A thousand male and female Ruman slaves,
 And countless splendid pieces of brocade

Shapur abode a week in Palawina,
 Then leaving Rum he journeyed to Ahwaz,¹
 And there he built a city named Shapur Gird
 He finished it upon the day of Ard.

c. 1420 It took a year besides much toil and treasure.
 He built a city for the prisoners
 From Rum and filled it with inhabitants,
 The district is the gate of Khuzistan,²
 And in the great high-way whereby all pass.

He built himself a city too in Pars,
 Great, fair, and wealthy, and the ancient fortress³
 Of Nishapur, they say, without forced labour.
 He carried Bazanush about with him,
 And heeded him. Now there was at Shushtar
 A stream so broad that fish could cross it not.
 He said to Bazanush: " If thou hast skill
 Make over this a bridge as 'twere a rope,
 For we return to dust but it will bide
 Firm through the science of its architect.
 'Twill be a thousand cubits long, request
 Whate'er thou needest from my treasury.
 Employ thou to some purpose in this land

¹ Susiana.

² *Id*

³ Mohl keeps Kuhandizh (old fort) as a proper name.

The skill of Ruman engineers and, when
The bridge is finished, come and be my guest
For life in mirth and safety, and afar
From evil and the, hand of Ahriman."

Brave Bazinush began the work and built
The bridge in three years' space, then left Shushtar
And set his face to hurry to his home.
Shapur was just, in counsel well approved,
His star exalted and his throne unmoved.¹

§3

How Shapur seated Urmuzd upon the Throne and died

When thirty years and two months had gone by
The Grace and glory of the Shah were spent
He called Urmuzd. "The freshness of my face,"
He said, "is sere, be vigilant, be world-lord,
And ever rule with justice, but be ware
Of putting trust in sovereignty, peruse
Both day and night the volume of Jamshid ,
Do only what is just and good, be thou
The lowly's shelter and the mighty's Grace ,
Toy little with dinars, be bounteous, just,
And glorious, exclaim not at slight ills
If thou wouldst have good fortune as thy friend,
And keep in mind my counsels, every whit,
As I myself possess them from Ardashir."

c. 1421

He spake, the colour paled upon his cheek,
The heart of that wise man grew full of anguish

What can this Wayside Hostel do for thee?[?]
Wouldst hug renown? Wouldst fill thy treasury?[?]
A narrow coffin will be all thy spoil,
Some worthless one will batten on thy toil,

¹ In C, the reign ends here, but we have followed the arrangement of P, which seems preferable.

Thou wilt be clean forgotten by thy sons,
Thy nearest kinsfolk and companions,
The heritage wherein thou'lt have thy share
Is that of malediction, for where'er
Bezoar is the poison too is there.
Turn then to God and multiply His praise,
Who feedeth thee and gurdeth all thy ways.

XXIV

URMUZD, SON OF SHAPUR

HE REIGNED ONE YEAR AND TWO MONTHS

ARGUMENT

Urmuzd, whose reign proved to be a very brief one, succeeds his father and harangues the nobles. Feeling the approach of death he summons his son Bahram, appoints him successor, gives him good counsel, and dies

NOTE

The romantic story of Urmuzd's (Hormisdas I, A.D 272-273), birth,¹ is all that survives in connexion with him, apart from Firdausi's common form in dealing with the short reigns,² in the *Shahnama*. In the *Karnamak* he is represented as a great prince, being confused probably with his father. It is likely that he made a reputation for courage and energy in the wars against Rome and as governor in Khurasan. At all events, according to tradition, he earned for himself the title of "the hero". It is told of him that, being falsely accused of disloyalty, he cut off one of his hands and sent it, wrapped in silk, to his father to prove his innocence as no mutilated person could succeed to the throne. His father, deeply distressed, arranged that mutilation should be no bar in that instance³

¹ See p 268 *seq* ² *Id* p 249

³ NK, 68, and *note*, NT, 43, 45, and *notes*, RM, Pt I., vol 11
P 335

§ I

How Urmuzd addressed the Assembly

Now will I make the diadem and throne

Of Shah Urmuzd as brilliant as the moon
Upon the day whose name and his are one.¹

His reign had but one fault—it ended soon.
Whenas great Shah Urmuzd had ta'en his seat
The sheep and wolf alike came to his cistern.
He thus addressed the noble men of lore,
And chieftains veteran and experienced :—
" I shall pursue the just and right, for he
That keepeth in his mind his sire's advice
Is blest Since God, the Giver of all good,
Hath given good to me, and therewithal
The crown that is upon the head of kings,
I would by kindness win you as my friends,
And share your secrets Know that self-willed men
Are hated by the mighty ; led away
By their impatience they have ne'er enough,
For envy is the scimitar of fools,
And fortune ever mocketh them Again,
Short will the life and provand be of one
Ashamed to work. Avoid the common folk
If so thou canst, their hearts are doors of greed.
Pass not in life his portal whom thou findest
Devoid of knowledge, but the men of wisdom,
With prudence and good rede, confirm the throne.
May thy heart live by prudence and good sense,
Do thou thine utmost to avoid all ill.
Knowledge and wisdom are like earth and water,
And should combine. What marvel if the heart

¹ Urmuzd was the name of the first day of each solar month—a day considered particularly propitious for beginning any undertaking—*e.g.* a journey.

Of any king that putteth from him love
 Shall darken? May my subjects all rejoice
 And worship God, may He approve of them,
 And wisdom aid them inly and without
 The sage, conversing with the devotee c 142
 About the Shah, should weigh his utterance,
 Because good speech is never out of date ,
 Speak but good words thyself and list to none
 That speaKeth ill, the great king's heart will note
 Thy secret, and his ear will hear thy voice,
 For ' Walls have ears,' as one that could both speak,
 And listen, said."

The whole assembly blessed
 That Shah so shrewd of heart and pure of Faith,
 And broke up glad in that o'ershadowing Cypress
 That wise Shah kept the precepts of Shapur,
 The son of Shah Ardshir, and all the world
 Rejoiced in him How good are kings when just
 And generous' He ruled with modesty
 And justice till a while had passed, and then
 The place of musk with camphor was o'erspread,
 And in the garth the Cercis-bloom lay dead.

§ 2

*How Urmuzd gave up the Throne to Bahram, charged
 him, and died*

Urmuzd, when ware that death could not be shunned,
 Wept many a tear of blood. He had a son,
 Imperious, whom the wise Shah called Bahrain.
 He had the carpet laid within his hall,
 Bade, and Bahrain appeared, to whom he said —
 " Mine own true son exalt in manliness
 And knowledge ! feebleness hath come upon me,
 And made my face sell-coloured with my hair.

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

Bent is the straight-stemmed Cypress, and the rose,
Erst crimson, hath the colour of the quince.
Be world-lord when thy time shall come, be wise,
And do no hurt, turn not from those that cry
For justice, pardon not oppressors' faults,
Refrain thy tongue from falsehood if thou wouldst
Illume thy throne; let wisdom be thy soul
And modesty thy minister, in speech
Be eloquent, and let thy voice be soft,
Be thine ally the Lord of victory,
And may thy quarry be thy subjects' hearts.
Abate strife and make passion alien,
God grant it rule thee not. Refuse thyself
To scandal-mongers, foolish folk, and knaves

- C. 1423 Thou wilt but suffer from the ignorant,
So heed them not. Know that none honoureth
The shameless and the babbler. Let thy lord
Be wisdom, wrath thy slave, and be not hasty
Against the temperate. Be ware lest greed
Encompass thee because it causeth wrath
And fear and need, but practise all forbearance,
And uprightness, and banish from thy heart
Both fraud and falsehood. Shun an evil name,
For that will mar thy fortune No wise quit
The way of wisdom. Haste will bring repentance,
But tarriance will show the proper course.
Quit not the path of virtue Patient men
Will keep their temper and will shut their eyes
To what is not to be, yet, since the bold
Take patience in excess for feebleness,
The master of the throne will choose the mean
Of wisdom. Neither haste nor slackness serve,
Let wisdom guide thy soul. See to it, thou'
That no detractors win thme approbation,
And seek no friendship with thme enemy
Although he hail thee king, that tree is green

Its fruit is colocynth, and if thou graspest
His feet thou hast his head. Exalt or base,
Whiche'er thou art, be not illuded. Fortune
Is ill to the malignant, be not so
The assemblies of the noble scorn a chief
That breaketh covenant Take hold on wisdom,
For that will grace thy soul, crown, host, and wealth.
Guard word and covenant, and read the motions
Of sun and moon Affect not wealth and pleasure,
Because this Wayside Inn will cease for thee,
Consult the wise alone and keep the customs
Of former Shahs, fray foemen by thy hosts,
And look with heed behind thee and before
He that will flatter worthless men to gam
His ends may by his words destroy thyself,
Let such not age with thee, yet hold one less
Than man that hath no use for praise, for God
Approveth praise and straiteneth slanderers' hearts
He that can wink at others' faults, and swallow
His wrath with ease, will grow each day in wealth, c 1424
While hasty men will have full hearts No sage
Is he that seeketh combat with the sea.
Slight not my sayings, make thy heart a bow,
Thy tongue an arrow, let thy chest be broadened,
And thine arm straight, then shoot at what thou wilt.
Conform thy tongue and heart withal to wisdom,
Then please thyself in talk. The brainless man
Hath all his counsel and his words inept.
When with thy counsellors consult in private.
If thou hast counsel and experience
Thou wilt be day by day more prosperous,
Thy spirit will be shrewder than thy foe's,
Thy heart and brain and counsel more prevailing.
One that is led by passion will not prosper.
By gratifying friends thou wilt increase
Their pleasure and their welfare. Frown on foes,
VOL. VI. U

And make the faces of ill-wishers pale.
Give alms; so is thy treasure best employed.
Shun envy, from it spring hot tears of blood,
And upright men condemn it in a king.
For fourteen months I reigned unwittingly,
Expecting to retain the crown and throne
For years, but now my time hath come, and thou
Must gird thyself to rule "

A noble scribe

Wrote out this testament, and the wazir
Laid it before the Shah, who heaved a sigh,
While his flushed face became like withered leaves
Now, when those cheeks grew golden, pain and grief
Became the portion of Bahram who mourned
For forty days and left the lofty throne
Unoccupied, for he was sorrowful
Thus will it be while heaven shall turn above,
At whiles all anguish and at whiles all love

Tis the Urmuzd of Dai, and night, be thine
To rest from speech and put thy hand to wine,

XXV

BAHRAM SON OF URMUZD

HE REIGNED THREE YEARS, THREE MONTHS,
AND THREE DAYS

NOTE

To the reign of Bahrain (Varahran I., A. D. 273-276) properly belongs the end of the career of the great heresiarch, Mani, who, having been banished by Shapur, son of Ardshir, and recalled by his son Urmuzd, was executed by order of Bahrain. Mani, however, is relegated in the *Shahnama* to the reign of Shapur, son of Urmuzd (Sapor II).¹

Historically Bahram appears to have been the son of Shapur, son of Ardshir (Sapor I), not of Urmuzd, son of Shapur.²

§ 1

*How Bahram succeeded to the Throne, charged the Nobles,
and died*

The diadem of Shah Bahrain essay—

A Shah whose kingship swiftly passed away³

Whenas Bahrain sat on the throne of gold,

c. 145

In grievous trouble at his sire's decease,

The Iranian chiefs all came to him in tears,

And girt to serve him. They invoked God's blessing

Upon him, saying. "Be while place endureth,

Because the royal throne becometh thee;

¹ See p. 358

² NT, p. 49, *note*,

³ The previous reign ends here in C

Thou hast the kingship from thine ancestors.
 Be thy foes' faces pale, and may thy soul
 Cease to deplore the dead."

He answered " Chiefs,
 Brave cavaliers, and nobles¹ let no thane,
 Or other liege, put hand to ill Behold
 How this unresting Dome respecteth neither
 The fostered nor the fosterer. Bind fast
 The hands of passion and reject its bidding
 Whoever shall abstain from evil-doing,
 And smircheth not himself by his ill deeds,
 Will live glad days and pass in peace. The Shah
 Should guard the wealth of others, tender dearly
 Men of good conduct, and protect the Faith,
 Because it is the crown upon his head
 He that is wise in wrath, and acteth not
 Injuriously, is blest. In times of stress
 His heart is great and glad. Oh i may the world
 Lack not the sage, and sage indeed is he
 That trampleth not¹ upon a vanquished foe.
 Vindictiveness proceedeth ill from those
 That seek renown. Abstain and use it not
 Know that thanes, troops, and kings unoccupied²
 Hold no set course, the idle slumbereth,
 And waketh to remorse, well said, ill done,
 Gam thee no praise or jocund Paradise.
 Seek fame, do well, and break no good men's hearts.

c 146 I am possessed of treasure and dinars
 In plenty, I have majesty and kingship,
 And might of hand. Enjoy your own and know
 That one who hath not is of those that have
 Because my purse is open none must want."

Not many days passed by ere that crowned head
 Came to the shears. The Shah possessed a son—
 His heart's delight—Bahrain, son of Bahram,

¹ Heading with

P

²

Heading with P and T.

BAHRAM SON OF URMUZD

For whom he sent, set him beneath the throne,
And said. "Green offshoot from my stem¹ not long
Have I enjoyed the crown, but be thy time
All glorious Rejoice, increase, and pass
Thy days and nights in mirth. So walk that thou,
When questioned at the Great Account, hast not
To turn in shame from Him who gave thee all.
By justice and by bounty cause the world
To flourish and thy subjects' hearts to joy,
For whether one be king or archimage
The world abideth not with him for ever."

Three years, three months, three days passed o'er
head,

And then the world-illuming throne was void,
And as Bahram gave to Bahram the world
The son gave to the sire the charnel's peace

Know, 'tis no outrage of the turning sky,
It holdeth but as wind that passeth by
All that hath breath, and till it cease to roll
Thus will it be, why then afflict thy soul?
Why seek or speak concerning what should be?
Discourse on things like these is not for thee.
E'en though in greed thy soul be grown not sere
Thy resting place is but a narrow bier.
Since death then cometh of such wolfish breed
A mighty bowl of wine will fill my need,
And one of silvern form and cypress-tall,
A charmer sweet of speech and kind withal,
With jasmine scent, bright cheeks, a moon in mien,
Musk-scented, and with looks of sun-like sheen.

XXVI

BAHRAM, SON OF BAHRAM

HE REIGNED NINETEEN YEARS

NOTE

The reign of this Bahram (Varahran II., A D 276-293), is in the Shahnama as bare of events as that of his predecessor, and Tabari has next to nothing to say of him. Mas'udi, however, tells us that he began badly till once, when returning from the chase, the Shah in company with the high priest passed through a hamlet, recently abandoned, amid whose ruins naught was heard but the hooting of the owls. The Shah asked the high priest if he knew any one that understood then language. The high priest answered that he himself had that gift, and that what the bird said was true. The Shah inquired what it was, and the high priest replied — "This owl is a male and wishes to wed. He asked the female owl to accept him as her mate so that their offspring might bless God and perpetuate their name. The female said that she should like it of all things, but that she would accept him only on certain conditions. To begin with he must present her with twenty villages chosen from the chief demesnes that had become vacant under the reigning sovereign." "What was the male's reply?" asked the Shah. "Your majesty?" answered the high priest, "the owl made this response — 'If the reign of this monarch prove a long one I shall be able to give you a good thousand villages, but what do you propose?' 'From our union' rejoined the female, 'will spring a numerous succession of children, and we shall be able to give each of them a share of these turns.' 'Nothing can be simpler and easier than what you wish' replied the male, 'and I agree in advance, for I am overstocked with this kind of wealth. Tell me what you want more.' " The Shah was struck by the high priest's apologue, and ruled thereafter for his people's good.¹

¹ MM, 11 169 seq
310

§ 1

*How Bahram, Son of Bahram, ascended the Throne, charged
the Nobles, and died*

While mourning Shah Bahram for forty days
Bahram himself did not assume the crown
The warriors, the men exceeding wise,
All grief, all wailing, and all lamentation,
Came and sat with him in his woe and mourning,
Wan-cheeked with lips of lapis-lazuli,
Until a prudent archmage came and said —
" Will not the Shah be seated on the throne ? "

For one whole se'nnight urgently he strove,
And ceased not till the throne was occupied.¹

Now when Bahram assumed his seat, rejoicing, C 1427
And crowned himself as kings are wont, he first
Praised God—the Light of circling time, the Increaser
Of knowledge and of uprightness, the Marrer
Of falsehood and of fraud, the Lord of Saturn
And of revolving heaven, who asketh naught
But love and justice from His slaves—and then
Said thus " Tried sages and pure archimages '
Hold knowledge great and be not bold with kings.
The man endowed with increase, eloquence,
And leadership by God will strive, if wise,
To compass excellence and cultivate
Humanity, whose attribute is patience,
Because the rash are held contemptible.
Security produceth happiness,
For then distress and toil have turned to wind,
And gathering wealth is like wind too to one
Of noble heart for he is rich already.
Yet get some havings if thou hast them not,

¹ The previous reign ends here in C We follow the arrangement
in P

For folk despise the indigent. The man
 Possessed of nothing hath no influence,
 And none respect him When thou art content
 Thou feel'st at ease, but practise greed and thou
 Wilt live in fear, so toil not thus to vex
 Thy body and thy soul for greed of treasure.
 Choose thou the mean if thou wouldst have folk's praise
 In matters temporal. If thou contentest
 The world with justice thou wilt be made glad
 Thyself thereby and rich Security
 And uprightness, and no default injustice,
 Are needful. When joy faileth spirit faileth,
 And wisdom 'twixt the twain is impotent,
 While if greed clutch thy heart thy soul remaineth
 Within the gullet of the Crocodile."

When he had reigned for twenty years save one
 Life mourned him, that crowned Shah espoused the
 dust,

A charnel hid him from the jocund world.

c 1428

Such is the fashion of the turning sky,
 Though thou art feeble it hath mastery,
 And such the fashion of this world as well,
 It hath its secrets but it ne'er will tell¹

XXVII

BAHRAM BAHRAMIYÂN

HE REIGNED FOUR MONTHS

NOTE

According to Tabari this Shah (Varahran I I I , A D 293) reigned four years,¹ but Mas'udi, like Firdausi, says four months² Professor Noldeke suggests that he reigned for four months only in the capital, but ruled longer in other parts of the kingdom, probably in conflict with Narsi,⁸ his uncle, historically, as Bahram Bahramiyan appears to have been the son of Urmuzd, son of Shapur.⁴ The true owner of the title of "Kirmanshah" is Bahram, son of Shapur (Varahran IV , A D 388-399)

§ 1

*How Bahrain Bahramiyan succeeded to the Throne and died
four Months after*

Bahram Bahramiyan sat on the throne,
And girt himself for justice and for bounty.
They sprinkled emeralds upon his crown,
They called him Kirinanshah, and thus he said .—
" May God, the just and only God, bestow
Upon us wisdom for our portion, justice,
And counsel This our Wayside Hostelry
Abideth not with any. Goodness help us,
Lean we and cleave thereto, and make our heart
Our witness by our justice and our bounty,

NT, p 50.

² MM, 11. 174

³ NT, p 416

⁴ Id 436 a

For since the good and evil that we do
Are our memorials sow thou naught but good."

When he had reigned four months the throne and
crown

Bewailed him bitterly. When certified
That death was near—that crocodile which hunteth
Rhinoceros and elephant—he gave
His son the world, and said. "Be thy reign glorious!
Array thyself, drink wine, walk delicately,
Be bountiful, make not thy day with throne
And crown unfortunate " ¹

Thus moments speed,
Their breaths uncounted by the man of greed t
O happy fortune ! bring red wine to me,
For now the poet's years are sixty-three.

¹ In the glossaiy to C "inveited" The word properly has the meaning of "bright," but what is bright is easily reflected, what is reflected is inverted, and inversion well may imply misfortune

XXVIII

NARSI, SON OF BAHRAM

HE REIGNED NINE YEARS

NOTE

Narsi (Narses, A D 293-302) does not appear to have been the son of Bahram Bahramryan but of Shapur, son of Ardshir Papakan¹ Historically his reign was an important one as we learn from sources other than Persian and Arabic Firdausi, Tabari, and Mas'udi have little or nothing to record of him, but Mirkhand states that he abdicated in favour of his son Urmuzd, and, further, that his prowess in the chase won him the title of 'The mighty Hunter'²

§ 1

*How Narsi succeeded to the Throne, counselled his
Son, and died*

Bahram, when fortune's day no longer shone,
Surrendered to Narsi the crown and throne
This is the way; there is no end thereto,
The wanton sky hath ever something new 1

Whenas Narsi sat on the ivory seat,
And donned the crown that gladdeneth the heart,
The nobles all approached with offerings,
And mourning in their sorrow for his sire.
The chief blessed them, and said " My loving lieges,
Adherents both of justice and the Faith'

C 149

¹ NT, p 50, note

² RM, Pt. I, vol 11 p 340

Know that the Maker so hath ordered all
That me of all the world He hath endowed
With wisdom and with generosity,
Good counsel, modesty, and gentle speech,
And if my star shall prove beneficent
J will secure prosperity for you.¹
When any wise man hath become thy friend
Know that he is one skin with thee² Expect
Great deeds from great men, wisdom from the sage.
True courage hath reflection for its base,
And valiant men are worthy of all praise,
But he that fleeth from the work in hand
Will ne'er find fame and honour on the field.
The indolent are cowardly as well,
For indolence and cowardice agree "

This man of rede and counsel lived nine years,
And by his sayings profited the world,
But when his day approached, when fortune loured,
And when his casque of steel became like wax,
Urmuzd, bright as a tulip midst the grass,
Ran to the pillow of the noble Shah,
Whose son he was and splendent as the moon
At night The Shah said " Gently nurtured youth!
Refrain thy hand with all thy strength from ill.
Soul of Narsi art thou, Bahrain's own fortune,
Crown-worthy and the glory of the throne
Oh' may the crown ne'er weep, the people's heart
Consume, for thee who hast such stature, Grace,
Limbs, and unmatched achievement in all knowledge.
Rule thou the world by royal precedents
As thou hast learned them from thy pious sire.
At length thine own day too will pass away,
And restless heaven tread thee down, so act then
That when thy God shall question thee thine answer

¹ Reading with P.

Cf. Vol I. p. 110.

May make thy bliss secure."

This said, he drew
 The mantle o'er his head and heaved a sigh.
 That day thou wouldst have said that he was not,
 And had no throne or seat or diadem.

Thy lot is naught but toil and misery,
'Tis so—a mystery to every eye !

XXIX

URMUZD, SON OF NARSI

HE REIGNED NINE YEARS

NOTE

The reign of this Shah (Hormisdas I I , A.D. 302-309) seems to be regarded as uneventful by all authorities. He left, apparently, three sons, Azarnarsi, Urmuzd, and one unnamed, in addition to one or more posthumes. After the Shah's death Azarnarsi succeeded, but within a year was deposed for cruelty, Urmuzd was imprisoned but escaped long afterwards to the Romans,¹ the unnamed one was blinded, and a posthumous child became Shah.⁸ He proved to be one of the most famous of the dynasty.

§ 1

*How Urmuzd, Son of Narbi, ascended the Throne and how
Jus Life ended*

- C 140 When great Urmuzd came to the throne wolves' claws
Were hindered of their quarry, he maintained
The world in peace, the work of Ahnman
Was in abeyance. First of all he praised
Almighty God, all-knowing, all-providing —
" He fashioned night and day and turning heaven,
Sol, Mars, and Saturn. Victory and Grace,
The just heart and the imperial diadem,
Proceed from Him. May justice ever fill
Our heart, and may our subjects' hearts rejoice.

¹ Cf. p. 325

² NT, p. 51, note.

The hearts of men ignoble win not praise,
If so thou canst consort not thou with such,
And take not counsel with the ill-disposed,
But, if thou seekest it, incline to good.
The pious will not call him bountiful
Whose bounty is designed to gain applause,
While men will hold the thankless flatterer
As naught The hard man trembleth being friendless.
The wise man taketh not the slack as guide,
And if thou ask the indolent to help thee
Thou art no judge of men and lack'st ambition.
Beware of thinking highly of thyself,
And be not fierce because thou hast a throne.
When one ill-natured groweth poor and vile
He layeth all to fortune and will spend
His years in indolence,¹ bewailing fortune,
Is not possessed of rede and understanding,
And is no ornament to any throne
The simple deprivation of all wealth
Will rum him in heart and soul and brain,
He will take pride in want and evil nature,
And hold his head up high in his unwisdom,
His lack of goods, of knowledge, rede, achievement,
Of Faith and of all thankfulness to God.
May both your nights and days be prosperous,
The marrow of your foemen's lives plucked out."

The chiefs applauded and saluted him
As earth's great king. When heaven had turned nine
years

Above his head his face that had resembled
Pomegranate-bloom became like yellow roses,
The head that wore the crown was sick to death,
He died without a son beside his couch.
That famed man, who discoursed so pleasantly,
Left in his youth this ancient hostelry,

C. 1431

¹ Reading with P

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

Such while the heavens endure will be the event,
For they are strong and we are impotent.

The people mourned for him for forty days,
Regardless of the throne, which for a while
Remained unoccupied the nobles' heads
Were full of care. Meanwhile an archimage
Surveyed the women's bower of Shah Urmuzd,
One tulip-cheeked and radiant as the moon,
With lashes like a dagger of Kabul,
And locks like mazy Babylonian script,
All intertwined and knotted on her head,
Was there, and that fair lady was with child,
The world rejoiced in her. The archimage
Brought her and set her on the lofty throne
Of kings with joy, o'er her they hung the crown,
And on that golden circlet drachms showered down.

XXX

SHAPUR, SON OF URMUZD, SURNAMED
ZU'L AKTAF

HE REIGNED SEVENTY YEARS

ARGUMENT

Shapur is born Shall. In his youth he builds a bridge at Taisafun and punishes the Arabs for their raids during his minority. Later on he goes to Rum in disguise, is imprisoned, but escapes, defeats the Rumans, takes Caesar prisoner, and dictates terms of peace, which include the cession of Nasibin (Nisibis). The poet then tells of the heresiarch Mani, his doctrine and death. Shapur appoints his brother Ardshir regent, and dies soon after.

NOTE

The duration of the reign of Shapur (Sapor I I, A D 309-379), as given by Firdausi, is correct. He was Shah all his life, contemporary with ten Roman Emperors, and one of the greatest of Sasanian rulers.

As has been stated already, some of the events attributed in the Shahnama to the reign of this Shah really belong to that of his predecessor, the first of his name.¹

§ 1 The story of the building of the bridge over the Tigris at Taisafun (Ctesiphon) is told also by Tabari, who says that the additional bridge was constructed by sunset on the same day as that on which the command for its election was given.²

Shapur's chief places of residence were in Susiana and Mesopotamia, not in Pars as Firdausi states.

§§ 2, 3 Two Shapurs (Sapoi I and Sapor II) and much history are confused in this account, in which the taking of Hatra in the early days of the Sasanian dynasty and probably by Shapur, son

¹ See p. 294 and below
VOL. VI.

² NT, p. 54
x

of Ardshir, is bound up artificially by a romantic incident with the expedition made by Shapur, son of Urmuzd, into Arabia to avenge the Arab incursions into Persian territory that had taken place during his minority. Hatra or Al Hadr was the capital of a small principality which had become independent during the later days of Parthian rule. It grew up in the Mesopotamian desert, some forty miles west of the Tigris, in an oasis formed by the river Tharthar. Its magnificent ruins stand some forty miles south of Mosul and some two hundred north of Baghdad which is itself some twenty miles higher up the Tigris than the sites of the twin cities of Ctesiphon and Seleucia. The ruins form a complete circle surrounding a central square. The circle has a diameter of a little over a mile and is made up as follows. Outside of all is a broad rampart, within this is a deep moat, now dry, and within this again an immense stone wall with towers at intervals. Within the wall are the ruins of what was once the city. The dwellings of the inhabitants now are represented for the most part by mounds of earth, but in the centre of the area surrounded by the city wall is a square walled enclosure with bastions or towers similar to those of the city wall itself. The four sides of this enclosure front to the four cardinal points, and each side measures 340 yards in length. This enclosure may be regarded as the citadel, and within it were the palace and the temple of both of which the ground-story, consisting of vaulted halls and other buildings, is still upstanding. The whole of the remains, walls, bastions, and all, are of coarse limestone beautifully fitted, every stone also being marked with a letter or number and often carved to represent human faces, foliage, buds, griffins, and other monsters¹. The place, as will have been seen from the above description, was immensely strong, its inhabitants were warlike, it was only a little over two hundred miles from Ctesiphon and Seleucia—attractions that, as experience was to show, were not beyond the reach of raids from the more distant Palmyra²—and Ardshir Papakan not unnaturally desired its reduction. This he, or his son Shapur, actually achieved. The stronghold had withstood successfully sieges by the Emperors Trajan and Severus. It fell at last through treachery. According to the story the Arabs had made a successful foray in the neighbourhood of Ctesiphon and Seleucia during the absence of Shapur. The leader of this raid was a certain Daizan or, as Firdausi calls him, Tair, and there may be here some reminiscence of the capture by Odenathus of some of Shapur's harem after the war with

¹ See JRGS, Vols. IX. 467, xi. 11

² Cf. p. 325.

Valerian ¹ At all events the raider was some Arab chief, but in our story was the king of Hatra Shapur, informed of what had happened, beleaguered the city Now Daizan had a daughter, the Malika of Firdausi, and it so happened that in the course of the siege, which lasted four years, she and Shapur fell in love with one another, and he promised, if she would get him possession of Hatra, to make her his queen This she accomplished, her father was put to death, and Shapur married the traitress Now she had a very delicate skin, and, when she was reposing on silk stuffed with raw silk, complained of discomfort It was found that a myrtle-leaf was pressing against her ! Shapur asked her on what her father had fed her She told him on cream, marrow, the honey of virgin bees, and the finest wine "And yet," he said, "though you have known me only a short time you love me better than your father who gave you such food ""² He had her bound by the hair to the tail of a wild horse and dashed to death. By lights this story should come under the reign of Shapur, son of Ardashir, or of Ardashir himself, it has been brought, however, into connexion with that of Shapur, son of Urmuzd, by the romantic addition, found in Dinawari and Firdausi, that the treacherous daughter—the Mahka of the Shahnama—was the child of the king of Hatra by the daughter of Narsi—Dukhtnush in Dinawari and Nusha m Firdausi—whom he had made captive in the laid above mentioned Now Shapur, son of Urmuzd, was noted far more than his predecessor, Shapur, son of Ardashir, for his dealings with the Arabs, and is said to have acquired his title of "Zu'l Aktaf" on account of the severity with which he treated them Zu'l Aktaf has been explained to mean that he dislocated their shoulders, or removed their shoulder-blades, or strung his captives together in couples by boring their shoulders and passing a ring through them Originally, however, the title may have been one of honour only, "the

¹ Cf p 294

² This ignores the fact that love often ousts affection when the two come into antagonism Hence the popularity in the past of Gretna Green The story seems to show that, though the lady was in love with Shapur, he himself was only pretending That in the classics of Nisus and Scylla is very similar Nisus, king of Megara, had a lock of hair on which his existence depended He had too a daughter named Seylla Minos, king of Crete, besieged Megara, and Seylla, who had fallen in love with him, cut off from her father's head the fatal lock, and he perished in consequence Minos, like Shapur, was not really in love and, like him, had the lady put to death

broad-shouldered" like Dirazdast "the long-handed."¹ Be this as it may, the above story was adapted in Iranian legend to make it applicable to the better known of the two first Shapiirs—and the one whose dealings with the hated Arabs redounded most to the credit of the empire. It is, as will be seen, softened somewhat in the adapted version. The half Persian descent of Mahka is meant to account for and excuse her treachery,² and Shapur's conduct to her is not brutal. A trace of the earlier and harsher version may survive in the words of Tair,³ where he says in effect, anticipating those of Brabantio to Othello —

"She has deceived her father and may thee "⁴

But we are not told that Shapur acted on the hint.

The scene of the story is laid by Firdausi in distant Yaman, the 'Inanians, of whom Tair is made the king, being a tribe in that region.

In one place Firdausi refers to Nusha as the "daughter of Bahram "⁵ She was the granddaughter.

§§ 4-10. Here we have another historical confusion but on a larger scale. Shahs, Emperors, times, and events are confounded and transformed so into terms of romance that it is not easy to "disentangle from the puzzled skein the threads of" history.

First, Shapur, son of Ardashir, is confused with Shapur, son of Urmuzd.

Secondly, the Emperor Valerian is mixed up with the Arab prince Odenathus and with the Emperors Julian and Jovian. The Bazdnush of the Shahnama, who in the reign of Shapur, son of Ardashir, represented Valerian, here represents Jovian, and Julian, the Yanus of Firdausi, leads, not as Cæsar but as Cæsar's-brother, an expedition against Persia.

Thirdly, a few dates are instructive. Shapur, son of Ardashir, reigned A.D. 241-272. Shapur, son of Urmuzd, reigned A.D. 309-379. The Emperor Valerian was taken prisoner in A.D. 258, Julian died, and Jovian made his treaty with Persia, in A.D. 363. Odenathus, prince of Palmyra, was assassinated in A.D. 267.

Fourthly, the historical events here confused are :—

The second war of Shapur, son of Ardashir, against Rome ro

¹ See Vol. v. p. 281, and for the above generally NT, p. 33 seq and notes, p 53 seq. and notes,

² So too the damsel who rescues Shapur from his imprisonment by Cæsar is described as being an Iranian by birth. See pp. 338-9.

³ P. 334. ⁴ Act 3, scene 3, ⁶ See p. 334

which the Emperor Valerian was taken prisoner and died, some years later, in captivity

The ensuing war of Odenathus, prince of Palmyra, against the conqueror of Valerian, in the course of which he captured part of the great king's harem, and marched up to the gates of Ctesiphon

The expedition of the Emperor Julian against Shapur, son of Urmuzd, which ended in a disastrous retreat, his own death, and the humiliating treaty made by his successor Jovian

§ 4 Already we have had instances of kings and chiefs going in disguise to spy out the enemy So Rustam made his way into the camp of Suhrab,¹ and Sikandar to that of Dara,² to the court of queen Kaidafa,³ and to the palace of the Faghfur⁴ We shall find too Bahrain Gur, in the next volume, going as his own ambassador to Shangul, king of Hind The exploits of Odenathus in connexion with Shapur, son of Ardshir, and the capture of the great king's harem, seem to be adumbrated here in the capture and misfortunes of the second Shapur at the court of Cæsar Valerian, whose own capture is here post-dated, is credited with the successes of the Arab chieftain Shapur's misfortunes are ante-dated as a foil to his final triumph later on⁵

The denouncer of Shapur at the court of Cæsar may be identified perhaps, historically, with the Persian prince Urmuzd (Hormisdas) who was imprisoned by the nobles after the death of his father Urmuzd, son of Narsi, and after a long captivity escaped in A D 323 to the Romans, by whom he was held in high honour, and accompanied Julian in his campaign to the East⁶

We have had an instance already in the case of Garsiwaz of the punishment of being sewn up in fresh raw hide, which contracts and stiffens as it dries, and is very painful if not always fatal According to some accounts the Khalifa Walid (A D 705-715), under a misapprehension, had his great general Muhammad Kasim put to death in this fashion,⁷ but this does not seem to be historically correct

§ 5 Sympathetic damsels are much in evidence in this portion of the Shahnama as aids to embarrassed heroes One helped Ardshir Papakan,⁸ as did two more according to the Karnamak Shapur is aided thus here for the second time¹⁰

Such scenes of lowly life as that between Shapur and the

¹ Vol 11 p 149

² See p 38.

³ *Id*, p. 127

⁴ *Id* p 170.

⁵ NT, p 65, and *note*

⁶ NT, p 51, and *note*, RSM, pp. 149, 194. Cf. p. 318.

⁷ Vol. iv p. 265, EHI, 1. p. 209.

⁸ p 217.

⁹ p 201.

¹⁰ For the first time see p 331.

gardener become more frequent in the latter part of the poem.

§ 7. Here we have, for the second time, the account of the capture of Valerian, post-dated by more than a century. His treatment in captivity is represented as being much more severe in this version on account of his rough usage of the Shah which, historically, represents the successes gained by Odenathus over Shapur, son of Ardshir, after the defeat of Valerian. The proposed terms of peace similarly are more stringent. Their parallel is the building of the bridge at Shushtar.¹

§ 8. This appears to be an account of Julian's expedition to the East in A.D. 362-3. It will be seen that he is not regarded as an Emperor but as the Emperor's brother. This was necessary owing to the form that the story took in Firdausi's authorities. Cæsar (Valerian) was supposed to be still alive though a captive and was engaged in collecting all the ransom that was possible from Rum.² The throne was not technically vacant, so Yanus could not be Emperor. Later on the troops of Rum make a new choice altogether and elect Bazanush (Jovian). The repetition of the story of Valerian has the effect of dwarfing the more historically placed expedition of Julian, and Julian's status suffers accordingly.

§ 9. Here, after the overthrow of Yanus (Julian) Bazanush (Jovian) is elected Emperor in succession, romantically, to Cæsar (Valerian), historically, to Julian. Historically, too, the negotiations for peace were begun a few days after the death of Julian, and during the retreat of the Roman army, not by the newly elected Emperor Jovian but by Shapur, who took that step to delay the retirement of the Romans till some definite agreement had been arrived at. The result was a great triumph for Persian diplomacy.

§ 10. That we have here a version of the historical treaty of peace between Jovian and Shapur is clear from the stipulation for the cession of Nasibin (Nisibis)—one of the most important provisions of the actual treaty. Shapur had besieged it three times already without success. There was a stipulation that the Roman inhabitants of that and other places ceded should have liberty to withdraw. Tabari tells us that in the case of Nisibis they were replaced by twelve thousand natives of Istakhr and elsewhere.³

Both the accounts of Valerian in the Shahnamea agree that he ended his days in captivity, and the general consensus of historians is to the same effect. Whether he died a natural death or not is uncertain, but the former seems the more probable.⁴

¹ p. 298

² p. 357

³ NT, p. 63.

⁴ Cf. *id.* pp. 33, 66, and *notes*, RSM, pp. 86, 87, 125

Shapur continued the ancient practice of transporting conquered populations to new homes, settling them in cities that he himself had built, restored, or renamed. The two in Khuzistan mentioned in the text—Khurram Abad and Kmam-i-Asiran—may be represented by the ruins of Karkh and Shus, now known as Iwan-i-Kerkh, not far from the ruins of Susa. Piruz Shapur is better known as Ambar, a city on the Euphrates.¹ It served as the original capital of the 'Abbasid Khalifat but was superseded before long by Baghdad.

§ 11 There was so much in common between the first two Shapurs—similarity of name, wars with the Arabs and the Romans, religious excitement and consequent persecution, and, in addition to all this, the fact that the six intervening Shahs had failed to impress their personalities on the popular mind and consequently left hardly any trace of themselves in popular tradition—that it was only natural for events properly belonging elsewhere to gravitate towards the later, longer, and more important reign of the two. We have had several instances of this tendency already, and here we have another: the case of the famous heresiarch, Mani, whose career, historically speaking, ended before the second Shapur was born. Mani's life seems wholly to have been included within the third century A.D.—a period when new religious ideas were being disseminated broadcast, and old religions were passing through a season of revival. In the Sasanian empire Zoroastrianism, Christianity with its many gnostic offshoots, and Judaism, were striving to assert themselves, and in the midst of the ferment Mani was born A.D. 215-16. He is said to have begun his public career as a religious teacher on Sunday, March 20th A.D. 242—the day apparently of the coronation of Shapur, son of Ardashir.² Shapur, at first disposed to listen to the new teacher, afterwards banished him, and he remained in exile till he was allowed to return by Shapur's successor, Urmuzd, who allowed him evangelical freedom and presented him with a place of residence. Urmuzd's reign, however, proved to be a very brief one, and under the next Shah, his son or brother, Bahram, Mani is said to have been flayed alive, and his body, stuffed with straw, exposed on one of the gates of Gund-i-Shapur, which gate consequently became known as "the Mani gate." According to some accounts Mani was recalled by Bahram and afterwards put to death by him or by his son and successor, but at all events the great gnostic died before the time of Shapur, son of Urmuzd. Mani's followers of course were persecuted.

¹ On Shapur's cities see NT, p. 57 *seq.* and *notes*.

² NT, pp. 47 and *note* 412 *seq.*

Mini's teaching was an eclectic one, and the materials for it were drawn from the various Faiths amid which he grew up or with which he came into contact later on. No doubt in his enthusiasm he hoped to find a formula that would reconcile them all. In the result he was regarded by the orthodox of each as the false friend who is worse than the open enemy, and suffered accordingly. His chief opponents were the priests of the state-lehigion—Zoroastrianism—311st then in the flowing tide of its revival, but the arguments put into the high priest's mouth by Firdausi are more Mohammedan than Zoroastrian. Mani's offence, so far as his doctrine was distinguished from Christianity, lay in his high and pure asceticism, which was antagonistic to the somewhat self-indulgent Faith of Zoroaster. The Zoroastrian was a family man, a flesh-eater, and a wine-drinker. The Manichæan was not permitted to injure any living thing, whether animal or plant, for the sake of obtaining food, and was a celibate, a vegetarian, and a reprobate.

The followers of Mani were famous for the neatness and ornamentation of their sacred books, and this gave rise to the notion that Mani himself had been a painter. There are allusions to him in that capacity in the *Shahnama*.¹

§ 12 For Ardshir see the next reign

§ 1

*How Shapur, Son of Urmuzd, was born forty Days after
his Fathers Death, and how he was crowned*

Passed forty days, then like the shining sun
A babe was born of that fair dame. The arehmacre
Named him Shapur and gave a feast for joy
Thou wouldst have said. "The infant is all Grace,
And wisdom is his banner and his shade."
For forty days they revelled, then prepared
The child a royal throne. The nobles came
With golden girdles and hung over it
The crown of gold. That babe of forty days
They set, when fed and swaddled up in silk,
Upon his glorious father's throne beneath

¹ See Vols. 11. p. 19 and *note*, v. 118.

The crown of gold, the chiefs all homaged him,
 And showered gems An archimage by name
 Shahrwi, wise, apt, and potent, came and sat
 Upon a golden seat to serve the babe
 As minister, and with good rede and justice
 Ruled o'er the world. He led the folk to good,
 Collected troops and treasure, and adorned
 The palace and the throne, for young Shapur,
 Who grew in stature with the passing years

c. 142

Attended by that wise archmage the Shah
 Was sitting on an eve in Taisafun
 When Sol grew wan, and night's daik livery showed,
 A dm rose at the way o'er the Arwand
 ' Greet they?' he asked

" O famed and valiant prince "

The archmage answered thus the little Shah,
 " The merchants and the workmen are returning
 Home from their shops and, as they pass each other,
 They fear to jostle, for the budge is narrow,
 So crow like cocks at drum-beat.⁵⁵

Said Shapur —

" Ye famous sages and my counsellors!
 Then let us have two bridges, one to go,
 The other to return, so that our subjects,
 Both soldiers and civilians, may cross
 At ease, our treasury shall bear the costs."

The archmages all joyed much that that young Tree
 Was showing leaf, and, as the young Shah bade,
 Their chief gave orders for a second bridge.
 His mother's heart rejoiced, she gave him tutors,
 But by his rapid progress he outstripped them.
 At seven years old he went upon the ground
 To learn the art of war and play at polo,
 At eight he learned the etiquette of courts,
 Thou wouldst have said that he was Shah Bahrain.¹

¹ Reading with P. Perhaps Bahiam Gur is meant. Cf. p 378 seq.

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

He exercised himself in every grace,
And made Istakhr his royal residence
By his own glorious fathers' precedent,
Men pure, accepted, and preeminent

*How Tair the Arab, earned off the Daughter of Narsi and
married her, how Shapur went to Yaman to fight lam,
and how his Daughter fell in Love with Shapur*

Anon, and when the world-illummg crown
Grew bright, Tair, the Inanian lion-hearted,
Whose scimitar would bolden heaven, led forth
From Rum and Pars, from Kurdistan, Bahrain,
And Kadisiya, up to Taisafun

- C. 143 A host surpassing all compute of knowledge
He gave the country up to pillage Who
Could fight or fly him? Hearing tell of Nusha,
Who was the Shah's aunt and a youthful Spring,
He sought her palace, while all Tarsafun
Was full of hue and cry. They bore her off,
And made her prisoner, for he and his
Were coarse and ignorant When she had spent
One year of grief and care with him she bore him
A daughter like the moon and like Narsi,
Thou wouldst have said, when he had crown and
throne.

Her father called her Mahka on seeing
That she was fit for queenship.

When Shapur
Was six and twenty, and had grown to be
A valiant, sun-like monarch, he reviewed
His troops upon the plain and chose him out
Twelve thousand warriors and for each a camel
Wind-footed, and a hundred guides withal
The warriors mounted, leading each his steed.

SHAPUR SON OF URMUZD

Then too the Shah himself and his own memy
Took seat upon their beasts. He girded up
His royal belt for raiding and pursued
The monarch of the Inanians—Tair,
That over-weening one, that raging Lion—
And slaughtered many of his warriors,
Which when Tair perceived he showed his back.
Then followed hue and cry, and many captives
Were taken while that host fled to a stronghold
Within Yaman, men, women, children wailed.
Shapur led forth such forces that the ways
Were barred to ant and gnat He found¹ Tair
With troops within the hold, and turned from him
The means of fight and flight. The siege continued
A month both day and night, the garrison
Kan short of food One morning full of ardour
Shapur, the hero, mounted on his steed
With bow in hand, a kingly, black cuirass
Upon he breast and black flag fluttering o'er him
Now Mahka looked from the castle-walls,
And saw that flag and head of chiefs, whose cheeks
Were then like rose-leaves and his hair like musk,
His lips like jujubes and his breath musk-scented.
Both sleep and peace went from her, with her heart
Possessed by love, she sought her nurse, and said —
" This sun-like Shah, come hither for revenge,
Is great, my very blood, and him I call
' The world' because he is the world to me.
Now bear a message for me to Shapur,
He came to fight us, bid him to a feast
With me. Say ' Thou and I are of one race,
And of the seed of brave Narsi as well.
Moreover I will aid in thy revenge,
For I am of thy kindred—Nusha's daughter.
If thou wilt marry me the hold is thine,

¹ Reading with P

And with the palace thou shalt have its Picture
 Arrange all with my nurse and pledge thy word
 Of honour'"

She replied: " As thou commandest
 So will I speak and bring thee news of him "

When night and murk took kingship of the earth
 From sea to sea, when it became pitch-hued,
 The hills like indigo, the stars like lamps,
 And thou hadst said " Three hundred thousand lights
 Have been suspended from the eighth heaven," the nurse
 Went quaking, full of fear and fright Her heart
 Was sundered through her terror of Tair.
 She reached the camp, approached a trusty man,
 And said " If thou wilt bring me to the Shah,
 Thou shalt receive from me a crown and ring "

That wise and prudent man conducted her
 Toward the valiant monarch from the gate.
 She came, with her eyelashes swept the ground,
 And told him all. Her words rejoiced the Shah,
 Who smiled He gave her fifty score dinars,
 A necklace, pair of bracelets, crown, and cloak
 Embroidered with brocade of Chin, and answered —
 " Speak much and kindly to the moon-faced maid,
 And say to her ' He sware by sun and moon,
 The girdle of Zarduhsht,¹ the throne and crown —
 " Whate'er thou askest of me, though it be
 To cante mine own realm, thine ear shall hear
 No angry word from me, nor will I seek
 To part from thine embrace " ' For I will buy her,
 God willing, at the cost of throne and crown,
 Of treasure and of host"

On hearing this
 She hurried from the camp back to the hold,
 Informed the silver Cypress what had passed,
 And added " Venus is conjunct with Sol "

¹ Cf Vol. v p. 16

She told of Shah Shapur, his looks and height,
All she had noted of that Moon so bright.

§3

*How Tair was bemused by his Daughter and how she came
to Shapur, who took the Hold and slew Tair*

Now Mahka, when Sol's crown westward shone,
And on the earth its yellow flower became
Like teak in hue, won from the treasurer
And minister of king Tair the keys
That oped the stores of provand and of wine,
And sent the leaders and the veteran chiefs c 145
Supplies thereof with sweet narcissus-blooms
And fenugreek. She called to her the server,
Spake much and graciously to him, and said —

"Thou pourest wine to-night, give it Tair
Neat, and keep all of them with wine in hand
That they may fall asleep and be bemused "

The server answered her "Thy slave am I,
And only live because thou wiliest it "

Now when the sun was yellow in the west,
And murky night bade it "Avaunt," Tair
Called for a cup of royal wine, and first
They drank "The 'Inamans." When one watch had
passed

Tair slept careless of the din around,
And all withdrew to rest, whereat that Moon
Bade her slaves speak in whispers and undo
With stealth the castle-gate Now Shah Shapur
Was waiting, angered at the drunken dm,
But when the light shone through the gate he cried —
"Our mate is sleepless fortune !"

Then he bade

To lodge that fair maid daintily in camp,

Collected all his forces, chose out men,
 Both mounted and afoot, approved in valour
 And fitted for the fray, and entering
 The hold 'gan slay, and seized the ancient treasures.
 The more part of the garrison were drunk,
 The rest, but half awake, prepared to fight,
 None showed his back through fear The noble Shah
 Slew many while Tair, who was made captive,
 Came naked and, albeit unwillingly,
 Apace before him. Hold and goods were both
 Shapur's One man was rich and only one'
 He waited till the dawn and, when Sol showed
 Its golden cap, they set a throne of turquoise,
 As was the custom, in the hold and held
 An audience When the Shah had made an end
 The Rose of early Spring drew near to him ,
 She wore a ruby coronet and shone
 In cloth of gold of Chin He seated her
 Beside him on the throne and presently
 Called for Tair in bonds who, when he came,
 Bare-headed, and beheld his daughter crowned,
 c 1486 Knew that the sorcery was hers and she
 Had wrought the mischief, and he said " O Shah,
 And noble man' see how my child hath dealt
 With me ' Be thou too wary of her love,
 And hold all strangers enemies henceforth "
 Shapur made answer to that miscreant —
 " When thou didst take the daughter of Bahrain
 From her seclusion, and insult our race,
 Thou didst arouse a sleeping feud "

He bade

The deathsman to behead Tair and fling
 His body to the flames The head he trailed
 In blood contemptuously and flung away.
 He would not let his Arab captives speak,
 But had their shoulder-blades removed—an act

Which horrified the world. The Arabs used
 To call him Zu'l Aktaf because he wrenched
 Their shoulders from the spine. Thence he returned
 To Pars where all men came and homaged him.
 All that got quarter with their shoulders whole
 Refused to him no longer tax and toll.

§4

*How Shapur went disguised as a Merchant to Rum, how he
 was taken by Cæsar, and how CÆSAR ravaged the Land
 of Iran*

Thus heaven revolved awhile, then changed its favour
 The day came when Shapur, although possessed
 Of crown and treasure, dreaded what might be,
 And, when two watches of the night had passed,
 Called his astrologers and asked concerning
 The imperial throne and weal and woe to come
 The astrologeis brought forth their astrolabes,
 And cast his prospects of repose and lest,¹
 To see if ill would reach, or Grace divine
 Grow greater with, the Shah. This seen, they said —
 " Great king, world-lord, of ardent heart and pure!
 A grievous, painful task confronteth thee,
 But what none dareth tell "

Shapur replied —

' O learned men and seekers of the way'
 By what device can this be made to pass
 From me, and mine ill star not tread me down '"

The astrologers made answer " None, O Shah '
 By courage and by knowledge can escape
 The revolution of the restless sky,
 We cannot strive with it, what is to be

c 1437

¹ Or ' And banished rest and slumber for his sake "

Will happen all, past doubt."

The noble Shah

Rejoined : "God is our refuge from all ill,
For He created circling heaven above,
Created strength and weakness "

He spread out

His justice through the realm and for a while
Was glad and free from trouble Having rendered
The whole land prosperous he greatly yearned
To visit Rum and see the state of Cæsar,
His army, treasury, and puissance.
He told his minister, a paladin
Both just and prudent, of his secret purpose,
But hid it from all other folk, and added —
" Administer the realm with equity,
For that will make you glad "

He had prepared

Ten caravans of camels—noble beasts ;
There was a chief to every caravan.
He loaded thirty camels with dinars,
The rest with jewels and brocade. He left
The peopled parts and journeyed full of care
Till he arrived in Rum and saw a suburb
Where dwelt both thanes and citizens. He entered
The dwelling of a man of means and asked :—
" Can I have lodging here ?"

With many greetings

The goodman said " Receive we not such guests ? "
Shapur abode that night, ate, and gave presents,
Receiving back the blessings of the thane.
At morn he packed and went to Caesar's palace,
Like wind, and coming to the chamberlain
Saluted him and gave him gifts, who asked —
" Who art thou ? Say, because thou art a king
In limbs and looks."

Shapur replied : " Not 1.

SHAPUR SON OF URMUZD

I am a Persian, a religious man,
And with my merchandise have come from Jaz.
I have a caravan of silks and linens,
And came to court in hope to be received
By Cæsar If among my merchandise
Aught liketh him, or of my gems and arms,
Let him accept such from his slave and place them
Among his treasures. This will please, not grieve,
The rest I shall sell boldly in reliance
On his protection, purchase what I need
In Rum, and bear it to Iran "

The elder
Went and told Cæsar, who bade raise the curtain,
And granted audience When Shapur approached
The presence he gave praises as was fitting,
While Cæsar, gazing on him, liked him well,
Bade spread the board, and put all strangers forth

There was in Rum a native of Iran,
A man of much experience, but withal
Injurious, oppressive, and accursed,
Who said to Cæsar " O exalted one!
List to my news in secret this great merchant,
Who taketh our dinars for his brocade,
Is, I assert, Shapur, the king of kings,
In speech, in countenance, in Grace, and bearing"

When Cæsar heard he was amazed, looked black,
And set a watch, but kept the matter close,
And scanned Shapur as he arose bemused.
The guard came up, and said " Thou art Shapur,
Son of Narsi, disguised."

They carried him
Off to the women's house and bound his hands ,
None 'scapeth from the net of bale by valour
What booteth to consult astrologers
Since all their calculations naught availed ?

They lit a candle by the drunken man,

And vilely sewed him up in ass's hide.
 All said " The wretch hath gained an ass's skin,
 And lost a throne!"

There was a dark, strait cell
 Where to they bare, and where to they flung,
 That luckless one forthwith and locked the door
 Now Cæsar gave the custody of key,
 And of that captive wrapped in alien hide,
 To his own wife, and told her " Give him bread
 And water lest his soul may pass too soon.
 If he survive awhile he will perceive
 The worth of throne and crown, and none that is not
 Of Cæsar's race will covet Cesar's throne."

She locked the cell Her own home was elsewhere.
 She had for treasurers and confidants
 A moon-faced girl, Iranian by descent,
 Who knew her lineage from sire to sire,
 And Cæsar's wife put in her charge the key,
 And brave Shapur fast in the ass's skin,
 Whom Cæsar left thus straitened, and that day
 Led forth his host Now when he reached Iran
 His army drew the falchion of revenge,
 c 1439 And bore off many captives. Their brave foes
 Had none to aid them, and Iran was stripped
 Of men and women, children and all havings,
 Both great and small No news came to the host
 Of Shah Shapur alive or dead Iran
 Fled before Hum, the land was void of folk,
 While countless others had a Christian call,
 And flocked before the bishops, one and all.

§ 5

*How the Damsel took Measures to free Shapur, and how he
fled with her from Rum*

Time passed, the army of Iran was scattered,
And all the while in Rum the keepers watched
Shapur both day and night, howbert the damsel,
That was Iranian-born, rejoiced not o'er him,
But wept for him, thus clad in ass's hide,
Incessantly, her heart burned for Shapur

One day she said ' O goodly man! who art thou ?
Speak and fear not, for in this ass's skin
Thy graceful form hath neither sleep nor rest.
Thou wast a Cypress with the moon full-orbed
Above it, and that moon had musk-black curls,
But now thy cypress-form is like a hoop,
Thine elephantine body like a reed
My heart is burning, mine eyes weep, for thee
Both day and night What wouldst thou in thme
anguish ?

Why tell not me thy secret ?"

Said Shapur —

" If thou art well disposed to me, my Fair^T
I ask thy promise—one confirmed by oath
That thou wilt keep it—not to tell my foes
My secret, but be mindful of mine anguish ,
Then will I tell thee what thou wouldst—the truth."

The damsel swarc to him by the All-just,
The cincture of the priest¹—that stalwart guide—
The life of Christ, the Passion of the Cross,
The master of Iran, and love and fear —

" I will not tell or benefit thereby "

¹ Or of "Shammas," a. legendary founder of Fire-worship, in which case we may suppose that the lady, to make assurance doubly sure, pledged herself by both religions

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

He told all, hiding neither good nor bad,
And said to her : " Now if thou wilt perform
My hest, and pledge thy heart to keep my secret,
c 1440 Thy head shall be exalted o'er all dames,
The world be at thy feet. At meal-time thou
Shalt bring warm milk and supple me this hide.
Soak it because it shall become world-famous,
And after my decease the men of wisdom
Will tell the tale for many a year "

The damsel
Used her endeavours to obtain hot milk,
But furtively and speaking 'neath her breath.
On coming back with milk she used to set
Upon the fire a bowl thereof, then bear it
In secret to Shapur, informing none.
In two weeks' time the ass's hide was moistened,
And when with aching body and full heart
Shapur came forth therefrom he said to her
In confidence " O pure one, vigilant,
And kindly in thy deeds ' we must advise,
And frame a stratagem to 'scape from Rum
May blessing never light on such a land !"

The damsel said to him " Tomorrow morn
Our chiefs will set forth to the banquet-place.
There is a feast in Rum that men and women,
And children will attend Whenas the queen
Shall leave the city for the merrymake
Upon the plain, the coast will be all clear,
And I will manage, reckless of mishap,
My wits shall get for thee two steeds, two maces,
And bow and "arrows.

Hearing this, he praised
That worshipful, foreseeing maid, grew bold,
And in this case took wisdom for his guide

Whenas the Fount of Light sank in the west,
And night drew o'er its head the Veil of Pitch,

Shapur mused much "What will she do tomorrow?"

When Sol arose in Leo, when day waxed
 And slumber waned, the great men of the city
 Went to the feast That damsel, like a man
 Full of resource, began to ply her schemes.
 She had the empty palace to herself,
 Had lion's heart withal and leopard's claws.
 She brought two noble horses from the stalls,
 Chose weapons fit for valiant cavaliers
 With all that she had need of in dinars,
 In pearls, in rubies, and in every thing.
 When all was ready, and the night had come,
 The pair resolved to act and started forth
 Toward Iran, both full of secret joy, c 1441
 In quest of safety Night and day alike
 They hurried onward, neither slept nor ate,
 And from the city through the thornbrakes reached
 A province civilised When steeds and riders
 Grew faint with hurrying they sought a place
 To halt at, came upon a pleasant village
 With gardens, park, and pleasancess, and there,
 Toil-worn and fleeing from calamity,
 Knocked at a gardener's door, who hurried out—
 A hospitable man of kindly heart—
 And, seeing two with armom, spears, and helms,
 Said to the Shah "Why is this visitation?
 Whence hast thou sprung at this untimely hour,
 Armed for an expedition?"

Said Shapur —

'Good friend' thou askest much of one astray'
 A traveller I, a native of Iran,
 And bent on flight. I am in Cæsar's danger
 And in his troops', and never may I see
 His head and crown' If thou wilt be my host
 To-night, and play the marchlord's part discreetly,¹

¹ I e. in receiving those who have just crossed the frontier.

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

Sure am I that one day 'twill profit thee,
The tree that thou shalt plant will bear thee fruit."

The gardener said " The house is thme, the gardener
Himself thy guest. Whate'er I can I will,
Informing none."

Then Shah Shapur alighted,
He and the damsel, and the gardener's wife
Gat ready food for them as best she could.
When they had eaten bread they turned to wine,
And had a lowly chamber dight. The gardener
Gave to Shapur the wine forthwith, and said —
Drink thou to whom thou wilt "

" My host," he answered,
" And gardener eloquent and excellent'
The man that bringeth wine should drink it first,
When first in years and wisdom. Thou art older
Than I and, since thou furnishest the wine,
Thou shouldst begin"

" Great sir'" the gardener said,
" The man of Grace should drink first. Lead the way
As old in wisdom though more young in years
I seem to scent a crown upon thy locks,
Thy visage too is like the sun."

Shapur
Smiled, took the wine, and sighed " O pious man !"
He said, "what tidings from Iran hast thou ?"

C. 142 The gardener said " O thou of kingly mind'
May foe ne'er harm thee. May the ills that Cæsar
Hath brought upon the Iranians now befall
Our foemen All are scattered in Iran,
And tilth and crop remain not. Massacre
And pillage have dispersed our mighty folk,
While many have turned Christians and come zoned
Before the bishops, many don priests' caps
That they may have a land and resting-place!"

The other said "Where then was Shah Shapur,

Who used to shine resplendent as the moon
 Upon Urmuzd, that Cæsar thus should dare,
 And fortune overcast the Iranians' lustre ? "

The gardener answered him " Exalted one^T
 Be majesty and pleasure ever thine.
 No tidings of his whereabouts, alive
 Or dead, hath reached the Iranian potentates:
 The people of Iran are slaves in Rum."

The gardener, the Shah's host, wept bitterly,
 And added " Thou shalt stay three days, and then
 My house will be the lustre of the world
 Because a sage said when the world was young —
 ' Unwise is he whose courtesy is scant
 To guests, black fortune will ensure him want.'
 So tarry, rest, and take a cup of wine,
 And when thy heart is merry tell thy name."

Shapur said " Good ' Our host is our Great King,
 At present."

He abode, ate, and conversed,
 That night, and when morn rose above the mountains,
 When rose the Golden Banner from the dales,
 The master of the garden visited
 His guest, and said " Good day to thee, and may
 Thy head be o'er the ram-clouds. This abode
 Was not a fitting resting-place for thee,
 Nor was the season suited for repose "

Shapur replied " My friend ' I should prefer
 This house to crown and throne And now bring forth
 A Zandavasta and thy sacred twigs
 That while I mutter I may ask thee questions."¹

He did according to the Shah's command,
 Made the twigs ready and the place of prayer.
 Then as he prayed the Shah said " Tell me truly
 Where the high priest is now "

His host replied —

¹ See Vol 1 p 80, s v *Bar*, and *Barsam*

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

¹ Sweet-tongued and holy man' I can discern
His house from here."

The Shah said privily —
" Request some seal-clay of the Tillage-chief."

c. 143 The gardener got it and returned at once
The world-lord pressed his signet on the clay,
Returned it to the gardener with his thanks,
And said to him " Give this clay to the high priest,
And mark his words."

That morn the gardener
Went with the impress of the royal signet,
But on arrival found the portal barred,
And armed men stationed round He clamoured loudly
To be admitted and proceeded straightway
Before the high priest, showed the signature,
And did obeisance. When the high priest looked,
And saw the impress, that wise statist's heart
Began to throb with joy and, weeping greatly
Upon that name, he asked " What man is this ?"

The gardener said " My lord' the cavalier
Is staying at my house and hath with him
A Moon, slim cypress-like, wise, fair, and graceful"

The high priest said " Now as to this aspirant,¹
What is he like in stature and in face?"

The gardener answered " One that ne'er hath seen
Spring, and a cypress by the waters side,
Would yet at sight of this man's looks and stature
Find music in his heart His arms are like
A camels thighs, his chest is like a lion's,
His cheek like blood. Shame reddeneth at his grace,
The crown's decore proceedeth from his face."

¹ Reading with P

§6

*How the High Priest and the Captain of the Host, hearing
of Shapur's Airival, went to him with the Troops*

The wise high priest, while listening to the gardener,
Perceived with his shrewd mind " This Lion-heart
Can be none other than the Shah, his mien
Befitteth but the throne i" and seeking out
A wary messenger he sent to tell
The captain of the host: " The Grace of Shah
Shapur is manifest. Assemble troops
From every side "

The high priest's messenger
Came speeding to the captain of the host,
Who gladdened at the words and then and there
Set both his cheeks upon the ground, and said
To God " O righteous Judge ' I serve Thee only.
Who ever thought that Shah Shapur and army
Would see each other more ? O one just God,
The Master of the world and Guide to good '
I thank Thee."

When night raised its sable flag, c 1444
And stars began to twinkle round the moon,
Troops gathered from all quarters, and wherever
Chiefs were they made their way, by ones and twos,
Toward that city and reached joyfully
The hospitable gardener's door Now when
The troops had gathered, that good man approached
The Shah who bade that they should be admitted
Although his court was lowly. As they came
They bent their faces to the ground before him.
The Shah embraced the chieftains and began
To wail his woes, told of his sufferings
Within the ass's skin, of Cæsar's words,

And what that fair Iranian slave had done
 For love of him " I have through her and God
 Preserved my life. May Fortune smile on her.
 Grant but a virtuous slave and thou wilt be
 The slave of such though king and glorious.
 I am the slave of this fond slave whose heart
 Is open and who keepeth secrets well
 Wherever I have forces, and my rule
 Is recognised, send thither men and give
 The tidings Scatter scouts upon the roads,
 Secure them, and the one to Taisafun
 In chief The news must not transpire If Cæsar
 Hear of me that the Grace of king of kings
 Appeareth he will come, destroy my host,
 And break the Iranians' hearts and backs We cannot
 Withstand him yet or cope with his lush fortune,
 But when the high priest cometh and shall bring
 Troops we will bar the road to ants and gnats
 We will be instant then and take new order
 To clear our garden quietly of weeds,
 To every corner spies shall be dispatched,
 And outposts be on guard by day and night.
 Thenceforth I give no Ruman liberty
 To sleep in peace or lay his armour by "

§7

How Shapur made a Night-attack, and how Cæsar was taken

Shapur, whose troops were soon six thousand strong,
 Sent veteran chiefs to spy out Taisafun,
 C 1445 And notify his high and glorious court
 Of Caesar. Instantly they went to find
 How matters stood, then told the exalted Shah —
 " No thought hath Cæsar save for wine and chase.
 His troops are scattered everywhere to pillage.

There are no guards or sentries day or night,
His troops are like a flock without a shepherd.
He seeth not a foe on any side,
And so it pleaseth him to live at ease "

Shapur rejoiced, his troubles turned to wind.
He chose three thousand of the Iranians,
All horsemen mailed on barded chargers, armed
Himself, and marched on Taisafun by night.
He marched by night and turned aside by day
His route lay over wilderness and mountain
By track or no track, and two leagues and more
Ahead were scouts till Taisafun was nigh.
In the third watch he reached the camp of Cæsar,
Of whom he felt no fear, heard no man's voice,
No sentries' challenge and no tinkling bells
Tents and pavilions covered all the waste
Who wotted of that onset? In his tent
Lay Cæsar drunk, his troops were all abroad.
Shapur, the valiant, gave his royal steed
The rem, on seeing this, led on his powers
Against the camp, and grasped his massive mace.
Rang cloudward clarion, mace, and Indian bell,
Rose battle-cry and tumult everywhere.
Thou wouldst have said " May be the heaven is rent,
And through the air blood droppeth from the sun' "
Gleamed Kawa's flag, gloomed night, flashed violet
swords,

Thou wouldst have said " The air is raining them,
The world is in a mist!¹ " Heaven disappeared
Amid the dust, the stars drew in their skirts,
And brave Shapur wrecked worthless Cesar's camp.
They slew twelve thousand Ruman cavaliers
And over, tired the camp, dashed heaven to earth,
And in the end made Cæsar prisoner.
His good stars grew averse. Among the tents
They captured many of his nobles, horsemen

Elect and brave, and put them into bonds

Such is the action of the lofty sky

At whiles up-lifting and at whiles low-laying,

At whiles delighting and at whiles aftraymg i

The innocent that hath humanity

Is best, almighty God is his ally.

When it was day, when night withdrew its skirt,

And Sol's flag showed aloft, Shapur commanded

A scribe to come with writing implements

They wrote to every province, to each king,

And chief. Shapur began " Our heart-felt praise

Be to almighty God who helpeth others

To good but hath no need of others' help

Since Cæsar hath kept not God's laws, but sown

Naught but the seed of wrong within Iran,

Bonds chafe him sorely, for he had not wisdom

To guide his soul. He hath resigned to us

The crown of kingship and reserveth only

His infamy. His host and court are broken

By God's own might who pointed out the way.

Those Rumans whom ye capture in your cities

Must have their portion of the scimitar.

Seek ye all justice, do as I command,

And swear allegiance unto me afresh "

A cameleer came to each quarter quickly,

And brought the letter of the ardent Shah,

Who left the camp for Taisafun and there

Held session safely with his counsellors,

And, having donned the ancestral crown, gave thanks

To God, the Giver of all good He bade

A scribe to go inside the prison-house,

And make a list of all the captives' names

There were a thousand and five score and two

Of Caesar's kindred and high rank in Rum.

The world-lord lopped the hands and feet of those

That had been chief in ill, and then commanded

To bring in Caesar, lord of Rum. The guard
 Brought him from prison like a man insane
 That tyrant, when he saw Shapur's crown, wept,
 He rubbed his visage red upon the ground,
 And swept it with his lashes, grovelling,
 And blessing crown and throne.

C 1447

' O thou compact

Of ill," the Shah said, " Christian and God's foe,
 Ascribing unto Him who hath no mate,
 No period, and no origin, a son!
 Thou art a very knave, a lunatic,
 A miscreant, fool, and utterest naught but lies,
 Which are an evil, umlluming the
 Where are thy counsel, modesty, and heart
 Inciting thee to good, if thou art Cæsar ?
 Why bind me in an ass's hide and so
 Fling greatness to the dust ? I came to feast
 In merchant's guise, I came not forth to fight
 With drums and troops, but thou didst clothe thy guest
 In ass's skin and march against Iran
 Now shalt thou feel the clutch of valiant men,
 And seek no more to fight Iran "

"O Shah!"

Said Cæsar, " who can 'scape God's ordinance ?
 The loyal throne put wisdom far from me,
 And made my soul a hireling of the Div
 Thou wilt be famous, doing good for ill,
 Because thy name ne'er will grow old, and thou
 Wilt compass all thy longing by thy prowess
 If I have safeguard for my life from thee
 Wealth and dinars are worthless in mine eyes,
 Then will I be a slave about thy court,
 And seek for nothing but to grace thy throne"

The Shah replied " Vile wretch' why didst thou
 turn

This country upside down? If all the spoil

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

That thou didst bear to Rum (ne'er mayst thou look
On that cursed land again') thou wilt restore
Back from thy house to this exalted folk,
Next, if whate'er was harried in Iran,
And made the lair of lions and of pards,
Thou wilt recover at thine own expense,
And in requital for thine evil deeds,
Next, if for those Iranians whom thou slewest
Thou choosest Rumans of the royal race,
And givest me ten for every one of ours,
Surrendering their lives as hostages,
And I will take but men of desar's stock
To be with me here in this happy land,
And, next, if for each tree felled in Iran,
(None well-disposed would fell the trees of others)
Thou plant another, reinstate all walls,
And thus abate the anger in our hearts,
Shall I not bind thee as thou bindest me?
Can I forgive thee for the ass's skin ?

C 148 If thou shalt fail in aught that I have said
My men shall rend thy skin from head to foot"

As soon as he had finished his demands
Shapur, the world-lord, as the conqueror
Split with his dagger both his prisoner's ears,
And having bored his nostrils put a bit
Therein in memory of the ass's hide,
And loaded both his feet with heavy chains,
The guard moreover bare him back to ward.

They held review and muster, and demanded
The treasury-key. The monarch massed and paid
The host, then, bent on justice and revenge,
Marched from Iran upon the coast of Rum.
All that were in the desert and that land
They slew and set the houses there on fire,
So that the world was lighted by the blaze.
When news reached Rum " Our fertile lands are wasted,

And in a night-attack illustrious Cæsar
 Hath been made captive," all the people wept,
 And at Shapur's name were consumed with dread
 " Ungenerous Cæsar wrought this woe," they said.

§ 8

*Hon Shapur went to Rum and fought with Yanus, Caesar's
 Brother*

Though Cæsar's sire was dead, his mother lived,
 He had a younger brother too—Yanus—
 A generous and potent atheling.
 Troops mustered at his gate, his warlike mother
 Gave them a donative, and said to him —
 'Avenge thy brother seest not that a host
 Hath come forth from Iran?"

He beat the drums,
 And carried out the Cross The Cross was great,
 The army fierce The hosts met face to face,
 The warriors had no rest The ranks were ranged,
 A shout went up, Yanus led on the van
 Black dust-clouds rose, and none could see his way
 Amid the murk. Upon one flank were mountains,
 And on the other, where the troops were massed,
 A river ran The dm of battle rose,
 Sword, mace, and arrow flashed, while azure-dim
 Was air with dust of horsemen, spearheads gleamed,
 And banners fluttered while the stars looked down
 Upon that strife—all wreak and malison

c 149

The warriors of Rum all girt their loins,
 Like furious lions, for that strife The air
 Was lapis-lazuli, the ground was iron,
 Dark dusk rose cloud-ward, and thou wouldst have
 said —

" The air is all a mist whence diamonds pour."

The Shah's troops likewise girt their loins for blood-shed

Thus blew the blast of battle till the sun
Grew dim They slew until earth's surface turned
To iron with the breast-plates of the slain.
Then from the centre Shah Shapur advanced
His battle, calling on his left and right,
And on his merny. Shah and chiefs made hot
Their steeds, earth trembled, and the armies reeled.
He charged the Ruman host, and great and small
Were one Aware that he could not withstand
The Shah, Yanus fled with his troops, pursued
By valorous Shapur, who robbed the air
Of lustre with his dust-clouds On all sides
He piled the foe in heaps, smirched earth with brains,
And slew so many of the host of Rum
That all the plain was heads and feet and trunks.
No host and Cross remained upon the field,
No crucifix and bishop in the holds
He took such spoil on all sides that the troops
Were in amaze. He gave it all to them,
Reserving to himself but Cæsar's wealth,
Who had seen travail in amassing it,
And found his travail end not with his treasure !
The host of Rum, assembling, said of him —
"Be such chief ours no more ' May Cæsar's name
Cease out of Rum ! The girdle of the priests,
And their archbishop's crozier are consumed'
So now for us Rum and Kannuj are one,
Because the call of Christ's Faith is fordone !"

§9

*How the Rumans placed Bazanush upon the Throne of Cæsar ,
his Letter to Shapur and the Answer*

There was a man of noble lineage,
And of the famous Caesars' stock withal,
A man of wisdom, Bazanush by name,
Fraught with good counsel both in mind and tongue,
To whom the army said "Be Cæsar thou, c. 1450
This very day the captain of the host,
The troops will be attentive to thy words
Illume the crown and renovate the throne "

They set for him the throne of ivory
Whereon he sat in all his glory crowned,
While all the Rumans hailed him as the Cæsar
He sat and mused on war and battlefield,
And, knowing that to strive in fight against
The exalted Shah would bring disaster, chose
An envoy shrewd and modest who could speak
Wise words with gentleness—a scribe expert,
Experienced, learned, wise, and well approved—
Set him haïd by, dictated subtle words,
And wrote a letter full of benisons
From God almighty on the king of earth —
" Be thy crown ever bright and all the great
Thy slaves Thou know'st that pillaging and bloodshed,
And harrying the innocent, are hateful
To noble men both in Iran and Rum.
If this feud first began about Iraj
Twas settled by the might of Minuchihr.
Now Salm is dust, and Tiir is swept away,
In vengeance. If Sikandar and Dara
Embroider us now that feud is obsolete
In Rum, the one good fortune left, the other

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

Was slam by his two ministers, while Cæsar,
If he be cause, is galled within thy prison
By fetters. Rum must not be desolate,
For never there hath been a land like Rum.
Now, if thy purpose is to waste and slay,
The Rumans cannot either fight or flee.
Their wives and children are thy prisoners,
Or wounded by thy swords and shafts. 'Tis time
To minish wrath and vengeance, wrath and Faith
Ne'er fare together. Be our ransom then
All our possessions, for this feud is wasting
Our lives Be kind, burn not so many cities
Such days must cease. The Maker of the world
Will not approve a world-lord set on wrong,
And vengeance. May He bless the Shah, and may
The Shah's exalted star encrown the moon."

The scribe laid down his pen when he had written
That royal letter whereunto they set
The seal of Cæsar, and the ambassador
c 1451 Set forward to the Shah. The wise man came,
And tendered Cæsar's letter to Shapur
Of glorious race, who, when they read to him
The letter, showering on him those fair words,
Was gracious, wept, and bent his warrior-brows.
He wrote at once an answer and detailed
All that had happened both for good and ill,
He said " Who sewed his guest in ass's hide ?
Who lighted up the mart of ancient feuds ?
If thou art wise arise and come to me,
Thou and thy honest counsellors, for I
Have granted quarter and I will not fight.
The world is never straitened to the wise."

The messenger returned with this reply,
And word for word discharged his embassy

§ 10

How Baanush went to Shapur and made a Treaty of Peace

When Bazamish saw that reply the heart
In his pure body throbbed with joy. He bade
A hundred nobles quit fair Rum with him.
They made up sixty asses' loads of drachms,
Of gems, and full-dress robes, and thirty thousand
Dinars for largess gathered from all sides.

They went before the Shah with naked feet
And heads all bare, and, as they poured dinars,
Bestrewed the gold with gems. Shapur received
The Rumans graciously and seated them
In due degree. He said to Bazanush —
" From Rum no lack of curst and unjust men
Hath come Where there were cities in Iran
Now there are thorn-brakes. I demand redress
For what hath been laid waste and made the lair
Of pard and lion."

Bazanush replied —

" Say what thou wilt and since thou gav'st us quarter
Frown not upon us "

Said the noble Shah —

" If thou wouldst have full pardon for the wrong
Thou must pay tribute in dinars of Rum—
Two hundred thousand thrice in every year,
And further give up Nasibin to me,
It thou wouldst end my vengeance "

Bazanush

Replied " Iran, Arabia, Nasibin
Are thme, and I agree to this vast tribute,
For we can not withstand thy wrath and vengeance

Shapur agreed by treaty not to inarch
On Rum thenceforth, excepting by permission

In friendly wise, that Rum might not be injured.
 Then he dismissed those magnates graciously
 And honourably, on their departure marched,
 And thanked his Maker much. He sought Istakhr—
 The world-famed glory of the land of Pars—
 Rejoicing.

When the news of these events
 Reached Nasibin the people rushed to arms,
 Exclaiming * " We will not let Shah Shapur
 Take Nasibur or bring an army hither
 Because he is not Christian but observeth
 The Zandavasta and the cult of Fire
 He will not hear us when he cometh hither,
 And we will not accept the Zandavasta,
 And ancient Faith "

The populace prevailed,
 The Faithful mounted for the war When tidings
 Reached Shah Shapur that Nasibin rebelled
 He was enraged against the Christian Faith,
 And set a countless host upon the march.
 He said " Applaud I cannot an evangel
 Whose author suffered death among the Jews."

For one whole week they fought, the city's gate
 Grew all too narrow for the combatants,
 The Iranians slew a multitude of chiefs,
 And placed those that survived in heavy bonds.
 The citizens wrote to the Shah for quarter,
 Who pardoned them and bade his host withdraw.

He gained renown in all parts of the earth,
 He gained supremacy o'er all the world
 Men used to call him "The victorious Shah,"
 And long did he possess the throne and crown.
 She who had freed and given him his greatness,
 Whom he named Dilafruz-i-Farrukhpai,*
 Was dearer to him than all other fair.

¹ I e The lucky-footed lustre of the heart

SHAPUR SON OF URMUZD

Moreover on the gardener he bestowed
Great treasure and dismissed him well provided,
But Cæsar stayed in prison and in bond,
In abject, evil case, and lasso-bound,
While all the treasure that he had in Rum,
And toiled to gather in from every side,
He had conveyed and given to Shapur.
He lived awhile with sighs upon his lips,
Within his prison-house, and there he died,
And let another have the crown of might.
Then Shah Shapur dispatched the corpse to Rum,
Encrowned with musk upon a bier, and said —
" This is our end but where we shall find rest
I know not One is covetous and foolish,
Another wise and dowered with Grace, but life
Will pass with both The good and abstinent
Alone are blest."

He mounted on the throne
Of kings and ruled the world awhile Thereafter
He settled many folk for good or ill
Within the land of Khuzistan and built
A city for his prisoners folk at large
Shared not therein¹ 'Twas called Khurram Abad,²
But who were they who shared that pleasant place?³
The men whose hands Shapur had stricken off
Had this assigned to them as their abode,
They had it all, and every year a robe
Of honour He erected too in Sham
A city which he called Piniz Shapur,³
And in Ahwaz a third with palaces
And hospitals, Kinam-i-Asiran⁴
They called it, prisoners there had rest and ease
He reigned until he passed his fiftieth year
Of sovereignty, the age had not his peer.

¹ Reading with P.

³ Victorious Shapur

² Pleasant Abode

⁴ The Prisoners' Nest

*How Mani, the Painter, came to Shapur with Pretence of
being a Prophet, and was slain*

There came from Chin a man of eloquence,
Whose peer in painting earth will not behold,
By which accomplishment he gained his ends
He was a man of might by name Mani.
He said " I prove my mission by my painting,
And am the greatest of evangelists."

He came from Chin, asked audience of Shapur,
Soliciting his help in that evangel,
And speaking with such unction that the Shah,
Filled with misgivings and keen interest,
Convoked the archmages and held talk at large
About Mani " This suasive man of Chin
Hath plunged me into doubts about his Faith
Hold converse with him, ye may be converted "

They said • " This man—a worshipper of pictures—
Is not the equal of our own high priest,
Hear what Mani saith and then call for him
Manf will be dumfounded in his presence " ¹

The Shah bade that Mani should come who spake
At large, discoursing with the archimages,
In presence of the Shah, of Light and Darkness²
Until Mani was checked in full career
By what the high priest said to him concerning
0.1454 The ancient Faith " Thou worshipper of pictures!
Why layest thou thy daring hand on God—
The Being that created Heaven above,
Created space and time, with light and darkness,
Therein, and is supreme of principles ?
The nights and days of high, revolving heaven

¹ Beading with P

² Lit of white and black

Are both thy source of safety and mishap.
How canst thou take a picture for a proof,
And disregard the counsel of the Faithful,
Who say that holy God is One, and thou
Hast no alternative to serving Him ?
If thou wilt give these pictures motion, then
Thou mayst appeal thereto. Thy proof, thou knowest
Is naught, and no one will esteem it valid.
Were Ahriman God's equal, darksome night
Would be like shining day, and both would be
Of equal length throughout the year, and neither
Would in their revolutions wax or wane.
The Maker of the world is compassed not
By thought, for He is higher than thought and space.
Thy words are those of lunatics Enough!
No one will side with thee "

He spake much else,
For he was one of knowledge and of courage.
Mani was all confounded by the words,
His favour changed, the king was wroth with him,
So that his days were straitened, bidding some
To drag him from the court disgraced, and said —
" This worshipper of pictures is unfit
To live, so since he causeth turmoil here
Flay him from head to foot, and let his skin
Be stuffed with hay, and then, that no one else
May make pretences to like dignity,
Hang up the skin upon the city-gate,
Or on the wall outside the hospital"

So did they All the people blessed the Shah,
And cast dust on the body of the slam

The fortune of Shapur was such that men
Saw in his garth no thorn upon the rose.
He was so just, so wise, and politic,
Brave, bounteous, active, that not anywhere
Was left a foe, or evil e'en a lair.

§ 12

*How Shapur made his Brother Ardshir Regent till his own
Son should grow up, and how his Days ended*

- C. 1455 When he had naught to hope for from high heaven,
For he had passed his three score years and ten,
He called a scribe, the high priest, and Ardshir,
His younger brother, youthful still and crowned
With justice and with wisdom Now the Shah
Had but one son—an infant—named Shapur,
Not yet matured by fortune, so the king,
In presence of the magnates and the scribes,
Said to Ardshir " If thou wilt make a pact
With me in all good faith, and pledge thyself
To keep it, that what time my son shall come
To man's estate, and when the breath of greatness
Shall breathe on him, thou wilt resign to him
The treasure and the throne and crown, and be
His loyal minister, I will commit
To thee this crown of kingship and transfer
Withal to thee the treasure and the host"
Ardshir agreed before the great and wise
To give up to the child when grown to manhood,
And fit for diadem and throne of might,
The kingship and intreat him lovingly
Whereat Shapur, in presence of the lords,
Gave the world's crown and signet to Ardshir,
Then said " Take seriously the world's affairs.
Know, O my brother ! that an unjust king
Regardeth not the interests of the realm,
But yearneth to fill up his treasures,
Exceeding all his officers in greed.
Blest is the upright king that serveth God
Because in him his subjects' hearts delight,
He groweth rich by equity and bounty,

SHAPUR SON OF URMUZD

He leadeth every one toward the Faith,
He guardeth all his kingdom from the foe,
He lifteth to the clouds his head and crown,
He gathereth wealth by justice and in peace,
Disperseth trouble from the heart by largess,
He passeth o'er the offences of ill-doers,
And ever practiseth humanity
He that hath sought these virtues will attain
To wisdom and right rede and watchfulness.
Kings must be wise and teach both young and old,
For subjects not instructed in God's way
Will err, and if the king is wroth with such
He violateth justice and the Faith
Man's heart and brain are joint kings of his body,
The other members are the soldiery.
When, then, the heart and brain have been denied,
And lost to good advice in their despair,
The life within that body is distraught,
Will troops left chrefless live on happily?¹
Left in the dark they are dispersed and cast,
A corpse, to dust. So with an unjust king
The world¹ is turned by him all upside down
He will be held accursed when he is dead,
And men will know him as 'The impious Shah.'
Keep both thine eye and body in the Faith,
For eye and body both belong to God.
The king who chooseth any other way
Should wash both heart and hands of this our world.
He scattereth his subjects from his realm,
His lieges from his gate, ignoring all
The sage's words which cleanse thy heart of guile.
The tyrant is accursed—haunt not the portal
Of men intent on greed. Know, O my brother!¹
That from a king the sage expecteth much—
First, that he be victorious, not turning

¹ Reading with P

From foes in fight; again, that he entreat
 His troops with equity and recognise
 The greatness of the high-born. whosoever
 Is fitted for the kingship will not put
 The men of rank into the ranks,¹ next thirdly,
 That he be upright and defeat not justice ;
 And fourthly, that to those who are his subjects,
 And to the old retainers of his court,
 He keep not tightly barred his treasury's door,
 But from his branches drop a shower of fruit
 The king's gate should be not without a host,
 And he should keep his treasure for his troops
 Thou wilt rejoice in treasures increased
 By justice, and thy troops will joy in thee
 Look on thy mail as thy true ornament,
 Some night it may bestead thee well. Trust not
 Thy guards too much, direct thine own concerns
 As thou wouldst be secure though, whether thou
 Shalt prove obscure or thy own age's lustre,
 Death past all doubt will come to thee at last"

The brother, hearing this, wept sore Shapui
 Wrote his last wishes out, lived on one year
 Then passed, and left this saying in men's minds —
 " Sow not within the world the seed of greed
 Because thy days will pass, and foes enjoy
 The product of thy toils. Whene'er the laws
 Both of Urmuzd and of Bahman² are kept
 This palace will become a happy home."

C 1457 Bring tulip-tinted wine, O Hashimi!³

From jars that never need replemshing

Why seek I, who am deaf at sixty-three,
 The world's grace and observance[?] Now I sing
 (Mark thou) the story of Ardshir, the king

¹ Reading with P

² Cf Vol III p 327

³ *Ie* O descendant of Muhammad's great-grandfather (Hashim)'

XXXI

ARDSHIR, BROTHER OF SHAPUR

HE REIGNED TEN YEARS

NOTE

The reign of Shapur, son of Urmuzd, was preceded, as we have seen, by those of six Shahs, none of whom left any mark on Iranian legend, and it was followed by those of three others no less In&significant Some of the six preceding Shahs had been men of importance historically, but even this cannot be said of Ardshir (Artaxerxes I I , A D 379-383) and his two successors

Ardshir must have been either an elder brother of Shapur or else, like him, a posthumous child At any rate he must have been seventy years old or more at the time of his accession. Shapuir is represented elsewhere in the Shahnama as brotherless,¹ but historically this was not the case²

Ardshir is credited by most authorities with a reign of four years only Tabari says that he was deposed by his subjects³

§ 1

*How Ardshir sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge
to the Officers*

Whenas Ardshir sat in the royal seat,
And graced the throne of old Shapur, he girt
His loins and called the Iranians, seating them
Beneath the golden throne, and thus he said —
" I would not that the process of high heaven
Should injure any. All the world shall be

¹ See p 319

² See p 318

³ NT, p 70.

Within my peace if it obey my will,
But if this giddy world prove recusant
We will take order for it. Now my brother
Left me the world in trust because his son
Is but a child. Our blessings on his soul,
For he hath purged the earth of wicked men.
Whenas Shapur, son of Shapur, shall reach
To man's estate, and knoweth how to prize
The crown and throne, I will resign to him
Them and the host according to my pledge
To Shah Shapur. I only hold the throne
As viceroy and in memory of his sire
Know this what we enjoy will pass away,
At death our travail will be turned to wind "

Through his ten years of rule he took his fill
Of joy and lavished bounty as he would
He asked from no man tribute, toll, or tax,
But made the crown and throne a charge to none,
Men therefore called him " The Beneficent,"
For all felt safe with him

Now when Shapur
Was fit for crown and throne Ardshir resigned
The glorious crown made good what he had spoken
And, like a man, maintained his pledge unbroken.

XXXII

SHAPUR, SON OF SHAPUR

HE REIGNED FIVE YEARS AND FOUR MONTHS

NOTE

According to Tabari, the death of this Shah (Sapor I I I , A D 383-388) was not due to the accidental fall of a tent-pole , the tent-ropes were cut, and the tent fell and killed him¹

§ 1

*How Shapur, Son of Shapur, sat upon the Throne and
gam a Charge to the Officers*

Whenas Shapur sat in his uncle's place C. 1458
Most joyed but some were sorry in Iran
He thus harangued the noble men of lore,
And veteran, adviceful archimages —
" Know that henceforth we favour not the liar,
For lying is not policy and that
Ensureth greatness. Treat not niddenns
As friends and sow not weeds within the garden.
The man of brains should make a mock of none
Tongues should be guarded, not imbued with bane,
For he that speaketh much in the assembly
Will minish his repute, but when a sage
Discourseth, hear, for learning ageth not.
The covetous have aching hearts, do thou

¹ NT, p 71

Abstain from greed and make not friends with liars,
 Or men of evil rede Four qualities
 Are needful in a man first, being modest,
 Just, and accomplished, secondly, sincere
 And single-hearted, thirdly, moderate
 And welcoming whatever fortune bringeth ,
 And, fourthly, never speaking foolishly,
 But using fools for profit not for sport.
 The hearts of noble men obtain both worlds,
 But justice pleaseth not the hearts of churls,
 Who in this world possess an evil name,
 And in the other win not Paradise.
 The vain withal hath but a brief career
 Because he dissipateth wealth m folly,
 While he is lauded that doth choose the mean,
 He showereth benedictions on himself¹
 God aid you, be your fortune ever bright,
 And may He help us, for the throne of greatness
 Abideth not with any "

Thus he said

The nobles rose and blessed him

c 1459

When five years

And four months had passed by, the Shah one day
 Went out to hunt, the world was full of cheetahs,
 Of hawks, and hounds, these flying and those coursing.
 A tent was pitched to make a resting-place
 Where when the Shah had eaten he reposed,
 He drank three goblets full of royal wine,
 And, musing, drowsed. His comrades all dispersed
 While he reclined. He slept. Then from the waste
 A tempest rose, so great that none recalled
 The like, and brought the wood-work of the tent
 Down on the Shah's head ' He that had aspired
 To win the world—the valorous Shapur—
 Died and resigned the royal crown to others.

¹ Couplets transposed

This whirling world is evermore the same,
And constant only to the knavish one,
Who in his jugglery is void of shame
To filch from any or to foist upon.
Act, then, enjoy, disport, but fret thee not
Why grasp at vengeance, toy with treasury?
Within this gloomy orb accept thy lot,
Seek honour, and let this world's secret be
Discovery will make thee writhe with pain,
Then pry not, let its mystery remain

XXXIII

BAHRAM, SON OF SHAPUR

HE REIGNED FOURTEEN YEARS

NOTE

The Oriental title of this Shah (Varahian IV , A D 388-399) renders it doubtful whether he was the son of the second or third Shapur, and the authorities differ on the point. He is supposed generally to have reigned eleven years. He was the ruler of Kirman at the time of his accession, and to him rightly belongs the title of Kirmanshah which Firdausi gives to Bahram Bahramiyan.¹ A seal of his, so describing him ("Varahran Kerman Malka") is extant.² Tabari says that he built a city in Kirman, perhaps the existent Kirmanshahan south-east of Yazd,³ and that he was killed by an arrow shot at him by assassins.⁴

§ 1

*How Bahram hat upon the Throne and gave a Charge
to the Officers*

Wise, prudent Shah Bahrain mourned for his sire
Some months. When seated on the place of power
He spake thus from the imperial throne " This know
The kings that justly gather freely spend
May holy God be gracious unto us,
And may the foemen's hearts be filled with smoke
His is all knowledge, and we are His slaves
For weal or woe. He is supremely just,

¹ Seep. 313 ² See RSM,p 265 ³ NT, p 71, and note. ⁴ Id p 72

His kingdom knoweth neither gam nor loss.
 One that is rich in generosity,
 Discreet, intelligent, and vigilant,
 Should lock not fast his treasures, least of all
 If he is lord of throne and diadem,
 And if a wealth of words be thme to give,
 Be lavish, knowledge faileth not Incline
 To God in good and ill as thou wilt have
 Thy good endure. If thou acknowledgest c 1460
 That all thy good and evil are from Him
 Thy guerdon will be jocund Paradise,
 But if thou choosest this world's vanities
 Thou wilt remain unransoraed in their clutch.
 If God shall cease to keep thee 'neath His hand
 Thou wilt abide m endless woe I trust
 To holy God that, when I lay my head
 Within this darksome dust, He may account me
 A conquering king, a Lustre of the world.
 Is it not better then to lavish justice
 Than to get wealth unjustly, for our labours
 Endure here but our wealth will be past doubt
 Our foe's We leave our memory good or bad,
 Forbear thme utmost to sow seed of i l l "

When this Shah's reign had come to twice seven years
 The graceful Cypress of the Orchard slept,
 The Shah was sick awhile, his subjects grieved
 He had a daughter, but no son, and likewise
 A younger brother unto whom he gave
 Perforce the host and treasure, crown and throne,
 And royal signet, then, when he had ruled
 For twice seven years, this youthful world-lord died.

Old man, whose years amount to sixty-three '

Shall wine be still the burden of thy lay ?

Without a warning life may end with thee,

Think of repentance then, seek wisdom's way.

May God approve this slave. May he attain
In wisdom riches and in singing gain ,

For mid his song he plucketh at his hair,
Yea teareth it in his obscure estate.
No wonder, if a work—his manhood's care—
Completed in old age, he dedicate
To him who hath the sword—the king of kings,
A whole head higher than his underlings

May his throne's seat serve Luna for a crown,
The age be wholly subject to his sway,
For his is might and with him is renown.
Oh ! may the crown rejoice in him, and may
He walk in knowledge and in majesty,
From all his foemen's clutches ever free '

XXXIV
YAZDAGIRD, SON OF SHAPUR
HE REIGNED THIRTY YEARS

ARGUMENT

Yazdagird succeeds his brother as Shah and rules wrokedly His son Bahram is born and brought up by the Arabs, to whom he returns after a visit to, and imprisonment by, his father Yazdagird is warned of his death by the astrologers and tries to evade his fate, but is killed by a mystenous horse The Iranians, resolved that none of his family shall succeed him, elect Khusrau Bahrain, supported by the Arabs, claims the throne, proves his right to it by ordeal, and becomes Shah

NOTE

The authorities are divided on the question whether Yazdagird (Isdigerd I, AD 399-420) was a son of Bahram, the previous Shah, or of Shapur Tabari takes the former view,¹ Mas'udi the latter,² which leaves it still uncertain as to which Shapur—Shapur, son of Urmuzd, or Shapur, son of Shapur—was intended

Like Aknaton of Egypt Yazdagird seems to have been a man of remarkable character He sought peace and ensued it, he attempted to win over furiously raging fanatics to the principles of religious toleration, failed in the attempt, tried to prevent persecutors from persecuting—an act which in those days was regarded as a kind of persecution in itself—assumed the title of "The Most Peaceful" on his coins, and acted up to it in his political relations with foreign states even when most tempting oppoitunities for aggrandisement presented themselves, -was honoured, at least in legend, by being appointed formally by will the guardian of the son of an Eastern Roman Emperor—an office

¹ NT, p 72

- MM, II 190.

which he is said to have accepted and faithfully executed—died a mysterious death, and received from his subjects the titles of "The Sinner" and "The Harsh". The indictment of him in Tabari is very severe. Among his other enormities it is recorded that if any one dared to address him on behalf of another he said immediately "How much does he pay you, for whom you ask me, or what have you received already?" on which Professor Noldeke observes that he knew his Persians. Apparently he did, and the native chroniclers, drawn for the most part from a class that could not understand or appreciate him, have covered his memory with infamy. Against them may be placed a contemporary testimony from another source—"The good and merciful king Yazdagird, the Christian, the blest among kings, whose memory may be a blessing and his future life still more beautiful than his former, every day he did good to the poor and wretched"¹. This perhaps was written after he had begun to punish the Magi for interfering with the Christians, and before Abdaas, bishop of Ctesiphon, had burnt down, and refused to reinstate, the great Fire-temple of that city²—acts that forced Yazdagird's hand and compelled him to allow the Magi to retaliate, which they did in drastic fashion.

§§ 2-5 This account agrees closely with that given in Tabari,³ but scarcely can be regarded as historical, being, as Professor Noldeke says of the latter, too poetically finished.⁴

§ 2 Surush is the name of the messenger of Urmuzd, but is used here as a rhyme-word. Hushyar, the name of the other astrologer, means "wise". In Tabari the astrologers advise the Shah that Bahrain should be brought up in a foreign land.⁵

Nu'man was prince of Hira during the reign of Yazdagird and was succeeded by his son Munzir. Firdausi reverses the relationship, Munzir being the more prominent historically of the two. The poet makes him monarch of Yaman.⁶

§ 6 It is highly probable that such a youth as Bahrain did not get on well with his father, and he may have been sent to Hira for a while in semi-disgrace.

The name of the Roman ambassador that pleaded for him—Tainush—is a form of Theodosius, the reigning Eastern Roman Emperor at the time—Yazdagird's ward according to the legend.⁷

§ 7 We have here one of the legends localized in Firdausi's own neighbourhood, Sav being the spring of Tus—the poet's birth-place. Similar instances of such localization have occurred

¹ NT, p. 74, and notes ² RSM, p. 275 NT, p. 85 .seq ⁴ *Id.*, note.

⁶ *Id.*, p. 86

⁶ *Id.*, note, and cf. p. 387

⁷ See p. 371,

already ¹ Tabari, however, says that Yazdagird's death is supposed to have taken place in Gurgan (Hyrcania or Mazandaran), and omits the details about the presage of the astrologers and the expedition to the spring of Sav. According to Tabari the horse was sent in answer to the prayers of Yazdagird's oppressed subjects. Professor Noldeke thinks that conspirators took advantage of the absence of the Shah in distant Hyrcania to murder him and then, to cover themselves, spread abroad a fiction to account for his end, and that the various stories of the death of this Shah may be referred to a common origin—the version of the *Bastan-nama* made by Ibn Mukaffa ²

§§ 8-13 This account agrees closely with that of Tabari ³ Historically it would appear that Yazdagird, at the time of his death, had another son living—Shapur—whom he had made king of Armenia some years previously. Shapur, hearing that his father was in ill-health, returned to court and after Yazdagird's death attempted to seize the throne, but there was another candidate for it whom the nobles preferred, and Shapur was assassinated. On some of Yazdagird's coins a second name appears, which may be read either as Ardashir or Bahram ⁴ There seems no doubt that Yazdagird had made himself so unpopular with the Persian nobility and clergy that they were anxious that no son of his should succeed him. Bahram, moreover, was considered probably to be too much under Arab influence as Tabari expressly states

§ 10 As soon as Bahram saw Bahram he is conscious that he is in the presence of the rightful Shah, on whom the divine Grace of kingship already had descended ⁵

§ 12 The selection of a successor to Yazdagird by a process of elimination is not in Tabari

We had instances of the mutilation of prisoners in the reign of Shapur, son of Urmuzd ^b It is said too that Alexander the Great, on approaching Persepolis, was met by a band of about 4000 Greek captives whom the Persians had maltreated grievously ⁷

§ 13 Bahram is said to have been twenty years old at the time of his accession ⁸ It was followed by a great persecution of the Christians and war with Rome. He had to put himself right with the Magi and also to find employment for his turbulent chiefs wearied of the political self-restraint of Yazdagird, The Most Peaceful

¹ Vols 1 pp 235, 296, 111. 14, IV 295, v 202.

² See p 16, and NT, 77, and *note* ³ *Id.* 91 seq ⁴ RSM, 377 seq.

⁶ *Cf too* pp. 221, 251, 406 ⁶ See pp. 323, 334, 348, 357

⁷ HQC, v 5.

⁸ NT, p. 98

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

§ I

*How Yazdagird sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge
to the Officers*

When Yazdagird became the world's great king
He gathered all the soldiers of the realm,
Assumed the crown which once his brother wore,
At whose sad death he joyed, and thus harangued
C. 1461 The notables " All ye disposed to justice'
Make first your benisons to God, your hearts
All jubilant and laughing through our justice
I will let not the wicked live who strive
To compass evil He that cometh to us
For justice shall have rest from fraud and falsehood,
I will increase his state and banish greed
And vengeance from the heart. We will consult
None but the great men and the archimages,
Wise and shrewd-hearted, but the vicious man,
Intoxicate with power, tyrannizing
The helpless, and elated with conceit
Of his own wealth, will we withstand and quell,
But multiply our favours to the poor.
The neck of him that heedeth not our wrath,
And fareth insolently in our eyes,
Is longing for an Indian sword, his body
To pillow in the dust Scan well our bidding,
And, thus endeavouring, make your breast-plate
wisdom."

Thereat the men of mace and scimitar
All shook like willow-trees.

Now when his power
Waxed strong his love waned as his greatness grew,
He scorned the sages and grew negligent
Of royal usages. The governors,

YAZDAGIRD SON OF SHAPUR

The paladins, the notables, and all
The learned and noble sages, were as wind
To him, his dark soul had grown tyrannous,
Both love and justice ceased within his heart,
He answered no petitions, he misprized
All men alike and paused not on their faults
All that were at his gate as ministers—
The Lustre of his fortune and his crown—
Agreed to speak not of the land to him,
And all men writhed with fear and died of fright
Because of him. When envoys came, or subjects
That clamoured for redress, a minister,
When notified, would learn their business,
And then with warm and kindly words dismiss
The envoys shamefastly, and say "The Shah
Will not transact affairs, ye cannot see him
I have acquainted him with all your case,
But in his judgments right hath little place"

§ 2

*How Bahram Gur, Son of Ya-dagird, was born
to be bought up by Munzu, the Arab*

When of his reign seven years had passed, and all
The archmages were in travail and dismay,
In Farwardin, when the eighth year began,
And showed the world the sun which they adored,
Upon Urmuzd's day there was born a child
With good stars and earth-brightening presages.
His sire forthwith gave him the name Bahrain,
Rejoicing in that little one, At court
There were astrologers, for it is well
To hearken to their words One was a noble
With Grace and sense, an Indian chieftain named
Surush, another hight Hushyar, a Persian,

Who by his arts could curb the sky itself
These prudent seekers of the Way appeared
Before the Shah at his command. They used
Their astrolabes to take the stars and sought
To read the future with their Ruman tablets.
The stars ordained " The child will be a king,
Lord of the seven climes, glad-hearted, holy "

They went before the Shah forthwith and took
Their astrolabes and tablets. Thus they said —
" We have collected knowledge of all kinds,
And learned that heaven will love this goodly child
The seven climes will be his realm, and he
Will be a mighty Shah and worshipful"

As soon as they had left the court, the chiefs,
And ministers, the holy archimages
Sat and consulted o'er some shift whereby
The babe might favour not his sire but be
A righteous sovereign, "for if he hath
His father's temper he will wreck the realm,
The archimages and the paladins
Will not rejoice, and he will be not glad,
And bright of soul"

Then all the archimages
Approached the Shah with open, loyal hearts,
And said " This sprightly babe is far beyond
Reproach and calumny. Now all the world
Is under thy command, the toil and service
Of every clime are thine Look for some place
Where knowledge is, and its possessors make

c. 1463 Then land rejoice, and choose among the great
Some statist who is lauded in that land,
And let this virtuous prince learn worth from him,
So that the world may joy in his behests."

The Shah, on hearing this, assembled all
The envoys of his realm and sent them forth
To Rum, to Hind, to Chin, and other lands

Inhabited. A chief, too, went among
 The Arabs to discern if they would prove
 A gain or loss. To every quarter tared
 A crier seeking one to educate
 Bahram, some man of eloquence and learning,
 Accomplishment and knowledge, so there came
 From every clime an archmage wise, advised,
 And fortunate, and, as they reached the court,
 Each sought for that appointment from the Shah,
 Who, after welcoming them graciously,
 Assigned to each a lodging in the city.
 Thus on a night Nu'man came with Munzir,
 And likewise many famous Arab spearmen.

When all these chiefs had gathered thus in Pars
 They came to Yazdagird, the king, and said —
 " We are thy slaves to hear and answer thee.
 Who of these nobles is so fortunate
 As to embrace the world-lord's precious child,
 To be his teacher, and to cause the light
 To shine upon the darkness of his heart ?
 We out of Rum and Hindustan and Pars,
 Geometricians and astrologers,
 Philosophers and men exceeding wise,
 Men of affairs and rhetoricians,
 Are all of us the dust upon thy feet,
 And all thy guides to knowledge See thou then
 Which one among us is approved by thee,
 And which of us will profit thee the most."

Then spake Munzir on this wise " We are slaves
 Who only live in this world for the Shah
 He knoweth all the worth of us, for he
 Is as the shepherd, we are as the flock
 Bold, riders we, adept in horsemanship,
 More than a match for sages. We possess
 No readers of the stars in figures versed,
 But we have minds devoted to the realm,

And in this matter we are strong, O Shah !
 Moreover we are slaves before thy son,
 And sing the praises of his majesty."

When Yazdagird had heard he summoned up
 His spirits and his wisdom, and, perceiving
 From such an outset what would be the outcome,
 Consigned Bahram, the precious, to Munzir,
 For whom, for so the Shah bade, they prepared
 A robe of honour and exalted sky-ward
 1464 His head. They robed his person and then called
 The charger of the monarch of Yaman.
 Then plain-ward from the hall of Yazdagird
 Went camels, horses, litters, slaves, and nurses,
 Past count, and stretched from palace to bazar.
 The road through the bazars were draped with hangings,
 And all was decked from city-gate to court

Now when Munzir approached Yaman the men
 And women all went out to welcome him
 Or ever he reached home he 'gan to seek
 For many women of illustrious birth,
 And made his choice among the landed folk
 Of Persian race, among the Arabians,
 Among the wealthy, great, and eminent,
 And chose four ladies—two of Arab stock
 And two of royal Persian—whose high strain
 Was manifest in their accomplishment,
 To serve as nurses.¹ Thus they tended him
 Four years When he had had his fill of suckling,
 And grew apace, they weaned him, which was hard
 To do, and reared him delicately. At seven
 What said he to Munzir in princely fashion ?
 " Great chief¹ make me not out a babe unweaned 1
 Entrust me unto tutors that are learned,
 My time is being wasted, scorn me not."

Munzir replied " Not yet, O prince ! hast thou

¹ Reading with P

YAZDAGIRD SON OF SHAPUR

A need for knowledge. When that time shall come,
And thou hast grown solicitous to learn,
I will not leave thee playing in the house
But playing is the thing to make thee grow "

Bahram rejoined " Make me not out to be
An idle child for, though my years are few,
And though my neck and chest are not yet those
Of warriors, I have wisdom As for thee,
Thou hast small wisdom though thou hast the years.
I am not as thou deemest Know'st thou not
That one in quest of opportunities
Will start with matters that concern him most ?
To seek twice is to sacrifice one's prospects.
What is ill-timed is fruitless Of man's body
The head is chief, and thou shouldst have me taught
What the great king should know The first thing needful
Is knowledge since it is the head of right,
And blest is he that from the first ensueth
His proper end."

Munzir scanned him with wonder,
Invoking God beneath his breath, and sent
Upon a dromedary to Shiirsan
A chief forthwith who found three archimages,
Accomplished men and well reputed there
One was to teach the young prince penmanship,
And lighten the dark places in his heart,
The second to instruct him in the use
Of hawk and cheetah for his recreation,
As well as polo, archery, swordmanship
Against the foeman, how to rem his steed,
And to exalt himself among the brave,
The third to inculcate the arts of kingship,
The style and business of administration,
And everything that he should bear in mind.¹

c 1465

1 "As well as . . . in mind," following the readings and arrangement of P

When these archmages came before Munzir
They held much talk with him, and in their charge
He placed the prince, because Munzir himself
Was both a scholar and a warrior
Bahram, that seed of kings, grew so adept
That he was competent to play the man,
And when he heard of new accomplishments
He longed to learn them. When he was eighteen
The valiant warrior was like the sun,
He needed not archmages to instruct him
In erudition, how to play at polo,
In manage of the cheetah and the hawk,
To wheel a steed upon the battlefield,
And charge Thus said he to Munzir "O man
Of honest rede ' send these professors home "

Thereat Munzir bestowed great gifts upon them,
And they returned rejoicing Then the prince
Said to Munzir "Call for the spearmen's steeds,
And bid the cavaliers to wheel before me,
To couch their lances, and then name the price
Of what I fancy I will better it."

Munzir said "O accomplished atheling '
The keeper of my steeds is thme to bid,
The master of the horse is all thme own
Why should I toil and trouble for such things
It thou art forced to purchase Arab steeds ?"

Bahram replied "O famous one ' may all
Thy years be satisfied with good I want
A steed that I may spur adown the height,
And never draw the bridle in alarm,
Then, having rendered him so sure of foot,
Cause him to vie with winds upon the course,
Because one should not press a beast untried "

Munzir then bade Nu'man "Go thou and choose
A drove of our own valiant herdsman's horses,
Go round the desert of the spearmen, see

What chargers thou canst get."

He hurried forth,
 Chose, and produced a hundred warriors' mounts.
 Bahram, on seeing them, went on the plain, c 1466
 And wheeled about upon them for a while
 But every steed, albeit fleet as wind,
 Possessed no wings when ridden by Bahram.
 At length he chose a chestnut broad of breast,
 With feet like wind, and, of another brand,
 A bay. Thou wouldst have said "A crocodile
 Hath come forth from the deep" His shoes flashed
 fire,
 And from his ruddy breast fell drops of blood.
 Munzir paid for the two what they were worth
 (The wood of Kufa was their native place)
 And bold Bahrain accepted the two steeds,
 Bright as Azargashasp, and guarded them,
 Like some fresh apple, lest a blast should harm.

One day the young prince spake thus to Munzir —
 "O man of understanding, bright of mind'
 Thou hast no pretext for thus keeping me,
 Not sparing me a moment from thy sight.
 There is a secret impulse in the hearts
 Of all that thou beholdest. As grief paleth,
 So pleasure greateneth, a man. In short
 Some fair-faced damsel will increase my joy
 For woman is the solace of our pains.
 In woman doth a young man find repose,
 Be he a monarch or a paladin,
 She is his guide to Faith and to all good.
 Command to have some damsels brought to me,
 Some five or six, like suns and full of charm.
 Perchance, when I have chosen one or two,
 My thoughts will fix on justice and the Faith.
 It may be too that I shall have a child
 To ease my heart, the world-lord will approve me,

And I shall have the praise of every one."

On hearing such words from the youth, Munzir
 The aged, blessed him and then bade a man ¹
 To make all haste to the slave-dealer's shop
 Upon that quest, who brought out forty damsels
 Of Rum, all fit to please and soothe the heart,
 As tall in stature as a cypress-tree,
 All objects of desire, of charm, and grace.
 Bahram chose two, among those rosy-cheeked,
 With rosy skins and bones of ivory.
 One of these Stars could play upon the lute,
 The other with her cheeks all tulip-like
 Was as Canopus of Yaman, in height
 A cypress, and with tresses lasso-wise.
 Munzir paid for them when they were approved.
 With cheeks bright as the gem of Badakhshan²
 Bahram gave thanks with smiles upon his face,
 And spent his days at polo and the chase.

*How Bahram went ' to the Chase with a Damsel and how
 he displayed 1m Accomplishment*

c 1467 It happened that one day without attendance
 Bahram went with the lutist to the chase
 Azada was the Human damsel's name,
 Her cheeks were coral-hued Bahram had mounted
 A dromedary with the noble³ Cypress,
 Who had her lute in hand. She was his charmer,
 His love, her name was ever on his lips.
 For such occasions he required a camel,
 And set thereon a housing of brocade,
 While from it hung four stirrups. Thus he pricked

¹ Reading with P.

²The ruby.

³ Azada, to pun on the girl's name

O'er hill and dale. Two stirrups were of silver,
 Two were of gold, and all were set with jewels,
 And furthermore he had beneath his quiver
 A stone-bow, that brave youth was all-accomplished.
 He came upon a pair of deer and laughing
 Said to Azada " O my Moon¹ when I
 Have strung my bow and in my thumb-stall notched
 The string, which shall I shoot ? The doe is young,
 Her mate is old."

She said. " O lion-man¹
 Men do not fight with deer Make with thine arrows
 The female male, the aged buck a doe,
 Then urge the dromedary to its speed,
 And, as the deer are fleeing from thy shafts,
 Aim with thy cross-bow at one creature's ear
 That it may lay its ear upon its neck,
 And when the beast shall raise its foot to scratch
 The ear that hath been tickled though not hurt,
 Pin with one arrow head and ear and foot
 Together if thou wouldest have me call thee
 ' The Lustre of the world.'"

Bahrain Gur¹ set
 The string upon his bow and caused commotion
 Upon that quiet plain. Within his quiver
 He had a double-headed shaft for use
 While hunting on the waste and, when the deer
 Sped oft, he shot the buck's two horns away
 Much to the girl's amaze. Forthwith the sportsman
 Shot two shafts at the doe which struck her head
 Just where the horns should be and furnished her
 Therewith Her breast grew red with blood. He rode
 Toward her mate again, set in his stone-bow
 A bolt, hit the buck's ear, and was well pleased, c.1468
 For he had aimed thereat The creature scratched

¹ The first occurrence of his full title—" Onager Bahrain"—as we might say "Buffalo Bill."

Its ear. Forthwith within his bow of Chach
 He set an arrow and pinned head and ear
 And foot together , but Azada's heart
 Was vexed about the deer, and when the prince
 Said " When I hunt I bring them down by thousands
 Thus," she replied " Thou art an Ahriman,
 Else how canst thou shoot thus ?" ¹

Bahrain stretched out,
 Flung her from saddle headlong to the ground,
 And made his dromedary trample her,
 Besmearing hands and breast and lute with blood.
 He said to her " O thou lute-playing fool^f
 Why shouldst thou seek for my discomfiture ?
 If I had drawn mine arms apart in vain
 My race had been dishonoured by the shot "

When he had trampled her beneath his camel
 He never more took damsels to the chase.²

Next se'nnight with a noble troop he went
 Forth to the hunting-ground with hawk and cheetah,
 And near a mountain saw a lion that tore
 An onager's flanks. Impetuously he strung
 His bow and notched therein a shaft three-feathered,
 Then pinned both preyer's back and heart of prey
 That underneath the blood-stained lion lay!

§4

*How Bahram showed his Accomplishment in the Chase
 before Munzir*

Another week Nu'man went with Munzir
 To be Bahrain's companion in the chase,

¹ Reading with T

² Bahrain's feelings, though the outcome of them is more tragic, are somewhat like those of De Lorge in Browning's poem "The Glove," and Azjida, when she sought to shame Bahram by setting him what she intended to be an impossible task, had not the excuse that the English poet ingeniously puts into the mouth of the French lady

And took withal some Arab men of name
 As judges of his failure or success
 Munzir desired Bahram Gur to display
 His horsemanship and strength before these men.
 Anon a flock of ostriches appeared,
 Each running like a dromedary loose
 On seeing them Bahram Gur rushed like wind.
 He handled smilingly his bow and stuck
 Four poplar arrows in his belt. He laid
 The arrows in his bow successively
 To slay those birds, and pierced in sportsman's fashion
 Their plumes No arrow by a needle's breadth
 Was lower than another, none more high,
 And, when the nobles went to see the outcome,
 They found the horseman's shots true to a hair,
 Whereat Munzir called blessings down on him,
 As did the other spear-armed warriors.
 Munzir said " O my king¹ I joy o'er thee
 As roses joy o'er springtide May thy Moon
 Ne'er wane, thy girdlestead be weakened never "

c 1469

Munzir, returning to his palace, held
 Bahram Gur high as Saturn. Many a painter
 He sought for in Yaman, and all the best
 Assembled at his court Ho bade them limn
 On silk a picture of Bahram Gur shooting
 They drew with ink thereon a cavalier
 To represent him, thews and all, as seated
 On his tall camel, shooting wondrously,
 The stone-bow, lion, deer, and onager,
 His breast expanded, all his markmanship,
 And strength, the ostriches, the wilderness,
 And impact of the arrow Then Munzir
 Dispatched a cavalier to bear the picture
 To Yazdagird, and all the host assembled
 At that communication In amaze
 The chiefs all called down praises on Bahram

Thenceforth, whenever he did anything
Of note, they sent it pictured to the king.

§ 5

How Bahram came with Nu'man to Yazdagird

The Shah was eager to behold Bahrain—
Bahram ? Nay rather an imperious Sun !
That Lion said thus to Munzir " Albeit
I could abide however long with thee
My father's wish inciteth me to go,
And, since I shall be safe, mine own heart urgeth "

Munzir prepared whatever was required—
Gifts from Yaman, exceeding all compute,
As Arab steeds with golden furniture,
And other things of noted costliness,
Striped cloth, and falchions, of Yaman, and what
The mines afforded in 'Adan. Nu'man,
Who was in favour at the Persian court,
Went with Bahram, conversing of the Shahs,
Until they reached Istakhr When tidings came
About the Shah's son and Nu'man the Arab,
The archimages and shrewd-hearted sages
Went from the court to meet them When the Shah
Saw from afar Bahram, his Grace, his limbs,
And girth, he stood amazed at seeing him
So tall, well trained, and fair to look upon,
Received him well and lodged him near at hand
C 1470 He chose Nu'man a dwelling in the city,
And for the prince a palace as was meet,
Supplying him with handmaids and with slaves
Befitting his degree The son attended
His sire by night and day, and had not time
To rub his head. Nu'man abode a month,
And then requested licence to depart j

The monarch summoned him by night, then set him
 Upon the throne, and said. " Munzir hath seen
 Much toil in fostering high-born Bahrain,
 And I must make him a return therefor,
 For your esteem is as Urmuzd to me
 I laud the weighty counsels of Munzir,
 For he inclineth, as I see, to wisdom,
 Still, while thou tarriest at our court, I trow
 That he is looking for thee on the road."

Then of dinars out of the treasury
 They gave him fifty thousand with king's raiment,
 And from the stalls ten steeds that bore a name,
 With gold and silver trappings, gave withal
 Slaves, carpetings, perfumes, and coloured stuffs,
 And goods of all kinds These Mihran produced
 Out of the world-lord's treasures and bestowed them
 All on Nu'man, son of Munzir He opened
 The door of largess gladly to bestow
 Upon Nu'man's companions fitting gifts
 The Shah then wrote a letter to Munzir,
 A letter that was worthy of the state,
 With thanks for his entreatrment of the prince,
 Whose love the monarch of Yaman had gained —

I will endeavour to repay thy deeds ,
 Mine own head is exalt by such a son."

Bahrain Gur wrote: " My lot here is not happy
 It was not what I hoped for from the Shah
 That he should look upon his subject thus
 I am not here as either son or servant,
 Or, like a younger brother, light of heart."¹

He told Nu'man, what had been hidden from him,
 The evil ways and customs of the world-lord

Nu'man, when he had left the royal court,
 Came to renowned Munzir and gave to him
 The world's king's letter which, when he had kissed,

¹ Or " Or as a liege glad-hearted at a court "

He laid upon his head, joyed at those gifts,
And multiplied his praises Afterward
The envoy spake in private to Munzir
At large about Bahram Gur. When the scribe
Had read the other letter out to him
His visage grew like gall. He wrote forthwith
An answer full of good advice " Famed prince!
See that thou turn not from thy father's way
C 1471 Approve both good and evil from the Shah,
Be wise and serve. When princes are submiss
Ills pass Men's heads have need to compass wisdom,
'Tis all the doing of the circling sky,
And we are impotent. It hath a heart
All love, a heart all hate, a face all frowns
The Master of the world hath framed it so,
And we must be disposed as He disposeth.
Henceforth I will dispatch to thee dinars,
And royal gems, according to thy needs
Let not thy heart be troubled, for thy trouble
Importeth more to me than heaped up treasure.
Lo! now by way of offering I send
Five hundred score dinars and lo¹ withal
The handmaid that was erst thy confidant,
And thine own heart's delight behind thy curtains,
To brighten thy dark soul When thou hast spent
All these dinars lean not upon the king,
For I will send to thee still many more,
And things of all descriptions from this realm,
But do thy service, utter words of praise,
And serve with an increasing instance,
For e'en in thought thou canst not separate
Ill temper and the monarch of the world."
He sent off ten Arabian cavaliers—
Men who were loyal, shrewd, and eloquent.
They came to prince Bahram with sacks of coin,
And with his loyal slave-girl. Wise Bahram

Rejoiced thereat, his sorrows turned to wind,
 And thenceforth, as Munzir advised was light,
 He failed not in attendance day and night

§ 6

*How Yazdagird put Bahram in Bonds, how he escaped by the
 good Offices of Tainush, and how he returned to Munir*

It chanced that in the banquet-hall one day
 Bahram was in attendance on the Shah,
 That night came on and he was weaned out
 By standing long and could not keep awake.
 His father, seeing that his eyes were closed,
 Cried violently in an angry voice,
 And bade an executioner " Arrest him.
 Henceforth he shall not look on crown and girdle
 Ward him within this house and then return
 He graceth not this place of fame and fight,"

Within the palace, with a broken heart,
 That year he looked not on his father's face
 Save on Nauruz and at the Sada feast
 When he drew near among the other nobles.

c 1472

It happened that Tainush, the Human, came
 As envoy to the Shah with purses, slaves,
 And with the tribute sent from Rum by Cæsar.
 The king of kings received him graciously,
 And lodged him worthily Bahram dispatched
 This message to him " Shrewd and potent man!
 No grievance hath the Shah against his subject,
 Yet guiltless I am banished from him thus!
 Ask him to grant me pardon for thy sake,
 That so my withered fortunes may revive,
 And send me to my fosterers:¹ Munzir

¹ Reading with P.

Was more to me than mother and than father."

Tainush gave ear, accomplished his desire,
And made Bahrain's afflicted heart rejoice.
He was released from his degrading bonds,
Bestowed much largess on the mendicants,
And gat him ready to depart in haste.
He called his followers and, when the night
Was dark, led forth the company like wind,
Exclaiming to his friends "Thanks be to God
For our escape and safety from distress."

When he came near the monarch of Yaman,
Men, women, children, went to welcome him,
So did Nu'man, so did Munzir, so did
Their honest spearmen. As Munzir drew nigh
Bahrain the day was darkened with the dust
Of troops, both chiefs dismounted, and Bahrain
Detailed his sufferings whereat Munzir
Wept much, and said: "What is the Shah's star then,
For ne'er he walketh in the way of wisdom?
I fear that he will suffer for his deeds"

Bahram said "Never may the Shah himself
Grow conscious even of his own ill star"

Munzir received him then and there as guest,
And heaped new benefits upon the old.
Bahram Gur's whole employ was banqueting,
Disporting on the riding ground, gift-giving,
And combating Thenceforth the grief and joy
Of Yazdagird were to his son but breezes
Upon the day of Ard ¹ Time passed. Bahram
Was glad in hall and glorious on the waste.

Now Yazdagird, concerned about the realm,
Assembled archimages from all quarters,
And bade the readers of the stars discover
How he would die and darkness whelm his head,
And, when this happened, where his royal cheeks

¹ One of the lucky days

YAZDAGIRD SON OF SHAPUR

Would wither. They replied " Let not the Shah C 1473
Take thought of death, but when the royal fortune
Shall founder he will seek the spring of Sav,
Take thither with him troops with trump and drum,
And set out joyfully to visit Tus.
That is the place wherein the Shah will die.
Of such a day as that his ear hath heard not,
And pondering such knowledge is not good ,
It is a secret veiled by God Himself."

The Shah, on hearing this, swore by Kharrad,
And by Barzm, and by the yellow sun —
" I will not, whether I be glad or wroth,
Behold the spring of Sav "

Three month rolled by,
And then the Shah's blood caused the age concern.
One day his nostrils bled, and leeches came
From every quarter to advise thereon,
They made a shift the bleeding to restiain
One week with drugs, then it began again

§7

*How Yazdagird, by the Advice of an Archmage, went to the
Spring of Sao and was killed by a Water-horse*

An archmage said to him " Thou hast, O king!
Departed from the ways of Providence
Thou said'st ' I will escape the hand of death'¹
But where is death not alway in full leaf ?
The course for thee is this. by way of Shahd
Go in a litter to the spring of Sav,
There make thy prayer before all-holy God,
Go in abasement round that burning soil,
And say thus. ' I, a feeble slave, whose oath
Hath set a snare before his soul, have come
Now to inquire how long I have to live,

O righteous Judge !"

The Shah approved thereof
As helpful to his anguish, had brought forth
Three hundred litters, and, thus borne, proceeded
Toward the river Shahd both night and day
Post haste, his nostrils bleeding still at whiles
As soon as he had reached the spring of Sav
He left his litter, gazed upon the stream,
Poured somewhat of the water on his head,
And called on God, the Giver of all good.
Anon the bleeding ceased He ate and rested
Among his counsellors, grew proud, and said —
" This was the course ' Why need I tarry longer ?"

Now when the Shah in his conceit imagined
That he had wrought the cure upon himself,
A white steed issued from the stream, with buttocks
Round like an onager's, and short of leg
c. 1474 It pranced and seemed as 'twere an angry lion,
Twas stately, black of belly, raven-eyed,
It had a trailing tail, a crest, and mane,
Black hoofs, and foamed, it was a lion-slayer.
Thus to his chiefs said Yazdagird " Let troops
Encircle it"

The herdsman with the help
Of ten rough-riders hemmed it in and took
A saddle and a lengthy coiled up lasso
How could the Shah wot of the World-lord's purpose
In bringing him that dragon of a steed ?
It foiled alike the herdsman and the troops,
Whereat the monarch was exceeding wroth,
And taking up the saddle and the reins
Drew near the horse exultingly which proved
So docile that it did not stir a foot
The monarch took the bridle from the herdsman,
And gently put the saddle on the mount.
He girthed it. That fleet Crocodile stood starless.

He went to put the crupper on. That charger,
Flint-hoofed, neighed and kicked him on the head !
His head and crown descended to the dust.

The dust received him and the dust begot
From yon seven heavens on high what wouldst thou
ask?

Their revolution thou escapest not,
To pay them worship is a fruitless task.
Incline to God—the Master of the sky,
Of sun, and moon—to Him for refuge fly

The water-horse, when Yazdagird was slain,
Returned like flying dust to that blue spring,
And vanished 'neath the surface ! None e'er looked
On such another marvel Like a drum-roll
Rose from the host a shout " O Shah ' thy fate
Led thee to Tus "

The chieftains rent their clothes,
And flung dust on their heads. The archimages
Then oped the head and body of the Shah,
Embalmed them both with musk and camphor, wrapped
The dry corpse in brocade, draped therewithal
His shining breast, and set upon his head
A crown of musk. Then on a bier of gold,
And on a teaken litter, he departed
Unthroned and crownless back again to Pars.

Thus is it with this Wayside Hostelry'
Will peace, though thou ensue it, come to thee ?
Though meek thyself, the world is unrestrained,
So having eaten let the cup be drained.
Religion is a better thing than sin
For one that hath the power to walk therein.

§ 8

*How the Iranian took Counsel and placed Khusrau
upon the Throne*

C.1475 Now when the monarch of the world was buried,
 And from Iran the chrettains came in tears—
 Archmages, governors, and paladins,
 With prudent ministers, men shrewd of heart—
 All met in Pars and gathered round his charnel,
 As Gustaham, who rode down elephants,
 And slaughtered them, Karan the warrior,
 Son of Gashasp, Milad, Arash the marchlord,
 Parwiz the horseman of Gurzban, and others.
 Withal too those in hiding in Iran—
 The great men and the leaders of the world,
 Whom Yazdagird was wonted to abase—
 Assembled in the city, and Gashasp,
 The scribe—a man of eloquence—thus spake —
 " Ye nobles young and old¹ since God created
 The world none hath beheld a king like this,
 Who knew but how to slaughter and contemn,
 To cause distress and travail, and withhold
 His counsel and his treasure from his subjects,
 Respecting none and setting all at odds.
 No man hath seen a fouler Shah or heard
 Of one among the paladins of yore.
 We want no more of this race on the throne,
 And cry against his very dust to God.
 Illustrious Bahrain is his own son,
 His very kin in purpose, heart, and brain.
 His talk is all Munzir. We will not have
 A tyrant on the throne."

Then all that were
 Chiefs in Iran swore mighty oaths and said —

" We will not have another of this race
As king of kings with crown and throne of might."

That done, they rose and sought another Shah.
When tidings of the death of Yazdagird
Spread 'mongst the chiefs—the monarch of the Alans,
The paladin of Pars, Biward, Shikban,
The warrior of the world, Bihzad who had
Barzin to sire and was of Rustam's race,
And Sam the hero sprung from Kai Kubad—
All said: " The sovereignty is mine from earth
To Pisces," and the whole world was fulfilled
With tumult, for the head that wore the crown
Had vanished from the throne. Then in Iran
Chief, paladin, and archmage, all that were
Of ardent soul, met to debate in Pars —
" Who is there worthy of the throne of kings ? c 1476
Consider who can enter on the work.
We see not any one, approved by God,
To wear the golden girdle on the throne,
And to allay the troubles of the time
A kingless world is but a pasturage."

There was an ancient man, by name Khusrau,
Of generous instincts, masterful, and ardent.
Moreover he was born of noble race,
And one among the wealthy of the land¹
The nobles gave to him the crown and state,
And troops from all sides gathered at his gate

§ 9

*How Bahram Gur heard of the Death of his Father
and invaded Iran*

Thereafter to Bahrain Gur tidings came —
" Heaven hath apportioned to thy sire the grave,

¹ Reading with P and T

Thy father eminent midst kings, is dead,
 And ta'en with him the name of sovereignty,
 They have enthroned another and acclaimed him
 As monarch by the title of Khusrau
 The warriors have bound themselves by oaths.—
 ' We will not have a monarch of the race
 Because Bahrain, the son, is like the sire,
 And, skin and marrow, of his father's seed' "

Bahrain Gur, when he heard it, tore his cheeks,
 So troubled was he at his father's death,
 And for two se'nnights went up from Yaman
 Wails from child, man, and woman When Bahrain
 Had sorrowed for a month he graced the throne.
 Nu'man drew near together with Munzir,
 And Arabs of Yaman both great and small,
 All shedding tears of sorrow with their Shah,
 While anguish wrought on them the effects of fire.
 Then setting loose their tongues they counselled thus —
 " O virtuous and most exalted punce !
 We came to this world to be turned to dust,
 Came not in quest of any remedy
 All mother-born will die, and to God's justice
 We must resign our hearts "

Bahram Gur said

Thus to Munzir " Already is the water
 " Grown brackish in our stream' What time my race
 Shall lose its royal title it will lose
 Its Grace divine, men will send up in dust
 The desert of the horsemen and convert
 The country of the Arabs to a ditch
 Consider well, assist me, and deplore
 My father's death."

Munzir gave ear and answered

Right manfully " This is my chance and this

C. 1477 My hunt-day on the waste. Sit on the throne,
 Observe, and wear through all thy years the crown,

And bracelet"

All the chiefs approved the course
Suggested by Nu'man and by Munzir
They left the presence and prepared for war
Munzir gave orders to Nu'man and said —
" Go gather our brave Lions in a host—
Two thousand of Shiban, ten of Kibtis,¹
All dight for battle I will show the Iranians
Who is the Shah with treasure, crown, and troops !"

Nu'man assembled him a mighty power
Of swordsmen and of spearmen, bade them raid,
And trample down the realm To Taisafun
All the salt desert route shook with their hoofs,
The women and the children were made captive,
There was no helper, and the world was full
Of fire and harrying since the imperial throne
Was impotent. News came to Rum and Chin,
To Turkistcin, to Hind, and to Makian —
" The Iranian throne is void, and none is fit
To rule," and all made ready, in despite
Of justice, to invade the land. They all
Stretched out their hands toward the Iranian throne,
And rose to claim the empire for their own

§ 10

*How the Iranians heard of Bahram's Pillaging
and wrote to Munzir, and how he replied*

The Iranians heard and sought a remedy
Distracted by their woes they met, and said —
" These Rumans, Indians, and desert-horsemen
Have passed all bounds ! We must adopt some means
To rid our hearts and souls of this distress "

They chose a noble envoy shrewd and fluent,

¹ I e. Copts.

A warrior hight Jawanwi, a scribe,
A man of high degree and eloquence,
To go to parley with Munzir and say —
" O noble lord ! the world doth need thy name,
c 1478 Thou watchest o'er Iran and o'er Turan,
And thou art everywhere the warriors' stay.
What time this throne grew void of Shah and crown,
And when the marches of our land with blood
Were like the plumage of the francolm,
We said that thou wouldst rule our coasts, for they
Were worthy of thee. Now thou raidest us,
And sheddest blood with rapine and contention
On every side¹ Thou used'st not to be
An evildoer and wast wont to fear
Reproach and malison. Consider now
If this doth please thee and doth benefit
Thee with thy hoary head. There is a Judge
Besides thyself, One higher than all thought.
The envoy will narrate what he hath seen,
Or heard from persons m authority "

Wise Jawanwi went from the chieftain's presence,
He journeyed toward the desert of the spearmen,
Spake with Munzir, and gave him the dispatch.
The Arab chief made no reply thereto,
But said to him " Wise seeker of the way!
Repeat the matter to the king of kings,
Repeat what thou hast said to Shah Bahram,
And, when thou seekest for an answer, he
Will point thee out the way."

He sent a chief
With Jawanwi who reached the monarch's gate.
That man of knowledge, when he saw Bahram,
Invoked God's blessing on the Shah whose breast,
Whose stature, and whose limbs astonished him,
Shrewd-hearted though he was " Thou wouldest say
That wine distilleth from his face, the scent

Of musk exhalet from his hair!"

That man

Of eloquence grew void of Grace and sense,
And utterly forgot his embassy!¹
Bahrain Gur, noting his amaze, and how
The spectacle bedimmed his eyes and heart,
Much greeted him, showed him all courtesy,
And set him graciously upon the throne.
Now when the envoy seemed at ease the Shah
Asked: " Wherefore hast thou toiled thus from Iran
Hereafter thou shalt have the fruit of toil,
And well filled treasury, from us "

He sent

A sage to take him to Munzir and say —
" Write thou an answer and indite fair words.
See if the envoy hath a verbal message,
And, if so, hear it and reply at large."

Came Jawanwi and spake, at whose wise speech
Munzir's cheek flushed, he heard that shrewd one out,
Prepared to make his answer to the letter,
And said to Jawanwi " O full of wisdom !
All that do ill will smart therefor. Now I
Have heard thy message and the nobles' greeting. c 1479
Say thus ' Who was the first to cause the ill?
Who needs must seek this senseless feud ? Bahram Gur,
The king of kings, with stature, Grace, and host,
Is with us here, and they who draw the snake
Out of its hole will trail their skirts in blood.
Albeit, were I to advise, no harm
Would come upon the Iranians."

Jawanwi

Had seen and hearkened to the king of kings,
Had questioned him to see if he was fit
For throne and greatness, fortune and success,
And, as he listened to Munzir, conceived
A brilliant notion, and replied " Great sir

Who needest not the wits of other men!
 If wisdom failed the Iranians, many a chief
 Among them hath been slam through that defect.
 Now I, old as I am, still seek for fame,
 And I will speak if thou wilt hear. Our land
 We gladly yield to thee and brave Bahrain,
 The king of kings With hawk and cheetah make
 A royal progress in Iran to hear
 What folk will say no harm will come of it.
 Speak too whate'er is right The sage will best
 The fool. Forgo all mischievous intent,
 And shrink not at reproach and calumny."

Munzir, on hearing, gave him gifts and sent
 Him home from that fair country, well content

§ 11

*How Bahram Gur arrived at Jahram with the Host of
 Munzir, and how the Iranians went out to "him*

Munzir, Bahram Gur, and the counsellors
 All met in privy conclave and resolved
 To march upon Iran Munzir made choice
 Of thirty thousand warlike Arab spearmen,
 Gave ample pay, and filled the chieftains' heads
 With vapouring¹ As tidings reached Iran
 Of these things Jawanwi himself returned,
 And all the potentates, in deep concern,
 Betook them to the Fire-fane of Barzin,
 And prayed to God to change their strife to joy
 And feasting.

C 1480

When Munzir had led his troops
 Across the unwatered waste, and reached Jahram,
 Great Shah Bahram Gur pitched his camp-enclosure.
 His troops surrounded it, and to Munzir

¹ Reading with P and T

He spake thus • " From the country of Yaman
 Thou hast come to Jahram, my counsellor ¹
 Which shall it be, when host confronteth host,
 A fight or parley ?"

Said Munzir " Invite
 The chiefs and, on their coming, spread the board,
 And speak with them. When any are provoked
 So be not thou, and we shall learn whom they
 Are fain to hail as monarch of the world
 That known, we will take order and avoid
 Strife if soft means suffice If they seek war,
 Turn, and display the bearing of a pard,
 Then will I make this desert of Jahram
 As 'twere a sea,¹ and turn the shining sun
 To Pleiades I wot when folk behold
 Thy stature, mien, and lovmgkindlness,
 Thy wisdom, counsel, and initiative,
 Thy gravity, thy knowledge, and thy patience,
 That they will want none else to have the crown,
 The throne, the fortune, and the pageantry,
 But if they err, and wish to take away
 The throne from thee, then will I with these horsemen,
 And our sharp swords, bring Doomsday on the world,
 Then shalt thou see me frown, and may my soul
 And body be thy ransom When they mark
 My countless troops, the order that I take,
 Our deeds of blood, that God is our ally,
 And that the realm is thme inheritance
 By right established through a long descent,
 They will acclaim as Shah none save thyself
 As fit for crown and to adorn the throne "

The Shah heard smiling, his heart throbbed with

Now when the sun rose o'er the mountain-tops
 The mighty men and nobles of Iran

! "*de sang*" (Mohl)

THE SHAHNAME OF FIRDAUSI

Made ready to go forth to meet Bahrain Gur
The sages were convoked, an ivory throne
Was set up for the prince, and he assumed
The glorious crown, and ordered all his court
According to the use of king of kings,
Because he was the monarch of the world
On one hand sat Munzir and on the other
Nu'man with sword in hand, while all about
The tent-enclosure there were warriors,
But none that was not on the Arab side.
Then those Iranians that were loyalists
Came to the antechamber of the Shah,
C.1481 Who had the curtain lifted and the names
Of those that entered called out at the door.
They came before the presence of Bahrain Gur,
The Shah, beheld a splendid crown and throne,
And shouted, saying " Mayst thou live for ever,
Far from thee ever be the evil eye "
The king of kings received them graciously,
And ranked them every one in his degree

§ 12

*How Bahram Gur harangued the Iramans as, to his Fitness to
rule, how they rejected him but promised him the Kingship
if he would take the Crown from between the Lions¹*

Bahrain said " Princes, old, experienced chiefs '
The kingship is mine own by long descent.
Why this to-do of yours ?"

" Expect us not,"

The Iranians shouted, " to endure more loss'
Not one of us will have thee as the Shah
Thou hast an army, but the land is ours.
Thy race hath caused us anguish, toil, and woe,
By night and day we writhe and heave cold sighs."

¹ This heading combines those of two sections in C

Bahram thus answered " Yea, 'tis true, for passion
Is king of every heart. If ye reject
Me, why thus seat another in my room
Without consulting me?"

An archmage said —
" None, whether he be prince by birth or subject,
May shun the path of justice Join with us,
And choose a Shah that every one will bless."

They spent three days upon the task of choosing
A monarch from Iran, and then wrote down
A hundred nobles' names—fit Lustres all
For crown and throne and belt. Bahrain Gur's name
Was one of them because he charmed the realm
They cautiously and anxiously reduced
The hundred names to fifty, and of these
Bahrain's name stood the first, who, if he sought
His sire's place, sought but justice Of the fifty
They wrote down thirty, and they were the choicest,
Most famous, and most potent of Iran.
Bahram amongst the thirty led again
Because he was a prince—the destined Shah.
The wise archmages brought the thirty down
To four, of whom Bahram was leader still.
When the decisive moment was at hand
The Iranian ancients said " We will not have
Bahram who is too headstrong and self-willed,
Though brave."

An outcry rose among the chiefs,
The hearts of all were darkened, and Munzir
Addressed the Iranians thus " I fain would know,
For good or ill, why ye are lull of pain,
And stricken in your souls, about the Shah
In his untimely-worn youth? In excellence
No king on earth can match him, and in looks
No moon in heaven His poplar shafts pierce anvils]
While with his strength he can uproot a mountain.

THE SHAHNAMA OF FIRDAUSI

Though still a youth he is a sage in counsel,
Well skilled, with bright heart and retentive mind."

The chiefs, by way of answering him, sought out
Full many a stricken Persian, and assembled
Out of 1 ran upon that plain all those
That Yazdagird had maimed. One still survived
Lopped hand and foot but still intact of trunk ,
Another had lost ears and hands and tongue,
And seemed a lifeless body, while another
Had lost both shoulders, and Nu'man was all
Astound at those maimed forms The eyes of one
Had been dug out with nails, and when Munzir
Beheld that sight his anger rose. Bahrain
Was sorely grieved, invoked his father's dust,
And cried " O hapless one ! why didst thou close
The eyes of thme own joy and burn thy soul
In fire ?"

Munzir the aspiring said to him —
" We cannot blink such evil Thou hast heard
What they have had to say, now answer them,
For kings should not be at a loss."

Bahrain

Then spake on this wise " Chiefs and veterans !
Ye all said sooth, and this is even worse !
Well may I blame my sire since I myself
Have had a sample, for he darkened all
My fine resolves his palace was my prison.
When God had mercy, and Tainush released me
Out of the clutches of my sire, his hook
Had pierced me to the soul, for which cause I
Took shelter with Munzir, because I never
Saw kindness from the Shah. May none possess
His temper, for the man is lost that lacketh
Humanity. Now I, thanks be to God,
Have wisdom, my soul eateth of its fruits,
And to this present I have prayed to Him

To be my guide to good that I might purge
 My heart and spirit of such crimes as those
 Wrought by the Shah on these men I will live
 To gratify my subjects' hearts, exist
 To worship God according to the Way.
 I am the shepherd and my subjects form
 My flock. Let all of us seek peace and justice.
 Then I have character, discretion, counsel,
 And virtue, which no unjust king possesseth,
 Because he needs must be unjust and froward,
 And we should weep for one that is unjust.
 With me are greatness, kingship, and discretion, C. 1483
 Benevolence and wisdom. From Shapur,
 Son of Bahrain, back to Ardshir my sires,
 Both old and young, were Shahs, and are my guides
 To wisdom and the Faith, while through my mother
 I am the grandson of king Samiran,¹
 And every way have wisdom for my comrade
 I am possessed of virtue, wisdom, might,
 With courage, strength of hand, and horsemanship.
 I know none other lit to call a man
 In feast, in battle, or in anything
 I have a secret treasury well filled,
 And men of name leal to their sovereign
 My justice shall make populous the world,
 And all my subjects shall abide in joy²
 Moreover I will make a pact with you,
 And pledge my tongue to God Let us bring forth
 The imperial throne of ivory, and set
 The bright crown over it, then let us bring
 Two savage lions of the wood and, placing
 The crown between them, chain them on each side.
 Then let the would be Shah advance and take
 The famed crown from the throne of ivory,

¹ " de la reine Schemiran " (Mohl) Possibly Semiramis is meant,

² The § ends here in C

Place it upon his head and sit between
 The lions as the Shah, the crown above him,
 And under him the throne, for we will have
 None else, provided he be just and holy
 If ye reject what I have said then choose,
 Ye all t some noble, and Munzir and I,
 For Arab chieftains know not how to flee,
 With mace and trenchant scimitar will send
 The dust up from your king of kings, and strew
 Your heads upon the moon. Now for your answer,
 And speak advisedly in this contention "

He spake, then rose and went inside his tent.
 All marvelled at his words. The chiefs, archimages,
 And all the people of Iran that heard
 The wise Shah's words, exclaimed " This is the Grace
 Of God, not craftiness 01 lack of wit'
 He speaketh naught but what is just, and justice
 Well may rejoice our hearts. For his proposal
 About the savage lions with the throne,

C. 1484 And royal crown, between them if they rend him
 The Judge will not require his blood of us,
 Tis his own plan, and if he pensheth
 We are content, while if he shall achieve
 The crown he will have distanced Faridun
 In Grace, and we will have no other king
 In brief we give acceptance to his words."

That night passed by , at dawn the Shah came forth,
 And sat upon the throne. He sent and summoned
 The Iranians, and discoursed of yesterday
 At large The archimages cried " O Shah,
 More knowing than the wise' how wilt thou rule
 When thou hast eminence and mastery ?
 How wilt thou deal concerning right and justice,
 So that both fraud and falsehood may abate ?"

He answered thus those sages, warriors,
 And chiefs " I will be better than my words,

YAZDAGIRD SON OF SHAPUR

Will make injustice and informing cease,
And not appoint unworthy governors,
Will rule the world by counsel and by justice,
And, having pacified it, will rejoice
At what my justice hath achieved, will give
Some of my hoarded wealth withal to those
In want, admonish those that are in fault,
And bind them if they err the second time,
Will pay the army promptly and rejoice
The sages' hearts, make tax-collectors just,
And turn their souls from darkness and chicane.
If any one shall die, not having kindred,
And leave excessive wealth, I will bestow it
On mendicants, not add it to my treasures,
Or be enamoured of this Wayside Inn.
I will hold counsel with the experienced,
And take such order as will frustrate greed
I will consult my ministers whenever
I purpose some new scheme, and not dismiss
The assembly when a man is asking me
For justice, but will give to such their due,
Will utter righteous judgment, and requite
The ill with ill as well becometh rulers
My witness is all-holy God, and wisdom
Is master of my tongue "

Then the high priest
And sages—well approved and veteran chiefs—
Exclaimed: " We are thy slaves and bow our heads
To thy command and will"

Then Shah Bahram
Said thus : " Ye men of wisdom and our guides!
If in a year I make my soul and wisdom
Belie my promises I will renounce
Crown, throne, and heritage, and sit thenceforth
Among the luckless."

Hearing this the sages,

The magnates, and archmages shrewd of heart,
 Repented of past words and, being in fault,
 Desired to make all well again, exclaiming,
 One to another " Who is worthier
 To be the Shah than he in manliness,
 Speech, counsel, birth ? None purer hath been born
 Within the world i God fashioned him of justice.
 May mischief ne'er befall him. We shall have
 All good from him, and turn us to the Faith,
 And justice If now we shall speak perversely,
 And send our wits to sleep, he with such stature,
 Such neck, and arms, is peerless in the world,
 While at his back there is the Arab host,
 Because in weal and woe Munzir will help him,
 And if he win the throne that is his own
 Who in the world is better than Bahrain ?
 What cause hereafter would he have to fear
 The Iranians, for what are we but a pinch
 Of dust to him ? "

They said " O prosperous one !
 Our minds approve thee for our Shah. None knew
 Thy virtues, purity of person, wisdom,
 And counsel, and we all of us have paid
 Our homage to Khusrau, son of Pashm,¹
 As Shah, we all are under oath to serve him,
 And stand within his danger, so to speak.
 Hereafter if he ruleth in Iran
 Our borders will be desolate with war.
 One party taketh pleasure in Bahram,
 Another is in favour of Khusrau.
 Thine own plan is the right one, and the world
 Thereafter will be under thy command
 Ordeal by the lions will suffice,
 And thenceforth none will seek the sovereignty."
 Bahram gave his assent, 'twas his proposal.

¹ Beading with P and T

At the accession of a lawful Shah
 The high priest with three sages used to go
 To him, enthrone him, and felicitate
 The throne, then bring the crown of gold—the source
 Of glory, right, and Grace—and, crowning him,
 Would press both cheeks upon his breast in joy
 The Shah then would bestow on suppliants
 All gifts presented to him So they put
 The crown and throne in charge of the high priest, C. 1486
 And from the city fortunate Bahram
 Departed to the waste Brave Gustaham
 Had two fierce lions which he gave in chains
 To the high priest They dragged the savage beasts
 Along, the draggers seeming mad with fright,
 And to the footings of the ivory throne
 Chained them, and set the crown within a nook
 Upon it All the world—spectator there
 Of crown and throne—watched how the prince would
 fare

§ 13

*How Bahram and Khusrau went to the Waste, and how Bahram
 blew the Lions and took his Seat upon the Throne*

Bahram Gur and Khusrau went on the waste,
 And with full hearts approached the lions. Khusrau,
 On seeing the fierce beasts with the crown between
 them,
 Said to the archimages " He that seeketh
 The sovereignty should be the first to try.
 Moreover he is young and I am old—
 Too feeble to resist fierce lions' claws—
 So let him use his youth and vigour first."
 Bahram made answer, saying " Good, 'tis well
 We will not blink fair words."

With that; he took

An ox-head mace while the world wondered at him.
 An archmage said " O wise and holy king'
 Who biddeth thee fight lions? Canst thou have
 More than the sovereignty ? So in its quest
 Give not thy life and person to destruction
 Thus wantonly Herein no blame attacheth
 To us, 'tis thine own act, the world is thine."

Bahrain said " O explorer of the Faith !
 Thou and the other folk are not to blame.
 I am the man to fight these savage lions,
 Tis my delight to battle with the brave."

The archmage answered " Refuge then with God,
 And, it thou needs must go, first purge thy heart
 Of sin"

He did according to that word,
 Repented, purged his heart, bathed in a stream,
 And sought upon the plain a place of prayer.
 Then as he prayed before all-holy God,
 And laid his cheeks upon the dusky ground,
 He said " Almighty ' let Thy servants triumph.
 If I—Thy servant—justly seek to cleanse
 The world of evil give my soul assurance
 In this strife, let me overcome the lions "

C 1487 Thence came the wise Shah and at once set forth
 Upon his way, armed with the ox-head mace.
 Now when the valiant lions saw him coming,
 One on the instant snapped its chain and charged
 The exalted king. That hero smote its head,
 And dimmed its eyes, then going to the other
 Smote its head whence the blood ran down its breast,
 Then took his seat upon the ivory throne,
 Placed on his head the heart-delighting crown,
 And put his trust in God who is our Refuge,
 The Guider of the lost. Khusrau drew near,
 Did homage, and thus said: " Exalted Shah !
 Blest be thy sitting on the throne, and may

The heroes of the world be slaves before thee.
 Thou art the Shah, we are thy slaves and further
 Thy good in everything."

The mighty men

Showered jewels over him, invoking blessings
 Upon his crown. A universal shout
 Ascended from the world. That jubilation
 Was on Surush's day in month Azar
 Whereon Bahram assumed the sovereignty,
 And won fruition of the crown and Grace.

A cloud hath risen and the moon's obscured,
 From that dark cloud a shower of Milk is poured,
 No river, plain, or upland can I spy,
 The raven's plumes are lost against the sky,
 In one unceasing stream egg-apples¹ fall.
 What is high heaven's purpose in it all?²
 No fire-wood, salted meat, or barley-gram
 Are left me, naught till harvest come again !
 Amid this gloom, this day of tax and fear,
 When earth with snow is like an ivory sphere,
 All mine affairs in overthrow will end
 Unless my hand is grasped by some good friend²

Now will I tell to thee so strange a tale
 That in the wonder wonder's self will fail

¹ The fruit of the egg-plant (*Solanum esculentum*), of which there are two varieties—a white and a purple

² Reading with P.

INDEX

This Index and the Table of Contents at the beginning of the volume are complementary References to the latter are in Roman numerals

A

'ABBASID, 327

Abbreviations, list of, 5

Abdaas, bishop, 372

Abiaham, the patriarch, 65

Abu'l Kasmi, Fndausi, 20, 207

Abti'l Muzafar See Nasr

AbuMansui, 16

Accession of a Shah, ceremony
at, 409

Acheemenids, 194, 197, 198
dynasty of, 194

Adan, seaport and territory in
southern Arabia, 386

Ægean sea, 204

Afiasiyab, ruler of Turan, 15, 79,
177, 240 and *note*

Africa, 30

Ahduamak (Andarznamak), Pah-
lavi treatise, 257

Ahnman, the Evil Principle, 106,
112, 206, 240, 281, 290, 299,
318, 384

Farth of, 281, 290

Ahwaz (Khuzistdn, Susiana), 35,
199, 298, 357

Akesmes (Chmab), Indian river,
31, 64

Aknaton, Pharaoh, 371

a lover of peace like Yazda-
gird, son of Shapur, 371

Alans (Alaui), the, people, 395
monarch of, 395

Alar, place, 205

Alexander I, king of Epirus, 12 ,
his Italian expedition, 12

Alexander the Great (Iskandar,
Sikandar, q v), 11 seq ,
15 seq , 29 seq , 61 seq , 72,
74 seq, 84, 193, 194, 197,
204, 252, 253, 373

accompanied by experts to
the East, 11

origin and growth of the
romance of, 12 seq

Syriac Christian Legend of.
See Synac

referred to by Muhammad in
the Kuran, 15, 77

how he became a Persian
national hero, 15

paternity of, 16, 18

founds cities, 13, 18

why so named, 19

tutored by Aristotle, 29

and Roxana (Rushanak), 30,
32

historic and romantic ac-
counts of the first years of
his reign, 30

his flight from Darius' ban
quet, 30

his pin suit of Darius, 31

his histrocial treatment of
the murderers of Darius,
3²

his romantic treatment of the
murderers of Darius, 33

marries Darius' daughter, 33

- Alexander the Great, and the
 Fakirs, 61
 and Calanus, 61
 and Porus, historical account
 of, 63
 his device of the iron steeds,
 64
 his stature, 64
 his visit to the camp of Porus,
 64
 and Cleophis, 65
 his visit to the Oasis of
 Amnion, 65
 and Candace (Kaiddfa), 65 *seq*
 assumes the name of Anti-
 gonus (Naitkun), 66
 Life of, Plutarch's, 67
 his visit to the Brahmans, 67
 his letter to Aristotle, 68
 mistakes the Indus for the
 Nile, 68
 his return march productive
 of marvels, 69
 his admiral (Nearchus), 69
 and the Amazons, 12, 72
 legend of, 72
 his expedition to the Gloom
 and the Fount of Life,
 legend of, in the Pseudo-
 Callisthenes, 74 *seq*
 legend of his cook (Andreas),
 76
 version of, in the Kuran,
 77
 his barrier in the Caucasus,
 78
 legend of, in the Kuran,
 78
 his correspondence with
 Aristotle about the suc-
 cession, 81
 his Will, 81
 provisions of, 81
 death of, 82
 dispute over his place of
 interment, 82
 his corpse taken to Memphis,
 82
- Alexander the Great, interred at
 Alexandria, 82
 tomb of, 82
 Mas'udi on, 82
 S Chrysostom on, 82
 diagram to illustrate the
 Persian Romance of, 84
 wars on the death of, 197
- Alexander, son of Alexander the
 Great and Cleophis (?), 65
- Alexandria (Iskandariya), city,
 13, 15, 17, 83, referred to,
 83
 the Pseudo Callisthenes ori-
 ginates at, 13
 Alexander buried at, 82
 his tomb at, 82
 Mas'udi on, 82
 S Chrysostom on, 82
- Al Hadr See Hatra
- Al Iskandariis See Halai
- Al Khidi (Khisr, q v), the Green
 Prophet, 78 and *note*
 origin of, 78
- Al Mansur, Khalifa, 254
- Amazons, the, 12, 71 *seq*
 then disputed visit to Alex-
 ander, 12, 72
 origin of, 71
 described, 153 *seq*
 Sikandar's correspondence
 with, and visit to, 153 *seq*.
- Ambai (Piruz Shapur), city on
 the Euphrates, 327
- Ambassadors, instances of kings
 and chiefs going in person
 as ambassadors or spies,
 325
- Amen-Ka, Egyptian god, 16
 personated by Nectanebus, 16
- Amnion, Oasis of, 30, 65
 Alexanders visit to, 30, 65
- Amonum See 'Ammuriya.
- 'Ammuriya (Ancyra, Angola),
 stronghold, 23 and *note*, 89
- Failakus matches from, to
 encounter Darab, 23
- Andbdeh, 32

- Ancyia See 'Ammunya
- Andaliia (Spam), vi, 66, 121, 122, 138
 queen of, 121 *seq*
- Andarznamak (Ahdnamak), Pahlavi treatise, 257
- Andreantius, sea, 77
- Andreas, Alexander the Great's cook, 76 *seq*
 legend of, 76
 III Kuran, 77
- Angora See 'Ammunya
- Antigonus (Naitkun), name assumed by Alexander, 66
- Antiochus, Macedonian general, 76
- Antipater, legent in Macedonia, 82
 intrigued against by Olympian, 82
- Apollo and the Python, 203
- Apologue, 310
- Apothegms, 50, 303, 343
- A pries, 16
- Arab, Arabs, the, v, vi, 17, 21, 22, 66, 171, 209, 254, 321 *seq*, 377, 385, 396, 398, 402, 406
 their wars with the Ramans, 17, 21
- Darab demands tribute from, 22
 cymbal, 244
 their incursions into Persian territory, 322
 steeds, 380
- Arabia, 70, 72, 206, 322, 355
 Shapur son of Urmuzd's expedition to, 322
- Arabian, Arabians, the, 378, 388
 Faith, 95
- Arabian Nights, The*, 71, 78, 250
 quoted, 73
- Arabic language, 147, 205
 versions of Pahlavi texts, 255 *seq*
- Arachosia, 32
- Arar tree, 19
- Arash, son of Kar Kubad See Kai Arash
- Arash, Ashkaman king, 197, 210
- Arash, Iranian warrior, 394
- Arastalis (Aristotle, *qv*), vii, 35,
 counsels Sikandar, 35, 179
 his sentences over the coffin of Sikandar, 185
- Ard, day, 298, 390 and *note*
- Ardawan (Bahram, Artabanus), the last Ashkanian (Parthian) king, viii, 3, 197 *seq*, 201 *seq*, 205, 214 *seq*, 254 *seq*, 259 *seq*
 = Bahram, 197, 209 (?), 210
 his status in Persian tradition, 201
 daughter of, 202
 marries Ardshir Papakan, 202, 229
 incited by her brother Bahman to poison Aidshii Papakan, 259
 condemned to death, 260
 saved by Ardshir Papakan's minister, 260
 grves buth to Shapur, 261
 restored to favour, 265
 writes to Papak, 214
 summons Ardshir Papakin to court, 214
 receives gifts from Ardshir Pipakan, 215
 highly esteems Ardshir Papakan, 215
 his sons, 215, 255, 267 *note*
 then fate, 228, 229 and *note*, 259
 disgraces Ardshir Papakan, 216
 his slave-gul intrigues with Ardshir Papakan, 217 *seq*
 his eldest son made ruler of Pars, 218 and *note*
 consults the astrologers, 218
 his vain pursuit of Ardshir Papakan, 221 *seq*

- Ardawan, returns to Rai, 223
 writes to his son about Ardshir Pa-pakau, 223
 Ardshir Papakan marches against, 227
 prepares to encounter Ardshir Papakan, 227
 defeated, captured by Khar-rad, and slain by Ardshir Papakan, 228
 buried by Tabak, 229
 his palace at Rai spared (?) by Ardshir Pipakan, 229 and *note*
 his secretaryslam by Shapur, 256
 = Mihrak = Mithrak = Madik (?), 256
- Ardshir (Bahman, *q v*), Shih, 213, 271 and *note*
- Ardshii, brother of Shapur (Artaxerxes II), Shah, x, 3, 328, 360 *seq*
 Shapur arranges for the succession with, 260 *seq*
 his title, 364
 resigns the crown, 304
- Ardshir Khuria, city and district, 199, 205, 206, 229 and *note*, 231, 241, 245, 290 and *note*
 Ardshir Papakan builds a Fire temple in, 230
 makes irrigation works in, 230
 meaning of, 290 *note*
- Ardshir Papakan, Shall (Artaxerxes I), viii, ix, 3, 61, 81, 193, 196, 198 *seq*, 209 *note*, 21s *seq*, 238 *seq*, 250 *seq*, 294 *seq*, 303, 307, 315, 322, 325, 405
 his rise compared with that of Cyrus the Great, 194
 legend of Cyrus the Great, transferred to, 195
 his war with the Kurds (in Krirnamak), 196
 minister of, story of, 196
- Ardshir Pdpakan, Shah, Tabari's account of, 198
 marries the daughter of Ardawan, 202, 229, 259
 his various defeats referred to, 202
 birth of, 213
 summoned to court by Ardawan, 214
 equipped by Papak, 214
 presents gifts to Ardawan, 215
 m favour with Ardawan, 215
 his prowess in the chase, 215
 disgraced, 216
 writes to Papak, 216
 advised by Papak, 216
 intrigues with Gulnai, Ardawan's slave-girl, 217 *seq*
 hears from Gulnar of the pre-sage of the astrologers, 219
 flees with Gulnar to Pars, 220 *seq*
 followed by the divine Grace in the form of, 1 mountain-sheep, 221 *seq*
 adherents flock to, 223
 addresses his supporters, 224
 founds a city, 202, 224
 receives promises of help, 224
 joined by Tabak, 225
 and Tabak defeat Bahman, son of Aidawan, 226
 matches from Pars against Ardawan, 227
 defeats and slays Ardawan, 228
 gives the spoil to the troops, 229
 spares (?) Ardawan's palace at Rai, 229 and *note*
 counselled by Tabak to marry Ardawjin's daughter, 229
 returns to Ptlrs, 229
 builds Khurra-i-Ardshu, 229 and *note*
 his migration-works at Khui-la-i-Ardahfi, 230

- Ardshir** Papakan, his war with the Kurds, 230 *seq*
and Haftwad, 236 *seq*
 message sent by arrow to, 238
 worsted by Haftwad and entertained and counselled by two youths, 239 *seq*
 slays Mihrak, 241
 marches to attack the Worm, 241
 gives instructions to Shahrgir, 241
 his stratagem against the Worm, 242
 slays the Worm and its attendants, 244
 summons Shahrighi, **244** and *note*
 takes Haftwad's stronghold, 244
 defeats and slays Haftwad and Shahwi, 245
 comes off the spoil, 245
 builds a Fire-temple, 245
 rewards the two youths, 245
 his invasion of Kuman 205, 245
 goes to Tarsafun, 245
 his principles of government, 250, 273 *seq*, 286 *seq*
 his reign, 254 *seq*
 length of, 254
 Tarban on, 254
 and the daughter of Ardawan, stones of, 255
 coins of, 256, 257, 265
 crowns Shapur, 257
 his cities, 257
 his prophecy, 257
 euthioned at Baghdad, 258
 his title of King of kings, 193, 199, 254, 258, 273
 his inaugural address, 258
 Bahman's plot with his sister to poison, 259
 discovers plot against him, 260
 consults his minister, 260
- Ardshir Papakan, condemns the daughter of Ardawan to death, 260
 his minister saves her, mutilates himself, and makes record of the fact, 261
 his son Shapur born, 261
 hears about Shapur from his minister, 262
 recognises and acknowledges Shapur, 204
 restores the daughter of Ardawan to favour, 265
 rewards his minister, 265
 makes a new coinage in honour of his minister, 265
 builds Jund-i-Shapur, 266
 harassed by wars, consults Kaid, 266
 wroth at Raid's advice, 267
 seeks in vain for the daughter of Mihrak, 268
 referred to, 270
 discovers Urmuzd, 271
 counsels Urmuzd, 280
 calls and counsels Shapur, 286 *seq*
 on Church and State, 286
 on the duration of his dynasty, 289
 death of, 291
 Anobarzanes, the murderer of Darius Codomanus, 32
 Auobarzaues, satrap, 32 and *note*
 Anstobulus, Greek writer, 12
 Austotle (Aiastalis, *qv*), 29, 81
 Alexander's *tutoi*, 29
 letter to, 68
 correspondence with, about the succession, 81, 83
 on the silkworm, 204
 Armenia, 202, 203
 Armeman version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, 14
Arrian, historian, 12, 31, **64**, 68, 82
 his *Anabasis*, 12
 his *Indica*, 12
 Caspian Gates of, the, 32

INDEX

- Arrian, on the stature of Porus, 64
 Ichthyophagi, 69 *seg*
 Alexander and the
 Amazons, 72
 the death of Alexander,
 82
- Arsaces, 197
- Arsacid, Arsacids, the, 198, 203,
 205, 255
 then imperial system, 198
 some of, escape from Ardshir
 Papakan to Armenia, 203
- Arsalas, 32
- Arses, 29
- Artabanus (Ardawan, *q v*), 201
- Artaxeixes Ochus, 18 *note*, 29
 conquers Nectanebus II, 18
 note, 29
 murdered, 29
- Artaxerxes I *See* Ardshir
 Papakan
- Artaxcixes II (Ardshir, brother
 of Shapur), 363
- Arwand (Tigris), 329
- Asfandivar (Spento-data, Span-
 dat), son of Gushtasp, 15, 49,
 515, 200, 213, 224, 242, 251, 271
- Ashk, Ashkaman king, 197, 210
 meaning of 197
- Ashkanian, Ashkamians, the, race
 and dynasty, viii, 193,
 194, 196, 197, 209
 duration of then rule, 193
 tunes Firdausi's lack of
 materials for, 193
 surviving traditions of,
 transferred to other
 dynasties, 194
 importance of, 194
 genealogy of, 197
- Asia Minor, 30
 Central, 73
- Astawadh *See* Haftwad
- Astyages, 194
- Atbara, river, 65
- Atkinson, James, 250
 on the Shahnama, 250
- Atropatene, kingdom, 198
- Attock, 62
- Avasta *See* Zandavasta
- Avidrus Cassius, Roman general,
 291 *note*
- Azada, Ruman slave-girl, 382
 goes hunting with Bahrain
 Gur, 382
 tries to shame Bahrain Gur
 in his markmanship 383
 slain by Bahram Gur, 384
 and *note*
- Azai, month, 411
- Azaibaijan, 198, 203
- Azargashasp, the sprit of the
 lightning, 381
 —Gushasp, 212 and *note*
- Azarnarsi, son of Urmuzd, son of
 Narsi, 318
- B
- BABAK *See* Papak
- Babil (Babylon *q v*), vii
- Babylon (Babil), 17, 31, 81, 83,
 176, 178, 180, 181, 183
 Sikandar marches towards,
 176, 178
 pidigious brith at, 81, 180
 Sikandar sickens at, 181
 dies at, 81, 183
- Babylonian, 254
 script, 320
- Bactria, 32, 198
- Badakhshan, region in northern
 Afghanistan, 382
 gem of, 382 and *note*
- Baaton, Greek writer, 12
- Baghdad, city, viii, 254, 290, 322,
 327
 Ardshir Papakan enthroned
 at, 258
- Bagiz, 32
- Bagoas, 29
- Bahman (Vohu Manau), amesha-
 spenta, 362 and *note*
- Bahman (Ardshir), son of Asfan-
 diyai, Shah, 20 *note*, 34 and
 note, 49, 200, 213, 270 and
 note

INDEX

- Bahman, son of Ardawan, viii, 202, 218 and *note*, 225, 227, 260
 made ruler of Pars, 218
 referred to, 222
 bidden by Ardawan to seek out Ardshir Papakan, 223
 defeated by Aidshir and Tabak, 226
 escapes to Hind after the defeat of Ardawan, 228
 urges his sister to poison Ardawan, 259
- Bahram, island in the Persian Gulf, 330
- Bahram, 197, 209
 — Anlawan, 197, 209 (?), 210
- Bahrain, son of Urmuzd, Shah (Varahran I), IX, 3, 303, 306
 reign of, 307 *seq.*, 327
- Bahiam, son of Bahram, Shah (Varahran II), ix, 3, 308
 reign of, 310 *seq.*
 story told of, 310
- Bahram Bahramiyan, Shah, (Varahran III), ix, 3, 315, 316, 324, 334, 368, 405 (?)
 reign of, 313
 his inaugural address, 313
 resigns the throne to his son, 314
- Bahram, son of Shapur, Shah (Varahran IV), xi, 3, 313, 368, 371
 ruler of Kuman, 368
 his title, 368
 his seal, 368
 Tabari's account of, 368
 his daughter, 369
 resigns the throne to his brother, 369
 dies, 369
- Bahram Chubina, 250
- Bahram Gur, Shah (Varahran V), xi, 3, 250, 325, 329 and *note*, 372, 373, 394 *seq.*
 his stay at Hna, 372
 his age at accession, 373
- Bahram Gur, his persecution of the Christians, 373
 his war with Rome, 373
 bath of, 375
 the magnates advise Yazdagud to choose a governor for, 376
 put in Munzn's charge, 378
 goes with Munzir to Yaman 378
 his nurses, 378
 his education, 378 *seq.*
 has his tutors dismissed, 378
 makes choice of steeds, 380
 slave-gals, 381
 goes to the chase with a slave-gul, 382
 his marksmanship, 383 *seq.*
 slays his slave-gnl, 384 and *note*
 goes hunting with Nu'man and Munzu, 384
 picture of, hunting, sent to Yazdagud, 385
 returns with Nu'man to Yazdagud, 386
 complains of Yazdagud to Munzn, 387
 receives advice and his slave-gul from Munzn, 388
 falls into disgrace at court, 389
 asks Tamush to intercede for him, 389
 released and returns to Munzir, 390
 welcomed by Munzir, 390
 heals of his father's death and of the election of Khusrau, 395, 396
 claims the kingship and is supported by Munzir, 396 *seq.*
 Ins interview with Jawanwi, 398
 negotiates with the Iranians, 401 *seq.*

- Bahrani Gur, the Iranians produce examples of Yazdagnd's cruelty to, 404
addresses the Iranians, 404
proposes to decide the question of the kingship by ordeal, 405
promises to rule justly, 406
agrees to be the hist to face the 01 deal, 409
- Baida" (Bardi), lull fort, 198 and *note*, 199
- Bditu.'l Hardin (the Kaaba), 119, 121
- Balash, king of Kirman, 205
- Baluchistan (Balochistan, Gedrosia, Makran), country, 12, 70
- Banak, Iranian chief, 202
- Bandawa, Sindian chief, 175
defeated by Sikandar, 175
- Band-i-Karsai, 295
- Barbar, country, 114
- Bardi *See* Barda
- Barrier, Alexander's (Sikandar's), in the Caucasus, 78, 249
legend of, 78
site of, 79
described, 164
- Barsaentes, satrap, 32
executed, 32
- Barsine (Statena), daughter of Dauus Codomanus, 33
marries Alexander the Great, 33
- Baizin, Iranian chief, 395
- Barzin, sacred Fire, 391, 400
the Iranians worship at, 400
- Bastan-nama, 16, 17, 84, 373
- Bazanush (Valenan), IX, x, 294, 297
his defeat and capture by Shapur, son of Ardashir, 294, 295
his single combat with Garshasp, 297
builds budge at Shushtai, 298
- Bazanush (Jovian), x, 324, 326, 353 *seq*
elected emperor, 353
sues for peace, 353
accepts Shapur's terms, 355
- Bazrang, dynasty of Triabal Kings, 198
- Beas (Hyphasis), Indian river, 64
- Berber, race, 73
- Bessus, satrap, 32
executed, 32
- Bhutan, Indian kingdom, 81
- Bihafridh, 200
- Bih-Ardshir, city, 254, 291 *note*
- Bihzad, Iranian chief, 395
- Buds, green, 160
Sikandar holds converse with, vii, 160
- Bnka-i-Ardshir, city, 290 and *note*
- Biwaid, Iranian chief, 395
- Bizhan, Iranian hero, 194
- Bizhan, Ashkanian king, 197, 210
- Black Stone, the, 65
- Blest, Country of, 74, 76
- Bomby Mori See* Silk
- Book of Indication and Revision, Mas'udi's, 252
quoted, 252
- Bowl, the full, symbolism of, 63
- Biabantio, 324
- Brahmans (Gymnosophistæ), the, vii, 61, 64, 67, 143 *seq*
Palladrus on, 61
Sikandar's interview with, 67, 143 *seq*
country of, 143, 147
hear of Sikandar's coming and write to him, 143
described, 144
replv to Sikandar's questions, 144 *seq*
Sikandar quits, 147
- Brides of the Treasure, 250
- Browning, Robert, his poem of "The Glove," 384
- Bucephala, city, 18
- Bucephalus, horse of Alexander the Great, 18, 31

- Bucephalus, birth of, 18, 26
 death of, 18, 64
 a mare, 18 (Ethiopic version)
 city built by Alexander in
 memory of, 18
 offered by Darius to Porus, 31
 Buddhist saints, story of two, 63
 Budge, Dr E A Walks, 14, 17 *note*
 his editions of the Synac and
 Ethiopic versions of the
 Pseudo - Callisthenes, 14,
 17 *note*
- Budini, place, 73
- Burjak and Burjatur *See* Youths,
 the two
- Bust, fortress and district in
 Sistan, 175
- C
- CESAR, ix, x, 24, 26, 49, 112 *seq.*,
 122, 124, 126, 297, 298, 324
seq., 336, *seq.* 341 *seq.*, 345
seq., 389
 = Farlakus, 24, 26, 27
 = Sikandar 40, 42, 49, 113,
 114, 118, 121, 122, 124, 128,
 129, 142, 158, 161, 170, 174,
 178, 183
 = Valerian (Bazinush, q v),
 ix, x, 326
 = Jovian (Bazanush, q v), x,
 353, 354
 pays tribute to Shapur, son
 of Ardshir, 298
 Shapur in disguise visits, 336
 entertains Shapur, 337
 discovers who Shapur is, 337
 arrests Shapur, 337
 has Shapur sewn up in an
 ass's skin and imprisoned,
 338
 charges his wife with the
 custody of Shapur, 338
 invades and ravages Iran, 338
 Shapur prepares to attack, 346
 overthrown by Shapur at
 Tarsafun, 346 *seq.*
- Cæsar, his treatment by Shapur,
 349, 357
 mother of, 351
- Calanus (Sphines), Indian ascetic
 61
 Onesicrotus and, 61
 Alexander the Great and, 61
 death of, 61
 derivation of, 61
 identical with the sage sent
 by Kaid to Sikandar, 62
Seq Four Wonders, the
- Callisthenes, Greek historian, 12,
 74
 the Romance of Alexander
 fathered on, 13
- Callitris quadrivalvis*, the Arar
 tree, 19
- Cambyses, son of Cyrus the Great,
 16
- Candace (Kandake Kandata, q v),
 dynastic title of the queens
 of Ethiopia, 13, 65, 72
 and Alexander, 65 *seq.*
- Canopus, star, 382
- Cappadocia (Palawina), 294
- Captain of the host, x
- Captives, mutilation of, 323, 334,
 348, 357
 settlement of, 327, 357
- Carthaginians, the, 30
 Alexander's legendary visit
 to, 30
- Casaunon, Isaac, 13
- Caspian Gates, 31, 32
- Cassander, son of Antipater, 82
- Caucasus, the, 15, 79
 Alexander's barrier in, 78
 legend of, in the Kuran, 78
 site of, 79
- Chach (Tashkand) city in Turan,
 197
 thane of, 197, 210
 refused to, 229 and *note*
 bow of, 384 I
- Chaghwan, place 174, 175
 Sikandar arrives at, 174
 quits, 175

INDEX

- Chahram (Jahiam), city in Pars, 44
 Dara goes to, 44
 Chaibar, place on the coast of Baluchistan (Makran), 70
 Chares of Mytilene, Greek water, 61
 Charogos *See* Tainush
 Chess, 201
 its introduction into Persia, 201
 Chin, country (often = Turan), vii, 80, 179, 182, 186, 268, 280, 284, 358, 376, 397
 Khan of, 35
 ambassadors from, come to Dara, 35
 pen of, 57, 99
 Sikandar's expedition to, 80
 silk of, 85, 266
 ornaments of, 102, 139
 lord of —Sikandar, 113
 = Faghfur, 171
 implements of, 122
 lobes of, 128
 fringe of, 138
 stuffs of, 143, 215
 sea of, 149
 Sikandar goes to, 169
 rarities of, 171, 173
 paper of, 172
 coasts of, 173
 brocade of, 173, 182, 184, 332
 gold cloth of, 182, 334
 China, 204
 silk industry of, 204
 Chmab (Akesines), Indian river, 31, 64
 Chinese language, 147
 Chosroes, king of Armenia, 202
 Christ, 133, 339
 Faith of, 133, 352
 Christian, 342, 356
 rites of marriage, 104
 Faith, 356
 Christianity, 138
 Cihcia (Kaidafa), **294**
 City of Women (Harum), vii
 Cleophis, Indian queen, 65
 and Alexander the Great, 65
 Climes, the seven, 179, 262, 266, 273, 280, 376
 Colchians, the, 72
 Contents, Table of, v
 Cos, island, 204
 silk industry of, 204
 Countiy of the Blest, 74, 76
 Crete, island, 323 *note*
 Cross, the, 351, 352
 the religion of, 138
 Passion of, 339
 Ctesias, historian, 13, 68
 legend of Cyrus in, 195
 Gutschmid on, 195
 Ctesiphon (Taisafun, q v), 321, 322, 325, 372
 Cup of Kaid, the *See* Four Wonders, the
 descubed, 94, 100
 principle of, explained, 109
 Cybele, goddess, 71
 =Hittite Ma, 71
 Cyrus the Great, 194
 his rise compared to that of Ardshir Papakan, 194
 legend of, transferred to Ardshir Papakan, 195
- ### D
- D A I, month, 306
 Daizan (Tair, q v), Arab chief, 322, 323
 legend of, 322
 daughter of, legend of, 323
 Dakiki, poet, 196
 Damascus, Nicolaus of, 195
 Damawand, mountain, 202
 Dandamis. *See* Mandanes
 Dara, son of Darab, Shah (Darius Codomanus, q v), v, 17, 27, 29, 33 seq 83 seq., 112, 113, 123, 124, 132, 137. 170, 172, 188, 325, 353
 legendary son of Darba, 17, 27

- Dara, appointed by Darab to succeed him, 27
 historical account of, 29
 movements of, after his final defeat by Alexander (Sikandar), 31
 Sikandar's correspondence with the wife and daughter of, 33
 accession of, 34
 his letter to the kings, 34
 pays his troops, 35
 ambassadors come to, 35
 demands tribute from Sikandar, 36
 marches against Sikandar, 37
 Sikandar's visit to the camp of, 38
 invites Sikandar to banquet, 40
 his ambassador recognises Sikandar, 40
 sends horsemen in pursuit of Sikandar, 41
 defeated by Sikandar, 43
 collects another army, 43
 again defeated, 44
 goes to Chahram, 44
 goes to Istakhn, 44
 takes counsel with his chiefs, 45
 collects a new host, 46
 marches from Istakhr, 46
 is defeated, 46
 withdraws to Kirman, 46
 bewails himself, 47
 his letter to Sikandar, 49
 his letter to Fur, 50
 marches against Sikandar, 51
 abandoned by his troops and flees, 51
 murdered by his ministers, 52
 his murderers arrested by Sikandar, 53
 his dying interview with Sikandar, 53
 vengeance promised him by Sikandar, 53
- Dara, tells his last wishes to Sikandar, 54
 bestows Rushanak upon Sikandar, 55, 86
 dies, 55
 his burial, 56
 his son Sasan, 211
 his kindred support Ardshir Papakan, 223
- Darab, Shah, v, 11, 16, 20 seq., 34 and *note*, 49, 83, 84, 86, 132, 137, 172, 188
 father or Sikandar in Persian legend, 16
 legendary father of Dara, 17
 harangues the chiefs, 20
 ambassadors come to, 21
 employs Runan artificers, 21
 wars with the Arabs, 21
 defeats and demands tribute from them, 22
 Wars with Rum, 22
 defeats Farlaks, 23
 giants terms of peace to Farlaks, 24
 marries the daughter of Farlaks, 25
 return to Pars, 25
 becomes disaffected towards his wife (Nahid), 25
 marries again, 27
 Dara is born to him, 27
 fails in health, 27
 appoints Dara to succeed him, 27
 dies, 28
- Darab, Daulbaird, city, v, 17, 198, 199
- Darrel, Pass of, 79
- Darius Codomanus (Dara, *q v*), 16, 17, 29, 30
 defeated at Issus, 30
 Alexander escapes from the banquet of, 30
 defeated at Gaugamela, 31
 asks that his family may be restored to him, 31
 writes to Porus, 31

INDEX

- Danus Codomanus, the historical
 account of the death of, 31
 his daughter marries Alexander, 33
 his corpse sent to Pars, 33
 the punishment of his assassins, 33
- Darkness, Land of *See* Gloom, the
- Darmesteter, Professor, 203
 on the story of the Worm, 203
 Haftwad, 206
- Daughter of Kaid *See* Four Wonders, the
 described, 94, 100, 102, 104
 man led to Sikandar 104
- Dhoulkamam, *See* Zu-'l karnam
- Diagram to illustrate the Persian Romance of Alexander, 84
- Dihkan, 95 and *note*
 Farth of 95
- Dilafruz-i-Fairukhpar, Iranian slave-gul, 3, 338 *seq*
referred to, x
 slave to Caesar's wife, 338
 has compassion on Shapur, 339
 discovers who Shapur is, 339
 frees Shapur from the ass's skin, 340
 escapes with Shapur from Rum, 340 *seq*
 entertained by a gardener, 342
 praised by Shapur, 346
 named and honoured by Shapur, 356
- Dilam, city in Gilan, 227
- Dilaman, region, 202 and *note*
- Dilarai, wife of Dara and mother of Rushanak, v, 87 *seq*
 visited by Nahid, 89
- Dinawari, historian, 16, 64, 80, 81, 256, 323
- Dinkaid, Pahlavi text, 252
- Diognetus, Greek writer, 12
- Dionysus, temple of, visited by Sikandar, 71
- Dirazdast, title, 324 and *note*
- Div (Daeva), demon, 135, 146, 150, 241
 = Ahriman, 349
- Dragon, vii, 71, 132, 146
 Sikandar's adventure with, 71, 151
 = Fur, 113
 = Ardawan, 222
- Drangrana (Makran, Baluchistan), 32
- Dreams, Raid's, 91 *seq*.
- Dukhtnush. *See* Nusha.
- ### E
- EGYPT (Misi), 12, 13, 16, 17, 72, 81, 82
 the Pseudo-Calhsthenes written in, 13
 invaded by Alexander the Great, 30
- Egyptians, the, 16
 falsification of history by, 16
- Ekbatana (Hamadan), 31, 32
- Elam, kingdom, 194, 198
- Elephants, 115
 Fur's, 115
 Sikandar's device to overcome, 115
- Elymais, kingdom, 198
- Enotokortai, the, 80
- Epirus, country, 12
 Alexander I of, 12
 his expedition to Italy, 12
- Ethiopia, 18 *note*, 72
 flight of Nectanebus to, 18 *note*
 a western and an eastern, 68
 = India, 68
- Ethiopians, Ethiops, 43, 71, 80
 = Indians, 13, 68
 western and eastern, 68, 71
- Ethropic version of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, 17 and *note*, 18, 30, 33, 66, 67, 71, 74, 82, 83

Eumenes, Greek ephemenst, 12
 Euphiates, river, 31, 327
 Euxine sea, 72

F

FAGHFUR, the, dynastic title of
 the pnnces of Chin and
 Machfn, vii, 35, 80, **113**
 169 seq, 325
 ambassadors from, come to
 Dara, 35
 Sikandar visits, as Ins own
 ambassador, 170
 gives audience to Sikandar,
 170
 entertains Sikandar, 171
 answers Sikandar, 172
 his gifts to Sikandar, 173
 sends envoy with Sikandar,
 173
 Farlakus, Philip II of Macedon,
 the father of Alexander
 the Great, v, 22 seq, 57,
 102, 112, 125, 130, 131 151,
 182
 wars with Darab, 22
 allied with the king of Rus,
 22
 marches from 'Ammuriya to
 encounter Darab, 23
 is defeated and returns to
 'Ammuriya, 23
 sues for peace, 23
 agrees to send tribute, and
 give his daughter in mar-
 riage to Darab, 24, 25
 adopts Sikandar as his heir,
 27
 Faith, Faiths, the four, 92, 95
 of Christ, Christian, 133, 352,
 356
 of Ahrinian, 281, 290
 Fakus, the, 61
 Alexander and, 61
 Onesicritus and, 61
 Farat (Euphrates), 37, 42, 43, 290
 Faridun, Shah, **73**, 172, 209, 406

Farwardin, month, 375
 Faryan, king, father in-law of
 Kardnish, vi, 66, 67, **124**
 seq, 171, 172
 his city taken by Sikandar,
 124
 slam, 125
 his daughter and son-in law
 taken prisoners, 125
 biought before Nartkun,
 126
 sentenced to death, **126**
 pardoned, 126
 Fudausi, vii, 16, 17, 31 seq, 62,
 64 seq, 72, 78, 80 seq, 197,
 198, 200, 202, 250, 254, 255,
 294, 29s, 313, 315, 321 seq,
 326, 328, 308, 372
 his derivation of Iskandar
 (Sikandar), 19
 his praises of Mahmud, 20,
 207, 279, 292, 370
 his account of Alexander's
 battles with Danus, 31
 invents names for Darius'
 murderers 32
 introduction to the story
 of Kaid, 62
 his veiled attacks on Mah-
 mud, 62, 92 seq, and note
 Ins lack of subject matter for
 Ashkanian times, 193
 and the Cyrus legends, 195
 Karaamak, 196, 200 seq,
 255 seq
 on Mahmud's remission of
 the land-tax, **196**
 his treatment of the short
 reigns, 249, 301
 his fondness for wine, 291,
 295, 306, 309. 314, 362,
 369
 gives his age as sixty-three,
 314, 369
 refers to his work, **370**
 reverses the historical re-
 lationship of Nu'man and
 Munzir, **372**

INDEX

- Fire, Fires, sacred, 21
 Firuzabad *See* Gur
 Fish, the salt, legend of, 76 *seq*
 -eaters, *See* Ichthyophagi
 Folin, 73 and *note*
 Fortifications, vitrified, 79
 Fount of Life, the, 74, 158 *seq*
 Sikandar's expedition to, 74
 seq, 158 *seq*
 account of, in the Pseudo
 Calhsthenes, 74 *seq*
 Sikandar hears of, 158
 prepares to visit, 158
 goes in search of, 159
 tails to find, 160
 Four Wonders, the, of Kaid, vi,
 94, 97 and *note*, 99 *seq*
 Faiths, the, 91, 95
 Fruba, sacred Fue, 201, 255
 Fur (Porus, *q v*), dynasty and
 Indian king, vi, 31, 50, 51,
 62, 64, no *seq*, 123, 132,
 135, 137, 170, 172, 175
 Dara's letter to, 50
 Sikandar's war with, 67,
 112 *seq*
 routed by Sikandar's iron
 steeds, 116
 his single combat with
 Sikandar, 117
 slain, 117
 his troops submit to Sikan-
 dar, 118
- G**
- GABRIEL, angel, 138 *note*
 Gauimait, Shah, 208
 Ganges, river, 64
 Garden of the Hesperides, 74
 Gardener, a, 341
 entertains Shapur, son of
 Urmuzd, 341 *seq*
 sent by Shapur to the high
 priest, 344
 describes Shapur, 344
 rewarded by Shapur, 357
 Garshasp, Iranian chief, 297
 his single combat with
 Bazanush, 297
 Gashasp, Iranian warrior, 394
 addresses the nobles on the
 succession to the throne, 394
 Garsiwaz, brother of Afrasiyab, 325
 Gaugamela, 31, 32 *note*
 battle of, 31
 Gaumata, the false Smerdis, 207
 Gaza, city, 30
 siege of, 30
 Gedrosia (Makran, Baluchistan),
 69
 Gemini, constellation, 155
 Genealogies, fictitious, 199
 of Papak in Tabari, 200
 Mas'udi, 200
 Genealogical table, 3
 Germany, 73
 Ghee, 105
 Gil (Gilan), region, 227
 Girduni Sndaira, pass, 32
 Girih, 199
 Giv, Iranman hero, 194
 Gloom, the (Land of Darkness),
 vii, 73, 74, 79
 conception of, 73
 Sikandar's expedition to, 74
 seq
 account of, in the Pseudo-
 Calhsthenes, 74 *seq*
 Sikandar hears of, 158
 enters, 159 *seq*
 the jewels of, 162
 emerges from, 162
 Glory *See* Grace
 Glove, The, Browning's poem of,
 referred to, 384 *note*
 Gog and Magog (Yajuj and
 Majuj, *q v*), 78
 legend of, in Kuran, 78
 Gordyene, kingdom, 198
 Grace, or Glory, the divine, 27,
 47, 51, 85 and *passim*
 follows Ardshir Papakan in
 the form of a mountain-
 sheep, 221 *seq*,

- Gramscus, river, 30
 battle of the, 30, 31
- Greece, 30
- Greek, Greeks, the, 68, 82
 then conception of India, 68
 captives, mutilation of, by the
 Persians, 373
- Green Prophet, the See Al Khidi
- Sea, the, 174 *note*
- Gretna Green, 323 *note*
- Gudarz, I'ranian hero, 194
- Gudarz, Ashkcimau king, 197, 210
- Gular, place, 206
- Gulnar, slave-gul of Ardawan, I
 217 and *note*
 her intrigue with Ardshir
 Papakan, 217 *seq*
 reports the presage of the
 astrologeis to Aulshu Pa-
 pakan, 219
 flees with Ardshir Papakan
 to Pars, 220
- Gund l-Shapur (Shapur Gud ?),
 city, 295, 327
 Mani-gate of, 327
- Gur (Zur, Firuzabad), city, 199,
 205, 229 *note*, 230, 245
- Gurgan, region, 373
- Gurzban, a city between Balkh
 and Harat (?), 394
- Gushasp, sciated hie, 201
- Gush-bistai, 80, 177 and *note*
 his interview with Sikandar,
 177
- Gushtasp, Shah, 20, 49, 55, 200,
 213, 251, 252, 258
- Gustaham, I'ranian warrior, 394
 his lions slam by Bahiam
 Gur, 409
- Gutschnud, Alfred von, 195
 on the Cyrus legend in
 Ctesias, 195
- Guzihr, Tribal King, 198, 199
- H
- HABASH (Ethropia), vii, 149
 people of, encountered by
 Sikandar, 149
- Haftanbukht See Hartwad
- Haftwad (Haftanbukht, Asta-
 wadh), Tubal King, viii,
 199, 205 *seq*, 232 *seq*
 account of, in Taban, 205
 daughter of, 205, 206, 233,
 234
 becomes guardian of the
 Worm, 236
- Noldeke and Darmesteter on,
 206
- son of, 206, 236
 helps his father against
 Ardshir Papakan, 236
 story of, 232 *seq*
 his seven sons, 233, 235
 his rise to power, 235
 builds, and migrates to, a
 stronghold, 235
 and Ardshir Papakan, 236
seq
 slain by Ardshir, 245
- Halai (Olympias (?), Nahid),
 daughter, in legend, of
 Philip II of Macedon, 19
 reason for her repudiation by
 Darab and her naming her
 son Iskandar (Sikandar),
 19
- Halai-Sandanis See Halai
- Hamadan (Ekbatana), 31
- Hamza, Arabic histonan, 257
- Haram, 65, 120 and *note*, 121
 Bartu'l, 119, 121
- Harum, the City of Women, vii,
 73, 153 *seq*
 visited by Sikandar, 153 *seq*
 Sikandar's correspondence
 with the ruler of, 153 *seq*
- Hashmu, 362 and *note*
- Hashish, 32
- Hatra (Ai Hadr), citv, 321 *seq*
 account of, 322
 besieged, 322
 fall of, legend of, 322
 king of, 323
- Hecataeus, 13
- Helenopolis, 61

- Herodotus, 13, 16, 68, 72, 73
 legend of Cyrus in, 195
- Hespeudes, Garden of the, 74
- High priest, x, 343 *seq*
 hears of Shapur's return, 344
 informs the captain of the
 host, 345
- Himalaya, 74, 81
- Hind, Hindustan, vi, viii, 21, 51,
 80, 81, 91, 98 and *passim*
 ambassadors from, come to
 Darab, 21
 ambassadors from, come to
 Dara, 35
 ruler of = Fur, 51
 Sikandar invades, 98
 silk of, 99
 king of = Kard, 103
 Sikandar becomes king of,
 118
 people of, help the Sindrans
 against Sikandai, 175
- Hira, city, 372
- Hisharn bin Muhammad, 30
- Hittite, Hittites, 71
 empire of, 71
- Hiuen Tsiang, Chinese traveller,
 63
 quoted, 63, 73
- Horbaras, 195
- Holy Ghost, the, 138 and *note*
- Homer, 13, 72
 quoted, 68, 73
- Hormisdas I (Uimuzd, son of
 Shapur), 301
- Hormisdas (Urmuzd), son of Ur-
 muzd, son of Narsi, 318,
 325
- Humai, Shah, mother of Darab,
 20, 22, 199
- Huns, the, 15
- Hurmuz, Ashkaman king, 197
- Hurmuz (Ormus), 204
- Humuzdagan, 193, 199
 battle of, 193, 199, 202, 256
- Hushyai, astiologei, 372, 375
 takes Bahrain Gur's horo-
 scope, 375
- Hydaspes (Jhilam), Indian river,
 18, 31, 62, 63
- Hydraotes(Ravi), Indian river, 64
- Hyperboreans, the, 74
 Elysium of, 74
- Hyphasis (Beas), Indian river, 64
- Hyrkania (Mizandaran), 373
- I
- I B N Mukafta, 17, 373
- Ibrahin, Abraham, the patriarch,
 119, 120
 house of = the Kaaba, 119
- Ichthyophagi, the, 69 *seq*, 81
 Sikandar and, 69, 147
 Aman on, 69
 modern accounts of, 70
 then city described, 177
 go to meet, and are visited
 by, Sikandar, 178
 hand over the treasures of
 Kar Khusiau to Sikandar,
 178
- Imaus, mountain, 12
- 'Inanian, 'Inimans, the, Arab
 tribe, 324, 330, 331, 333
- India, 17, 61, 64, 81, 83, 204
 Palladius on, 61
Ancient, M'Crimble's, quoted,
 68
 = Ethiopia, 68
- Indian, Indians, the, 81, 375, 397
 = Ethiopians, 13, 68
 sages, 61, 83, 91 *seq*, 143 *seq.*,
 266
 bells, 175
 bane, 259
- Indies, Greek conception of two,
 13
 duplicate races in, 68
- Indra, Indian god, 203
 and Vritra, 203
- Indus, river, 62, 67, 70
 mistaken for the Nile, 68
- Iollas, Alexander's cup-bearer, 82
- Iraj, the youngest son of Faridun,
 353

- Iran, v, x, 16, 17, 21, 38, 39, and *passim*
 monarch of = Driiab, 21, 26
 and Shahnama compared, 193
 invaded by Munzir and Nu'man, 397
- Iranian, Iranians, the, xi, 17, 43
seq. 51, 112, 114, 179 and *passim*
 their wars with the Arabs, 17
 Sikandar's proclamation to, 44
 bewail themselves, 48
 counsel Dira" to come to terms with Sikandar, 48
 ask quarter of Sikandar, 51
 hail him as their king, 56
 after Yazdagand's death meet for counsel in Pars, 394
 send Jawanwi to Munzir, 397
 offer prayer at the Fire-fane of Barzin, 400
 the loyal, support Balaam Gur, 402
 then procedure to elect a Shah, 403
 decide to reject Bahram Gur, 403
 remonstrated with by Munzir 403
 their object-lesson to Munzir, 404
 accept Bahrain Gur's proposal for settling the question of the kingship by ordeal, 406
- Iron steeds, Sikandar's, vi, 115
- Isdigeid I (Yazdagird, son of Shapur), Sasanian king, 371
- Ishmael (Ismail), 65, 120, 121
- Iskandar. *See* Sikandar
- Iskandar, herb, 26
- Iskandariya (Alexandria), vii, 185
 Sikandar buried at, 185
- Island, the = Meroe, 65
- Islands, Male and Female, 72
 origin of legend of, 72
- Isma'il. *See* Ishmael
- Ispahan, 57, 86, 87, 199, 201, 202, 210
- Israfil, archangel, 78
 Sikandar's interview with, vii, 83, 161
- Issus, 30
 battle of, 30, 31
 Darius' family taken at, 31
- Istakhi (Persepolis), 37, 57, 59, 198, 199, 202, 211, 223, 225, 231, 326, 356, 386
- Dara marches from, to encounter Sikandar, 37, 46
 returns to, 44
- Sikandar crowned Shah at, 59
- taken by Ardshir Papakan, 227
- Ardshir Papakan marches from, against the Kurds, 230
 returns victorious to, 232
- Italy, Alexander of Epirus' expedition to, 12
- Alexander the Great's legendary expedition to, 12,
- Iwan-i Kerkh, 327
- J
- JACOB of Sarug, Syriac poet, 15, 84
- Syriac Christian Legend of Alexander versified by, 15, 74, 78, 84
 his death, 15
- Jadustan, 109 and *note*
- Jahram (Charam), city in Pars, viii, xi, 119, 202, 225, 237, 241, 268, 400, 401
 desert of, 401
- Jalalpur, Indian city, 18
- Jamshid, Shah, 45 and *note*, 172, 209
- Janusiyar, minister of Dara, 52, 88
 murders Dara, 52

- Janusiyar, tells Sikandar of
 Dara's murder, 52
 arrested by Sikandar, 53
 executed, 56, 88
- Jawanwi, Iranian magnate, 373,
 398
 goes as ambassador to Mun-
 zir, 398
 his interview with Munzir,
 398 *seq*
 recognises the divine Grace
 in Bahram Gur, 398
 suggests a course of action to
 Munzir, 400
 returns to Iran, 400
- Jaz, Mesopotamia, 337
- Jerusalem, 81
- Jew, Jews, the, 95, 356
 Faith of, 95
- Jhilam (Hydaspes), Indian river,
 18, 31, 63
- Johan Das, Babu, quoted, 81
- Joktan, 65
 = Kahtan, 65
- Joshua, 77
- Jovian, Emperor, 324 *seq*
 confuted with Valenan, 324
- Judaism, 327
- Judda, the port of Mecca, vi, 121
 Sikandar arrives at, 121
- Julian (Yamis), Empeior, 324, 325
 confused with Valerian, 324
 not an emperor in the Shah-
 nama, 324, 326
 his expedition against Persia,
 324 *seq*
- Julius Valerius, early Latin trans-
 lator of the Pseudo-Callis-
 thenes, 14, 61, 66 *seq*, 71,
 74, 78, 79, 81
- Jund-i-Shapur, city, 256
 — Ras-Shapur, 256
 Ardshir Papakan builds, 266
- Jupiter, planet, 138, 172, 292
- Justinian, Emperor, 204
 thesilkworm introduced into
 the West during his reign,
 204
- K
- KAABA, the, vi, 65
 Sikandar's expedition to, 67,
 83, 119
- Kabtun, king of Misr and the
 progemtor of the Copts, 121
 welcomes Sikandar, 121
 parses Kardafa to Sikandar,
 122
- Kabul, Kabulistan, 207
 dagger of, 320
- Kadisi, Kadisiya, place, 119, 330
- Kahtan, Arab chief, 65, 120
 = Joktan, 65
- Karan, Karanian, race and dyn-
 astv, v, 9 *seq*, 17, 34, 48, 55,
 57, 59, 81, 112, 125, 141,
 179, 180, 194, 199, 200, 202,
 210, 223, 237 *note*
- Kar Arash, 197, 210, 228
- Kaid, Indian king, vi, viii, 61, 62,
 83, 91 *seq*, 112, 256
 identical with Mandanes
 (Dandamis), 62
 Sikandar and the sage of, 62,
 104 *seq*
 consults Mihram about his
 dreams, 92 *seq*
 his Four Wonders, 94, 97 and
 note, 99 *seq*
 Ins dreams interpreted by
 Mihran, 94 *seq*
 daughter of, 100
 described, 100
 reference in Sikandar's
 will to, 182
 cup of, described, 100
 leech of, 101
 sage of, 101
 sends his Four Wonders and
 other gifts to Sikandar, 103
 reappearance of, 256
 his prophecy, 256, 257, 267
 consulted by Ardshir Papa-
 kan, 266
 his advice to Ardshir Papa-
 kan, 267, 273

- Kardafa (Cilicia), 294, 297
 Kaidafa (Kandake, Candace, *q v*),
 •vi, 83, 121 *seq*, 325
 obtains Sikandar's portrait,
 122
 praised by Kabtun to Si-
 kandar, 122
 receives a letter from Si-
 kandar, 123
 answers Sikandar's letter,
 123
 welcomes Kardrush on his
 return from captivity, 127
 receives Nartkun (Sikandar)
 graciously, 128
 her state described, 128, 130,
 133
 gives audiences to Naitkun
 (Sikandar), 128 *seq*
 recognises Sikandar, 129 *seq*
 hears Sikandar's embassy,
 129
 her covenants with Sikandar,
 132, 138
 warns Sikandar against
 Tarnush, 133
 chides Tamush, 135
 takes counsel with Sikandar
 about Tarnush, 135
 approves of Sikandar's
 scheme '137
 takes counsel with her
 nobles, 139
 her gifts to Sikandar, 140
 Sikandar's final message to,
 143
 Kardrush (Kandaros, Candaules),
 son of Kardafa (Candace),
 66, 134, 135
 wife of, 66
 and his wife taken by Si-
 kandar, 125
 brought before Naitkun,
 126
 sentenced to death, 126
 pardoned, 126
 gratitude of, 127
 returns to Kaidafa, 127
 Kardnish, presents Nartkun (Si-
 kandar) to Kaidafa, 127
 Kaihan *See* Kaid
 Kai Khusrau, Shah, 79, 177
 the treasures of, found by
 Sikandar, 178
 Cyrus legend of, 195
 Kai Kubad, Shah, 197, 210
 Kai Manush, 200
 Kait *See* Kaid
 Kai Ugi, 200
 Kale (Nerers), daughter of Alex-
 andei in the Pseudo-Cal-
 listhenes, 77
 and the cook Andreas, legend
 of, 77
 Kand *See* Kaid
 Kandake (Candace, *q v*, Kardafa,
 q v), 66
 Kandaros *See* Kaidrush
 Kandaules *See* Kaidrush
 Kanir *See* Tarnush
 Kannuj, city in Hindustan, 64,
 110, 207, 352
 Sikandar reaches, 110
 Karakh-Marshan, 199, 291 *note*
 Karan, Iranian hero, 194
 Karan, Iranian chief, 394
 Karkh = Khurrani Abad (?), 327
 Karnamak-i-Ardshir-i-Papakan,
 Pahlavi text, 14 *note*, 61,
 198, 200 *seq* 205 *seq*, 255
 seq, 301, 325
 account of, 195
 resembles Yatkai-i-Zarnan,
 195, 196
 purport of, 196
 portion of Shahnama corre-
 sponding to, 196
 compared with, 200
 seq, 205 *seq*, 255 *seq*.
 Karnamak, and Fudausi, 196
 polo episode 111, 196
 Kamapravaramas, 80
 Karun, river, 199 *note*
 dam on, 295
 Kashmir, 31
 king of, 31

- Katib, Arab chief, 21, 65, 120
- Kawa, flag of, 347
- Kaznun, 199
- Kerat6r *See* Tarnush
- Khan, the, 35
 of Chin, 35
 ambassadors from, come to Dara, 35
- Kharazm (Khiva), 72
- Kharazmians, the, 72
- Khamid, Iranian warrior, IX, 228, 284
 takes Ardawan prisoner, 228
- Kharrad, sacred Fire, 212 and *note*, 226, 391
- Khîr, district, 198
- Khîsr (Al Khidr, *q v*), chief and prophet, 159
 goes with Sikandar to the Gloom, 159
 parts company with Sikan-dar, 160
 finds the Fount of Life, 160
- Khurasan, 242, 301
- Khurm, 82, 184
 meaning of, 82
 oracle of, consulted, 184
- Khuna-i-Ardshir *See* Ardshir Khurra
- Khuiram Abad (Karkh ?), city, 327, 357 and *note*
- Khusiau, Shah *See* Kai Khus-rau
- Khusiau, Iranian noble, xi, 395, 408
 referred to, 406
 elected Shah in succession to Yazdagird, 395
 proposes that Bahram Gur should begin at the ordeal, 409
 does homage to Bahrain Gur, 410
- Khuza', Arab tribe, 65, 120
 their rule ended by Sikan-dar, 120
- Khuzistan (Susiana), 290 and *note*, 298, 327, 357
- Kibtis, 397 and *note*
- Kinam-i-Asiran (Shus[?]), 327, 357 and *note*
- King of kings, title of, 193, 197
 meaning of, in Achaemenian and Paithian times, 198
 assumed by Ardshir Papakau, 193, 199, 254, 258, 273
- Kings, Tubal, *q v*
- Kirman, region in southern Iran, v, 31, 46, 47, 57, 59, 199, 202, 205, 245, 252
 Dara retures to, 46
 etymology of, 204, 236
 Ardshir Papakan's invasion of, 205, 245
- Knmanshah, title, 313, 368
- Kirmanshahan, place, 368
- Ktesias *See* Ctesias
- Kubad, Shah *See* Kai Kubad
- Kubad, Shah, father of Nushirwan, 3, 208
- Kufa, city, 381
 wood of, 381
- Kujaran, city and province, 205, 206, 232
 Haftwad migrates from, to stronghold, 235
- Kuraish, Arab tube, 65
- Kuian, the, 15, 65, 84
 references to Alexander in, 15, 78, 84
 legend of Moses and the salt fish in, 77
 Gog and Magog in, 78
- Kuidistan, 330
- Kurd, Kinds, the, viii 193, 203, 230 *seq*, 257
 Ardshir Papakan's war with, in Karnamak, 196, 206, 256 in Shahnama, 230 *seq*
- Kurdzad, daughter of Mihrak, *q.v*
- Kuna Muria Islands, 72
- LAUS, Ptolemy, son of. *See* Ptolemy.

Land of Darkness See Gloom, the.
 Land-tax, Mahmud's remission of, 196, 208
 Latin version, early, of Pseudo-Calhsthenes See Julius Valerius
 Leech of Kaid See Four Wonders, the
 Legend, Synac Christian, of Alexaïulei See Synac.
 Leo, constellation, 172, 180
 Libra, constellation, 97
 Life, Fount of, q v
 Water of, vii
 of Alexander, Plutaich's, 67
 Luhrasp, Shah, 55, 200

M

M A ,Hittite goddess, 71
 = Cybele, 71
 priestesses of = Amazons, 71
 Macan, Turner, 250
 his edition of the Shahnama, 60
 M'Crindle, 68
 his *Ancient India* quoted, 68, 80
 Macedonia, 81, 82
 Macedonian invasion of the East, 68, 69
 Macuanus, Prætorian prefect, 294
 his treachery to Valerian, 294
 Mada, Medes, the, 194
 Midik, king of the Kurds, 203
 meaning of, 203, 256
 Magi, the, 372, 373
 Magog (Majuj) See Gog
 Mahabharata, Indian epic, 31, 80
 Mahiyai, minister of Dara, 52,88
 referred to, v
 murders Dara, 52
 tells Sikandar of the murder, 52
 arrested by Sikandar, 53
 executed, 56, 88

VOL. VI

Mahmud, Sultan, viii, ix, 20, 193
 praise of, 20, 207, 279, 292, 370
 Firdausi's verled attacks on, 62, 92 *seq* and *note*
 his remission of the land-tax, 196, 208
 Marshan, 199
 Majuj (Magog) See Yapij
 Makian (Gedrosia, Baluchistan), 69, 182, 202, 397
 Alexanders return by, productive of marvels, 69
 etymology of, 69
 Mahka, daughter of Tair, 3, 323, 324, 330
 referred to, x
 legend of, 323, 330 *seq*
 offers to betray her father's stronghold to Shapur, 331
 makes the garrison drunk, 333
 opens the gate to Shapur, 333
 goes to Shapur's camp, 333
 Manda, the, nomad tubes, 194
 Mandanes (Dandamis, Kait, Karhan, Kand, Kaid), 61
 and Onesieutus, 61
 identical with Kaid, 62
 Mani, heresarch, x, 307, 327, 358
 account of, 327
 -gate, 327, 359
 his teaching, 328
 his disputation with the high priest, 358
 executed, 359
 Marco Polo, 74
 Mars, planet, 212, 318
 Mas'udi, historian, 62, 63, 82, 193, 257, 313, 315
 his genealogies of Papak, 200
 his "Book of Indication and Revision," 252
 his apologue of the owls, 310
 on the parentage of Yazdagad, son of Shapur, 371
 Maundeville, Sir John, 13, 72

2 E

- Mazaga, Indian city, 65
 taken by Alexander, 65
 Mazandaran (Hyicania), 373
 Mecca, 64, 120
 Sikandar's visit to, 64, 119
 seq
 account of, 64
 Mede, Medes (Mada), the, 194, 203
 Media, 31, 201, 203
 Magna, 201, 203, 256
 Median, 194, 195
 empire, 194
 Mediterranean, the, 294
 Megara, city, 323 *note*
 Megasthenes, 68
 Memphis, city, 82
 Alexander's body taken to, 82
 Mercury, planet, 171, 224
 Meroe, island and city of, 13, 65
 Mesopotamia, Mesopotamian, 30, 294, 321
 deseit, 322
 Mihr *See* Mihr Barzin
 Mihr, month, 24, 33, 55
 Mihrak, Tribal King, viii, lx, 3, 199, 237, 238, 257, 267, 268, 270, 272, 273
 = Mithrak, 206
 slain by Ardshir Papakan, 241
 his daughter, viii, IX, 3, 241, 256, 257, 268 *seq*, 272
 escapes, 241, 256, 268
 refined to in Raid's prophecy, 267
 discovered by Shapur, 268 *seq*
 informs Shapur of her birth, 270
 marries Shapur, 270
 birth of her son Uimuzd, 271
 = Mithiak = Madik = Ardawan (?), 256
 his importance in legend, 257, 267
 Mihran, Indian sage, vi, 91, 97
 consulted by Kaid about his dreams, 92 *seq*
 interprets Raid's dreams, 94 *seq*
 Mihran, treasurer to Yazdagird, 387
 Mihi Barzin, sacred Fire, 201, 212 and *note*
 Mihragan, feast, 230 and *note*, 245
 Mihrmas, 200
 MiLid, Iranian warrior, 394
 Milad (Taxila), Indian city, 62, 98, 102, 109, 110
 Sikandar approaches, 98
 Minos, 323 *note*
 Minuchihr, Shah, 200, 353
 Mirkhand, historian, 62, 315
 Miskal, measure of weight, 24 and *note*
 Misr (Egypt), vi, 37, 114, 115, 122, 181
 invaded by Sikandar, 37, 121
 king of, defeated by Sikandar, 37
 welcomes Sikandar, 121
 sea of, 120
 Sikandar stays for a year in, 121
 Mithrak, 206
 = Mihrak, 206
 = Mihrak = Madik = Ardawan (?), 256
 Mohl, Jules, 60
 his edition of the Shahnama, 60
 on the story of the Worm, 203
 Mong, Indian city, 18
 Moses, prophet, 77, 95
 and the salt fish, legend of, 77
 Faith of, 95
 Mosul, city, 322
 Muhammad, the Prophet, 15, 65, 190, 292
 his reference to Alexander in the Kuran, 15, 77

Muhammad Kasim, Arabgeneral,
325

Muhammadans, the, 78

Mukaffa. *See* Ibn Mukaffa

Mutilation, instances of, 261,
323. 334. 348, 357.404

Munir, prince of Hua, xi 372,
377 *seq* 384 *seq.*, 394, 406,
408

visits Yazdagnd, 377

monarch of Yaman, 378

returns to Yaman with Bahram,
378

chooses nurses for Bahram,
378

dismisses Bahram's tutors,
380

provides Bahram Gur with
steeds, 380

piovides Bahram Gur with
slave-girls, 381

goes to the chase with Bahram Gur,
384

sends a picture of Bahram Gur shooting to Yazdagird,
385

sends Bahram Gur with Nu'man to Yazdagird,
386

receives a letter from Yazdagnd, 387

counsels and sends Bahram Gur a slave-gul and presents,
388

welcomes Bahrain Gur on return,
390

supports Bahram Gru's claim to the throne,
396 *seq*

invades Fran, 397

Ins interview with Jawanvi,
398 *seq*

refers Jawanwi to Bahram Gur,
398

advises Bahram Gur to negotiate with the Flavians,
401, 404

Mytilene, Chares of, 61

N

NABARZANES, Persian general,
32

pardoned by Alexander, 32

Nahid (Halai (?), Olympias), daughter of Farlakus, v,
24 *seq* and *note*, 89

marries Darab, 25

troubled by offensive breath,
26

cured, but repudiated by Darab,
26

returns to Farlakus and gives birth to Sikandar, 26

visits Dilarai and Kushanak,
89

referred to, 187

Nahid, the planet Venus, 214

Nartkun (Antigonos), minister of Sikandar, 66

his name assumed by Sikandai, 66, 125 *seq*

poisonates Sikandar, 125 *seq*
Kaidrush and his wife brought before, 126

sentenced to death by,
126

pardoned by, 126

= Sikandar, 131, 133, 134, 141

Napata, city, 65

Naphtha, vi, 115, 116, 165

Sikandar's non steeds filled with,
115

Fur's elephants and troops routed by the use of,
116

used to vitrify Sikandar's barrier,
165

Narmpai, the, fabulous tube, vii,
71 and *note*

Sikandar and, 150

Narses (Naisi, son of Bahram), Sasaman king, 315

Narsi, Ashkanian king, 197, 210

Narsi, son of Bahram, Shah (Narses), IX, 3, 313, 316,
325, 330, 331, 337

his reign, 315 *seq.*

- Narsi, his title, 315
 his inaugural address, 315
 daughter of *See* Nusha
- Nasibin (Nisibis, *q.v.*), 326, 355
 cession of, 355
 inhabitants of, refuse to submit to Shapur, 356
 taken by Shapur, 356
- Nasr, Amir, brother of Mahmud, 196, 207
 praise of, 207
- Nasr, Arab chief, 65, 120, 121
 appeals to Sikandar for help, 120
 made ruler at Mecca, 121
- Nauruz, 33, 55, 273, 389
- Nearchus, admiral of Alexander the Great, 12, 61, 70
 his account of the Ichthyophagi quoted by Aman, 69, 70
- Nectanebus I I, king of Egypt, 16, 18
 personates Amen-Ra and becomes the legendary father of Alexander the Great, 16
 story of, 18 and *note*
- Negroes, the, 73
 described, 73, 157
 cause frost and snow to harm Sikandar, 156, 157
- Nekht-neb-f *See* Nectanebus
- Nereis *See* Kale
- Nicæa, Indian city, 18
- Nicolaus of Damascus, 195
- Nile, 42, 65, 169, 171, 269
 the Blue, 65
 mistaken for Indus, 68
- Nimruz, 175
 Sikandar matches to, 175
- Niris, lake, 17
 referred to, 21
- Nishapur, city, 298
- Nisibis (Nasibin, *q.v.*), 254
 peace of, 254
 cession of, 326
- Nisus and Scylla, story of, 323
 note
- Nitetis, 16
- Noldeke, Professor, 14 and *note*, 198 *note*, 199 and *note*, 253, 313, 372
 his treatise on the Alexander Romance, &c, 14 and *note*
 on the story of the Worm, 203, 205, 206
 Haftwad, 206
- Northmen, the, 19
 found Russian empire, 19
- Note on Pronunciation, 8
- Nubia, 65
- Nu'man, prince of Hira, xi, 372, 396, 404
 visits Yazdagud, 377
 goes to the chase with Bahram Gur, 384
 goes to the Persian court with Bahram Gur, 386
 returns to Yaman with letters and presents, 387
 welcomes Bahram Gur on his revisiting Yaman, 390
 invades Fran, 397
- Nusha (Dukhhtnush), daughter of Narsi, x, 3, 323, 324, 331
 carried off by the Arabs, 323, 330
- Nushirwan, Shah, 3, 201, 208
 quoted, 208, 209 and *note*
- Nushzad, father of Miluak, 237, 241, 267, 270, 273

O

- OASIS of Amnion, 65
 Alexander's visit to, 65
- Odenathus, Arab chief, 294, 322, 324 *seq*
 and Shapur, son of Ardashu, 294, 325
 confused with Valerian, 324 *seq.*

¹ See Vol 1. p. 396 *note*.

- Odonco, Minorite Friar and traveller, 13
- Olympias (Halai (?), Nahid), wife of Philip of Macedon and mother of Alexander the Great, 16, 82
- her legendary connexion with Nectanebus, 16, 18
- her legendary choice of a name for her son, 19
- her intrigues, 82
- Omphis, Indian king, 62
- Onesicritus, pilot of Alexander the Great, 12, 61, 67
- an untrustworthy writer, 12
- the Fakirs and, 61
- Calamis and, 61
- Mandanes and, 61
- Ormus (Hurmuz), city on the Persian Gulf, 204
- Osroene, kingdom, 198
- Othello, play of, quoted, 324
- Owls, Mas'udr's apologue of the, 310
- Oxyartes, father of Roxana (Rushanak), wife of Alexander the Great, 32
- P
- PAHLAVAN, Pahlavans, 194
- Pahlavi, version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, 14, 16, 84
- writing and reading, confusion 111, 14, 62, 205, 206
- language, 194
- text, 195, 196, 257
- Palawma (Cappadocia), 294, 297, 298
- Palestine, 30
- Palladius, bishop, 61, 62
- his treatise on the Brahmins, 61
- interpolated into the Pseudo - Callisthenes, 61
- Palmyra, 294, 322, 324
- Palus Maeotis, 73
- Papak, Tribal King, viii, 3, 194, 195, 198 *seq.*, 211 *note* and *seq.* 227, 252, 254, 256
- and Sasan, 212
- daughter of, 213
- marries Sasan, 213
- Ardawan's letter to, 214
- equips Ardshir Papakan for court, 214
- dies, 218
- his kindred support Ardshir Papakan, 223 *seq.*
- Papakan, Ardshir *See* Ardshir Papakan
- Paradise Lost* referred to, 71
- Pans, MSS of the Pseudo-Callisthenes in National Library at, 14
- Pars, country, 17, 25, 32 *note*, 37, 45, 115, 119, 194 and *passim*
- the corpse of Danus sent to, 33
- Ardshir Papakan flees to, 220
- marches from, against Ardawan, 227
- returns to, 229
- the Iranians, after Yazdangd's death, meet to consult in, 394
- Part Kings *See* Tubal Kings
- Paitnan, Parthians, the, 194, 203, 256, 322
- dynasty, 194, 201
- uses the title of King of kings, 197
- Great king, 198
- Parwiz, Iranian chief, 394
- Pashin, Iranian noble, 408
- Patashwargar, region, 202 and *note*
- Pauravas, Indian race and dynasty, 31
- Persepohs (Istakhr), 31, 32 *note*, 373
- Persia, 61, 201, 278
- introduction of chess into, 201

- Persian, Persians, the, 30, 44, 45,
81, 82, 143, 148, 157 170,
201 and *passim*
language, 147, 205
dispute with the Rumans
over Sikandar's bunāl,
184
empire, 197
monks introduce the silk-
worm into Europe, 204
sea or gulf, 204, 205
mutilation of captives, 323,
334, 348, 357, 404
- Persis (Pars), 195
- Pharasmanes, king, 72
- Philip I I. of Macedon (Farlakus),
the father of Alexander
the Great, 16, 18, 19, 29
and Nectanebus, story of,
18
names his son Alexander,
19
- Philon, Macedonian noble, 76
- Phrygians, the, 71
- Piruz Shapur (Ambar), city, 327,
357
- Pisces, constellation, 395
- Pishdildian, dynasty, 194
- Planets, the seven, 206
- Pleiads, Pleiades, 169, 401
- Plutarch, historian, 67
- Polo, 196, 329, 379, 382
episode III Kamamak and
Shahnama, 196, 257, 263,
271
- Porus (Fur, q v), Indian king, 17,
62 *seq* 66, 67, 76, 80, 83
son of, 18, 63
Darius' letter to, 31
origin of name of, 31
kingdom of, 31
and Alexander, historical
account of, 63
in the Pseudo - Callis-
thenes, 64, 67
his stature, 64
nephew of, 80
- Pronunciation, Note on, 8
- Pseudo-Callisthenes, the, Greek
Romance of Alexander the
Great, 13 *seq*, 30 *aeq*, 62
seq, 71, 72, 74 *seq*, account,
and veisions of, 13 *seq*, 17
vogue of, 17
treatise of Palladius inter-
polated in, 61
Alexander and Porus in, 64
historic elements in, 83
Egyptian, 83
Persian, 83
Arabic, 83
diagram to illustrate, 84
- Ptolemy, son of Lagus, one of
Alexander's generals, king
of Egypt and historian, 12,
13, 66
- Python, Apollo and the, 203
- Q
- QUINTUS Curtius, historian, 65
on the Amazons, 72
- R
- RACES, duplicate in West and
East, 68
fair-haired, 73
- Rai, city and district near Tihiran,
32, 201, 202, 219, 229
Ardawan's capital, 201
- Rakshasas, 13
- Rim, Fire-temple, 202, 226
- Ram Ardshir, city, 202, 290 and
note
- Rimbihisht, wife of Sasan, 198
- Ram-Hurmuz, plain of, 199
- Ramishn-i-Ardshir, district, 202
- Rds-Shilpui, city, 255
= Gund-i-Shapur, 256
- Rati, weight, 156 and *note*
- Ravi (Hydraotes), Indian river,
64
- Rawalpindi, 62
- Rawhnson, Professor, 253
- Reeds (bamboos), 71

- Reeds, gigantic, seen by Sikandar, 148
 used in house-building, 71, 148
- Riv-Ardshir, city, 202
 referred to, 224
- Roman, Romans, the, 30, 254, 318, 325, 326
 Alexander's legendary visit to, 30
 empire, Eastern, 253
 emperors, 321, 371, 372
- Romance of Alexander the Great, the, 11 *seq*, 88
 its incorporation in the Shahnama, 16
 vogue of, 17
 sources of marvels in, 12, 69
 diagram to illustrate, 84
- Rome, 194, 197, 203, 301, 324
 Shapur son of Ardshir's wars with, 294, 297
 Bahram Gur's war with, 373
- Roxana (Rushanak, *q v*), 30, 33
 and Alexander, 30
 account of, 32
- Rudyab, father of Papak (in Shahnama), 200, 212
- Rum, the Eastern Roman Empire, v, x, 21 *seq*, 35 *seq*, 40, 41, 45, 51, 53, 81, 94, 104, 113 *seq*, and *passim*
 ambassadors from, come to Darab, 21
 Darab wars with, 22
 prince of, 22
 chiefs of, 23, 153
 withdraw on Darab's approach, 23
 tribute of, to Darab, 24
 ambassadors from, come to Dara, 35
 brocade of, 56, 89
 reed (pen) of, 85
 stuffs of, 143
 philosophers of, 115, 154
 cavaliers of, 167
 Shah of = Sikandar, 170
- Rum, king of = Sikandar, 172
 Sikandar's policy to safeguard, 178
 Arastalis' advice to Sikandar concerning, 179
 invaded by Shapur, 350
 slave-girls of, chosen by Bahram Gur, 382
- Ruman, Rumans, the, IX, x, 19, 21, 44, 45, 101 *seq*, 113, 114, 127, 142, 148, 168, 170, 179 *seq*, and *passim*
 king of = Philip of Macedon, 19
 carry out works in Iran, 21
 = Sikandar, 50, 52, 154
 the Iranians ask quarter of, 51
 tongue, 160
 dispute with the Persians as to Sikandar's burial, 184
 sages, 185
 then sentences over the coffin of Sikandar, 185 *seq*
 silk, 280
 defeated by Shapur, son of Ardshir, 297
 engineers build budge at Shushtar, 299
 astiologic tablets, 376
 slave-girls, 382
- Rus (Russia), 19, 22
 king of, 22
- Rushanak (Roxana, *q v*), daughter of Dara (in Shahnama) and wife of Sikandar, v, vi, 86 *seq*, 181, 188
 account of, 32
 derivation of, 33
 bestowed by Dara on Sikandar, 55
 son of, 81, 181
 visited by Nahid, 89
 married to Sikandar, 90
 reference in Sikandar's Will to, 181
- Russia (Rus), 19

- Russian, Russians, the, 19
 empire, 19
 foundation of, 19
 Rustam, son of Zal, Iranian hero,
 194, 325, 395
 a Personification of the
 Sacæ, 194

S

- SACÆ, Scythians, the, 194
 Rustam a Personification of,
 194
 Sada, feast of, 33, 55, 230 and
 note, 245, 273, 389
 Sage, sages, vi, vii, 101, 103
 Indian, 62
 naked (Brahmans, *q v*,
 Gynmosophistai)
 of Kaid *See* Calanus and
 Four Wonders, the
 Sikandar and, 62, 104
 seq
 described, 94, 101
 explains the principle of
 the Cup, 109
 Saklab, Slavonia, 179
 Salm, eldest son of Faridun, 353
 Halt fish, the legend of, 76 *seq*
 Sam, Iranian hero, 395
 Samiran, 405 and *note*
 Sandai, Sandarus, the Arar tree,
 19
 Sapor I (Shapur, son of Ardshir),
 Sasanian king, 294, 321
 Sapor II (Shapur, son of Urmuzd),
 Sasanian king, 294, 321
 Sapor III. (Shapui, son of Shapur),
 365
 Sarug, Jacob of, Syriac poet.
 See Jacob
 Sarv, king of Yaman, 73
 Sasan, name of Dara's son and
 several of Ins descendants,
 200, 211, 224, 255
 descendants of, help Ardshir
 Papakan, 224
 House of, 251, 270 and *note*
 Sasan, father of Ardshir Papakan,
 viii, 3, 193, 198, 200, 201,
 211 *seq*, 240
 legend of, 211 *seq*
 mairies daughter of Papak,
 213
 Sasanian, Sasanians, the, viii, 81,
 209, 225, 249 *seq*, 253, 257,
 321, 327
 genealogical table of, 3, 253
 Tabari's history of, 14 *note*
 Dynasty, viii, 61, 199, 249 *seq*
 Taban on the use of the,
 198
 characterised, 249 *seq*
 Zoroastirianism under, 251
 Mas'udi on Chinch and
 State under, 251
 duration of, 257
 Empire, 193, 327
 fictitious genealogies of, 199,
 211, 256
 view of Sikandar, 15, 224 and
 note, 240 and *note*
 Saturn, planet, 97, 115, 176, 281,
 318, 385
 Sav, spring of, xi, 372, 373, 391,
 392
 legend of, 372, 391 *seq*
 Sawing, Indian king, vi, 64, 118
 Sayce, Professor, on the Amazons,
 71
 Scandinavians, 19, 73
 found the Russian empire, 19
 Scotland, 79
 vitrified forts in, 79
 Scylla, Nisus and, story of, 323
 note
 Seleucia, city, 254, 291 *note*, 322
 Sennramis, queen, 66, 405 *note*
 Seven climes, the *See* Climes.
 Persian nobles, the, legend
 of, 207
 transfened to Ardshir
 Papakan ('), 207
 planets, 206
 Severus, Emperor, 322
 his siege of Hatra, 322

- Shah, accession of, ceremony at, '409
- Shahabad, city, 295
- Shahd, river, 391, 392
- Shdhnama, 3 and *note*, 11, 19, 30, 31, 66 *seq*, 72, 79, 82 *seq*, 194 *seq*, 200 *seq*, 205 *seq*, 249 *seq*, 253, 256, 270 *note*, 294, 301, 307, 310 325, 326
- Grecksuject-matter in, 11
- derivation of *Sikandar* given in, 19
- historic penod of, 29
- and Iran, analogy between, 193
- portion of, corresponding to Kamamak, 196
- prose, 196
- and Kamamak compared, 200 *seq*, 255 *seq*
- Shahigir, chief in *Sikandar's* host, 125, 126
- takes Kardafa's son and daughter-in law prisoners, 125
- Shahigir, captain of the host to Aidshir Papakin, 241
- Ardshir's instructrions to, 241
- goes, to Ardshir's help, 244 and *note*
- Shahiwi, archimage, 329
- ministei dining Shapur son of Uruzd's minority, 329
- Shawi, eldest son of Haftwad, 237
- referred to, 206
- helps his father against 'Ardshir Papakan, 236
- executed, 245
- Sham (Syria), 357
- Shangul, Indian king, 325
- Shapur, Ashkanian king, 197, 210
- Shapur, son of Papak, 199
- Shapur, son of Ardshir Papakan, Shah (Sapor I.), viii, IX, 3, 196, 256, 262 *seq*, 268 *seq*, 303. 307, 313, 315, 321 *seq*
- Shapur, stories of, in Kamamak, 196, 255
- in Tabari, 255, 257
- crowned in his father's life-time, 257
- secret birth of, 261
- origin of name, 262 and *note*
- recognised and acknowledged by Ardshir Papakan, 264
- discovers the daughter of Milnak, 268 *seq*
- summoned and counselled by Aidshir Papakan, 286 *seq*.
- confused with Shapur, son of Urmuzd, 294, 321, 324, 327
- his reign, 294 *seq*
- its historical inaccuracies, 294
- his wars with Rome, 294, 297
- and Odenathus, 294
- defeats the Rinnans, 297
- receives tribute from Cæsar, 298
- builds cities, 298
- bids Bazanush build a bridge at Shushtar, 298
- summons and counsels Uimuzd, 299
- Shapur, son of Urmuzd, Shah (Sapor II), x, 3, 294, 295, 307, 321 *seq*, 371, 373, 405 (?)
- referred to, 318
- reign of, 321 *seq*
- his bridge at Tarsafun, 321, 329
- his places of residence, 321, 330
- confused with Shapur, son of Ardshir, 294, 321, 324, 327
- his triumphant treaty with the Ramans, 326, 355
- his cities, 327, 357
- birth of, 328
- crowned as an infant, 328
- his education, 329

- Shapur, son of Urmuzd, Malika
 offers to betray her father's
 stronghold to, 331
 opens the gate to, 333
 sends Malika to his camp,
 333
 his treatment of his Arab
 captives, 323, 334
 receives the title of Zu'l
 Aktaf, *q v*, 335
 returns to Pars and receives
 tribute, 335
 consults the astrologers, 335
 visits Caesar in disguise, 336
 entertained by Cæsar, 337
 denounced by a Persian re-
 sident at Caesar's court, 337
 arrested, 337
 sewed up in an ass's skin
 and imprisoned, 338
 pitied by an Iranian slave-
 girl 339
 freed from ass's skin by
 slave-gul, 340
 entertained by a gardener,
 341 *seq*
 sends the gardener to the
 high priest, 344
 described by the high priest,
 344
 praises the slave gul, 346
 prepares to attack Cæsar,
 346
 sends spies to Tarsafun, 346
 sends tidings of his victory
 over Cæsar to the provinces,
 348
 his treatment of Cæsar, 349
 invades Rum, 350
 defeats Yanus, 352
 bids Bazanush come to him,
 354
 dictates terms of peace, 355
 returns to Istakhr, 356
 takes Nasibin, 356
 names and honours the slave-
 girl, 356
 rewards the gardener, 357
- Shapur, keeps Caesar captive, 357
 sends Caesar's corpse to Rum,
 357
 arranges a disputation be-
 tween Mani and the high
 priest, 358
 has Mani executed, 359
 arranges for the succession
 with his brother Ardshir,
 360 *seq*
 dies, 362
- Shapur, son of Shapur, Shah
 (Sapoi III), *x*, 3, 251, 360,
 364 *seq*, 371
 Ardshir, son of Urmuzd, le-
 signs the throne to, 364
 Taban on the death of, 365
 death of, 366
- Shapur, son of Yazdagud, king
 of Armenia, 373
- Shapuri Gnd (Gund-i-Shapur?),
 city, 295, 298
- Shawwal, the tenth Muham-
 madan month, 208
- Shem, patriarch, 65
- Shiban, 397
- Shikbin, Irainian warrior, 395
- Shiraz, city, 198 *note*, 210
- Shu'ib, Arab chief, *v*, 21
 attacks Darab, 21
 defeated and slain, 22
- Shursan = Suustan (Babylonia),
 379
- Shus = Kinim-i-Asiran(?), 327
- Shushtar, city, 199, 295 and *note*,
 299
 dam and bridge at, 298, 326
- Sicily, 30
 Alexander's legendary visit
 to, 30
- Sikandar (Iskandari, Alexander
 the Great, *q v*), *v seq* 11,
 13, 16, 18, 19, 26, 27, 29,
 30, 33, 35 *seq*, 193, 210,
 240 and *note*, 325, 353
 derivation of, *m* Tabari, 19
 in Shahnama, 19, 26
 birth of, 18, 26

- Sikandar, adopted as his heir by
 Failakus, 27
 counselled by Arastalis, 35
 refuses tribute to Dara, 36
 prepares for war with Dara,
 37
 invades, and defeats king of,
 Misi, 30, 37
 invades Titin, 37
 his visit to the camp of Dara,
38
 invited to banquet with Dara,
40
 takes the golden cups of
 Dara, 40
 recognised, 40
 escapes, 41
 defeats Dara, 43, 44, 46
 issues proclamation to the
 Iranians, 44, 47
 gives the spoil to his troops,
 44, 47
 marches from 'Irak against
 Dara, 46
 enters Istakhr, 46
 answers Dara's letter, 50
 marches from Istaklu, 51
 hears of Dara's murder, 52
 arrests Dara's murderers, 53
 finds Dara still living 53
 promises to avenge Dara, 53
 promises to carry out Dara's
 last wishes, 54
 Dara bestows Rushanak
 upon, 55, 86
 laments for, and buries Dara,
 55, 56
 executes Daras murderers, 56
 hailed as ruler by the Iran-
 ians, 56
 sends envoys to Ispahan and
 to the family of Dara, and
 letters to the provinces, to
 announce his accession, 57
 crowned Shah at Istakhi, 59
 reign of, 60 *seq*
 diagram to illustrate Persian
 Romance of, 84
- Sikandar, his inaugural address,
 85
 his conespndence with the
 wife and daughter of Dara
 33, 86 *seq*
 marries Rushanak, 90
 invades Hind, 98
 and Kaid, 61, 98
 appioaches Milad, 98
 inquires about the Four
 Wonders of Kaid, 100
 the Four Wonders and other
 gifts sent by Kaid to, 103
 marries daughter of Kaid, 104
 and the sage of Kaid, 62,
 104 *seq*
 the principle of the cup ex-
 plained to, 109
 conceals his treasures, no
 and *note*
 advances to Kannuj, no
 his troops protest, 113
 remonstiates with his troops,
 113
 his troops ask pardon, 114
 his war with Fur (Porus), 67,
 110 *seq*
 hears of Fur's elephants, 115
 his device to oveicome,
 challenges Fur to single
 combat, 116
 slays Fur, 117
 Fill's troops submit to, 118
 becomes king of Hind, 118
 bestows Hind on Sawurg, 118
 his visit to Mecca and the
 Kaaba, 64, 67, 119 *seq*
 ends the rule of the Khuza'
 in Arabia, 120
 sets up Nasi instead of the
 Khuza', 120
 goes to Judda, 121
 marches to Misr, 121
 welcomed by king of, 121
 stays for a year in, 121
 and Kaidafa (Candace), 65,
 121 *seq*

- Sikandar, his portiait obtained by Kaidafa, 122
 Kaidafa praised by Kabtiin to, 122
 writes to Kaidafa, 123
 Kaidafa's answer to, 123
 assumes the name of Naitkiin (Antigonos), 66, 125 *seq*
 pleads (as Naitkun) for Kaid-rush and his wife, 126
 goes (as Naitkun) to Kaidafa, 127
 graciously received by Kaidafa, 128
 has audiences of Kaidafa, 128 *seq*
 ricognised by Kardafa, 129 *seq*
 delivers Ins message, as envov, to Kardafa, 129, 134
 his covenant with Kardafa, 132, 138
 warned by Kaidafa against Tainush, 133
 insulted by Tarnush, 134
 counsels Kaidafa about Tamush, 135
 makes covenant with Tamush, 136
 Kardafa's gifts to, 140
 returns with Tainush, 141
 welcomed by his troops, 141
 reveals himself to Tainush, 142
 entertains at a banquet, gives gifts to, and dismisses Tainush, 143
 his final message to Kaidafa, 143
 the Brahmans hear of the coming of, and write to, 143
 his interview with the Brahmans, 67, 144 *seq*
 quits the Brahmans, 147
 meets the Fish-eaters (Ichthyophagi, *q v*), 69 *seq*, 147, 177
- Sikandar, his adventure with a whale, 71, 147
 sees gigantic reeds (bamboos), 71, 148
 attacked by snakes, scorpions, and boars, 148
 the people of Habash, 149
 the Narmpai, 160
 his adventure with a dragon, 71, 151
 visits the temple of Dionysus, 71, 152, 166
 warned of his death, 152, 161, 166
 matches toward Harum, the City of Women, (Amazons, *q v*), 153 *seq*
 encounteis snow and frost, 156
 great heat, 157
 the negroes, 157
 reaches and inspects Harum, 157
 marches westward and finds a fan-harried race, 73, 158
 hears of the Gloom, *q v*, and of the Fount of Life, *q v*, and prepares to visit them, 158
 sets forth with Khisir as guide, 159
 and Khisi part company, 160
 fails to find the Fount of Life, 160
 his interview with buds, 160
 Israfil, 78, 161
 emeiges from the Gloom, 162
 marches eastward, 163
 hears of Yajuj and Majuj, 163
 bairier of, 78, 164, 249
 and the Male and Female Tree, 79, 167 *seq*
 reaches "The World's End," 168
 receives gifts, 169
 his expedition to Chin, 80, 169 *seq*,
 goes as his own ambassador to the Faghfur, 170

- Sikandar, describes himself, 171
 Faghfur's gifts to, 173
 departs with Faghfur's envoy, 173
 his identity discovered by the envoy, 173
 dismisses the envoy with gifts and a message to Faghfur, 174
 arrives at Chaghuan, 174
 matches to Sind, 175
 defeats Bandawa, chief of the Sindians, 175
 marches to Nimruz, 175
 receives gifts from the king of Yaman, 175
 meets Gush-bistar, 177
 carries off the treasures of Kai Khusiau, 178
 his policy for safeguarding Rum after his decease, 81, 178, 197
 adopts the advice of Arastalis, 180
 arrives at Babil, 180
 prodigious birth at, 81, 180
 consults the astrologers on, 180
 warned of his end, 180
 sickens, 181
 his Will, 81, 181
 grief of the troops for, 183, 184
 dies, 183
 dispute as to where he should be buried, 184
 his body taken to Iskandariya, 185
 sentences of sages over, 82, 83, 185
 his cities, 83, 189
 the Sasanian view of, 15 and *note*
- Silk, account of, 204
 its introduction into the West, 204
- Silk-worm *See* Silk
- Smd, region and river (Indus), 113
 king of, 113
 chiefs of, 123
 warriors of, 132, 137
 Sikandar matches to, 175
- Sindbad, the sailor, 71
 lands on a whale, 71
- Sindians, the, vii, 175
 defeated by Sikandar, 175
- Sistan,¹ 32, 198
- Smerdis, the false, 207
- Spain (Andalus), 66
- Speaking tree, the, vii, 79, 167
seq
- Sphines *See* Calanus
- Statena *See* Barsine
- Steeds, non, Sikandar's, vi, 115
 filled with naphtha, 115
 Fur's elephants and troops united by, 116
- Stone, the Black, 65
- Strabo, geographer, 68, 81
- Siifis, 59 and *note*
- Sughdiana (Sughd), 72
- Suhrab, son of Kustani, 325
- Suru-sh, angel, 199 *note*, 372
 dav, 411
- Surush, astrologer, 372, 375
 takes Bahrain Gur horoscope, 375
- Susa city, 31, 33, 295, 327
 Alexander marries the daughter of Darius at, 33
- Susiana (Khuzistani), 295, 321
- Swat, river, 65
- Syria, 30
- Syriac, veision of the Pseudo-Calhsthenes, 14, 16, 18, 30, 31 *seq*, 61, 63, 65, 66, 68, 71, 72, 74, 78 *seq*.
- Christian Legend of Alexander, 14, 15, 74, 78, 84
 quoted, 15
 metrical version of, 15, 78, 84

1 *See* Vol. 1 p. 396 *note*

T

- TABAK, I'rinian chief, viii, 202, 225
 suspected by Ardshir Papakan, 225
 justifies himself, 226
 and Ardshn Papakan defeat Bahman, 226
 burries Ardawan, 229
 advises Ardshu Pipakin to marry the daughter of Ardawan, 229
- Tahari, historian 14 note, 16, 19, 30, 198, 200, 291 *note*, 310, 313, 315, 321, 326
 his history of the Sasamans, 14 *note*
 places Alexanders battles with Darrus in Mesopotamia, 30
 on YHJUI and Majuj, 78
 his account of the use of the Sasaman dynasty, 198
 his account of Ardshir Papakan, 198, 203
 genealogies of Papak in, 200
 on the story of the Worm, 205, 206
 his account of Haftwad, 205, 206
 on the length of Ardshir Papakan's reign, 254
 on Ardawan's daughter, 255
 on Shapur, son of Ardshir Papakan, 25s, 257
 on the death of Shapuri, son of Shapur, 365
 on Bahrain, son of Shapur, 368
 on Yazdagnd, son of Shapur, 371 *seq*
- Table of Contents, v
 genealogical, 3
- Tacitus, historian, 73
- Tarnush (Charogos, Keratui, Kami), son of Kaidafa, vi, 66, 67, 134 *seq*
- Tamush, Kaidafa warns Sikandar against, 133
 Fur's son-in-law, 133
 insults Sikandar, 134
 Kaidafa chides, 135
 Kardafa and Sikandar consult about, 135
 makes a covenant with Sikandar, 136
 accompanies Sikandar on his return, 141
 Sikandar discovers himself to, 142
 asks grace of Sikandar, 142
 pardoned by Sikandar, 142
 entertained at a banquet, presented with gifts, and dismissed, by Sikandar, 143
- Tarnush (Theodosius), xi, 372, 389, 404
 goes to Yazdagnd as ambassador, 389
 asked by Bahrain Gur to intercede with Yazdagnd for him, 389
 obtains Bahram Gur's release, 390, 404
- Tan (Darzan, *q v*), Arab chief, x, 3, 322, 324, 330 *seq*
- Tarsafun (Ctesiphon, *q v*), 245, 321, 330, 346 *seq*, 397
 Ardshir Papakan goes to, 245
 Shapin's bridge at, 321, 329
 sacked by Tair, 330
 Shapur sends spies to, 346
 Caesar defeated and taken prisoner by Shapur at, 347
- Takht-i-Bustan, 257
 Sasaman inscription at, 257
- Taniz, city in Turkisttin and district in Badakhshan, 268
- Taurus, constellation, 151
- Taxila (Milad), Indian city, 62, 63
- Thaithar, river, 322
- Theodosrus (Tarnush), Roman Emperor, 372

Thermodon, river, 72
Tigris, river, 294, 322
 small, the, 199 and *note*
 lower, 291 *note*
 bridge over, 321
 Tiri, eunuch of Guzihr, 198
 Tiridih, village, 198
 birthplace of Ardashir Papak-
 an, 198
 Trajan, Emperor, 322
 his siege of Hatra, 322
 Tree, the speaking, vii, 79, 167
 seq
 description of, 167 *seq*
 Sikandar visits, 167 *seq*
 warns Sikandar of his death,
 168, 169
 Tubal, 01 Part, Kings, the, viii,
 180, 197, 198, 201, 203, 204,
 210, 225, 252, 253
 origin of, 179, 181, 210
 character of then Nile, 197,
 198
 number of, 198
 Ardawan the chief of, 201
 Fridausi on, 210
 Tur, second son of Faridun, 353
 Turan, 43, 182, 398
 Turkistan, 179, 278, 280, 397
 Turkman language, 147
 Tus, city, 372, 391, 393
 local legend of, 372, 391 *seq*
 Tyre, city, 30
 sregeof, 30

U

UROSCOPY, 101, 107, 108
 Urmuzd, the Good Principle, 55,
 362, 372, 387
 day, 302 and *note*, 306, 375
 Urmuzd, Ashkaman king, 197,
 210
 Urmuzd, son of Shapur, Shah
 (Hormisdas I), ix, 3, 257,
 273, 280, 313, 327
 his discovery by Ardashir
 Papak, 257, 271
 Urmuzd, birth of, 271
 counselled by Ardashir Papa-
 kdn, 280
 Shapur, 299
 reign of, 301 *seq*
 his title, 301
 story about, 301
 Urmuzd, son of Narsi, Shah (Hoi
 misdas II), ix, x, 3, 294, 295,
 307, 315, 316, 325
 reign of, 318 *seq*
 his sons, 318
 Ins inaugural address, 318
 a pregnant wife of, enthroned,
 320
 Urmuzd (Honmsdas), son of
 Narsi, Persian prince, 318,
 325
 referred to (?), 337
 Urmuzd Ardashir, city, 290 and
 note
 Une, 77
 Utteiakim, the, 74

V

VALERIAN (Bazanush), Emperor,
 294, 295, 323 *seq*
 his defeat and capture by
 Shapur, son of Ardashir, 294,
 295
 memorials of, 295
 confused with Odenathus,
 Julian, and Jovian, 324 *seq*
 his death in captivity, 326
 Vaialnan I (Balnam, son of Ui-
 muzd), Sasanian king, 307
 Varalnan II (Bahram, son of Bah-
 ram), Sasanian king, 310
 Varahran III (Bahram Bahra-
 miyan), Sasanian king, 313
 Varahian IV (Bahram, son of
 Shapur), Sasanian king, 313,
 368
 Venus, planet, 98, 102, 171, 190,
 212, 224, 332
 Vitified fortifications, 79, 165
 Vologeses, king of Kirman, 205

- Vritra and Indra, 203
 Vullers-Landauer edition of the
 Shahnama, 60
- W**
- WALID, Khalifa, 325
 Water-horse, xi, 373, 392
 leferred to, 373
 legend of Yazdagnd and the,
 392
 Western sea, the, vii, 158
 Whale, 71, 147
 mistaken for island, 71, 147
 Sikandar's adventure with a,
 71, 147
 Wheeler, James Talboys, quoted,
 81
 Will of Alexander, 81
 provisions of, 81, 181
 Women, city of, vii *See* Harum
 Wonders, the Four, of Kaid, vi,
 94, 97, 99 *seq*
 Worm, the, viii, 193, 206, 238 *seq*
 story of, 196, 203 *seq*, 232 *seq*
 Mohl, Darmesteter, and
 Noldeke on, 203 *seq*
 cult of, 235
 Ardshir Papakan's stratagem
 against, 242
 servants of, 242 *seq*
- X**
- XERXES, 30
 effigy of, falls, 30
- Yajuj and Majuj (Gog and Ma-
 gog), vii, 78, 79, 163 *seq*, 211
 note
 legend of, 111 the Kuran, 78
 Tabari on, 78
 described, 163
 Ya'kubi, historian, 61
 Yaman, country, vii, x, 73, 120,
 121, 175, 324, 331, 385, 386,
 396, 401
 onyx of, 128
 striped stuff of, 175
- Yaman, monarch of, 175
 gives gifts to Si-
 kandar, 175
 = Munzir, 378, 387,
 390
 Bahram Gur goes to, 378, 390
 Canopus of, 382
 Yanus (Julian), brother of Cæsar,
 x, 324, 326
 leads a host against Shapur,
 defeated, 352
 Yatkar-i Zariran, Pahlavi text, 195
 resembles Karnamak, 195, 196
 Yazd, city, 368
 Yazdagnd, Shah (Isdigerd I), xi,
 3, 371 *seq*
 referred to, 369
 reign of, 371 *seq*
 his parentage uncertain, 371
 a lover of peace like Aknaton
 of Egypt, 371
 his titles, 371, 372
 Tabari on, 372, 373
 death of, 373
 Noldeke on, 373
 coins of, 373
 his evil administration, 374,
 404
 makes search for a governor
 for his son Bahram Gur,
 376 *seq*
 Nu'man and Munzir visit, 377
 puts Bahram Gur in Munzir's
 charge, 378
 receives from Munzir a picture
 of Bahram Gur shooting, 385
 Bahram Gur returns to, 386
 gives presents to, and sends a
 letter by, Nu'man to Mun-
 zir, 387
 disgraces Bahram Gur, 389
 sends Bahram Gur back to
 Munzir, 390
 consults the astiologeis, 390
 his death foretold, 391
 attacked by bleeding of the
 nose, 391

- Yazdagird, his death, 393
 his corpse embalmed and
 taken to Pars, 393
- Youths, the two, that bid Aid-
 shii Papakan not to tarry
 in his flight, 201, 222
 entertain and counsel
 Ardshir Papakan 111
 the matter of the
 Worm, 207, 239 *seq*
 help Ardshir Papakan to
 slay the Worm, 242, 244
- Yunan, 95 and *note*
 Faith of, 95
- Z**
- ZABULISTAN,¹ 207
- Zahhdk, Shah, 15, 45, 172, 209,
 240 and *note*
- Zil, son of Sam and father of
 Rustam, 79
- Zandavasta (Avasta), 17, 55, 226,
 252, 343, 356
- Zarai, 200
- Zarduhsht (Zarathushtra, Zoro-
 aster), 55, 252, 328, 332
- Zauluhsht, religion of, under the
 Sasanian empire, 251
 girdle of, 332
- Zarnush, city, 35
- Zeus, Babylonian, 82
 oracle of, consulted, 82
- Zijanak, daughter of Ardawan,
 vni, 255;
 story of, in Karnanmak, 255
 Tarbari, 255
 Shahnama, 259 *seq*
- Zoroaster *See* Zarduhsht
- Zoroastrian, Zoroastnamsm, 15,
 196, 206, 251 252, 327,
 328
 nuclei the Sasaman empire,
 251
 millennia of, 252
- Zu'l Aktaf, title of Shapur, son of
 Urmuzd, x, 323
 meaning of, 323
- Zu'l-karnain (Sikandar, Alex-
 ander the Great), 15, 84
 legend of, in Kuran, 78, 84
 barrier of, 78
 site of, 79
- Zin *See* Gur

¹ See Vol 1 p 396 *note*

Printed by BALLANTYNE, HANSON & Co
Edinburgh & London

Ishanburgh & London

Printed by Hathantina, Harson & Co
Edinburgh & London

